

This handbook gives the reader an overview of Japanese postpositions which have a wide range of functions, such as case marking, adverbial, copulative, conjunctive and modality expressing roles. The aim of this book is to provide the reader general linguistic features with a wealth of concrete examples. Therefore, this introduction to Japanese postpositions, on the one hand, facilitates learners of Japanese at all levels in understanding its structures and their meanings and thus using them correctly. On the other hand, it enables linguists to gain an insight into the case system and syntactic structures of the Japanese language; it also clarifies the agentless features, a strong dependency on the context for understanding texts or discourse; and finally the manifestations of subjectivity inherent to the Japanese language. Suggestions for further reading, which are given in footnotes, enable students and researchers to find their way to more detailed fields of Japanese linguistics.

Noriko Katsuki-Pestemer is Lecturer of Japanese language and Japanese linguistics at the University of Trier. She is the author of Japanese textbooks for undergraduate students at German universities: *Grundstudium Japanisch* Volume 1 (1990) and Volume 2 (1991); *Japanisch für Anfänger* Volumes 1 and 2 (1996).

LSASL 52  
ISBN 3 89586 855 8

# Japanese Postpositions

## Theory and Practice

*Noriko Katsuki-Pestemer*



**LINCOM EUROPA**  
academic publications

LINCOM Studies in Asian Linguistics

52

**LINCOM Studies  
in Asian Linguistics**

# Japanese Postpositions

Theory and Practice

*Noriko Katsuki-Pestemer*

full text research  
abstracts of all titles  
monthly updates

**LINCOM webshop**  
[www.lincom-europa.com](http://www.lincom-europa.com)

2003  
LINCOM EUROPA

Published by LINCOM GmbH 2003.

All correspondence concerning *LINCOM Studies in Asian Linguistics* should be addressed to:

LINCOM GmbH  
Freibadstr. 3  
D-81543 Muenchen

LINCOM.EUROPA@t-online.de  
<http://home.t-online.de/home/LINCOM.EUROPA>  
[www.lincom-europa.com](http://www.lincom-europa.com)

webshop: [lincom.at](http://lincom.at)

All rights reserved, including the rights of translation into any foreign language. No part of this book may be reproduced in any way without the permission of the publisher.

Printed in E.C.  
Printed on chlorine-free paper

Die Deutsche Bibliothek - CIP Cataloguing-in-Publication-Data

A catalogue record for this publication is available from Die Deutsche Bibliothek (<http://www.ddb.de>)

For Professor Emeritus Satoshi Ôide and  
to the memory of his wife Sumiko Ôide

## Abbreviations

abl.	ablative
adj.	adjective
aff.	affirmative
attrib.	attributive
aux.	auxiliary verb
colloq.	colloquial: Japanese sentences are written in a colloquial form, thus omitting syntactic PPs or inflectional endings.
et al.	et alii.: and other people or things.
fr.	French, french
ger.	German, german
i-adj.	i-adjective
inst.	instrumental
lit.	literal translation
N	noun
na-adj.	na-adjective
neg.	negative
NP	noun phrase
O; obj.	object
pa.	past tense
postp.	postpositional
pr.	present tense
pre	prefix
proN	pronoun
PP	postposition
S	sentence (subordinate or main clause)
sb	somebody
sth	something
subj.	subject
suf.	suffix
V	verb
V1, V2, V3, V4, V5, V6	verbal inflections (see 0.6.1 and 0.6.1.1)
vol.	volitional

## Symbols

§	section or subsection. For the sake of simplicity, references given in parentheses are referred to with the symbol § for both sections and subsections.
•	This handbook partially uses this dot to mark morphological segments of verbal or adjectival inflections.
< >	Sentence/phrase structures are marked with brackets.
(♂)	The speaker is a male.
(♀)	The speaker is a female.
(♂/♀)	The speaker is a male/female.

## Tables

## Introduction

1	Transcription of long vowels [o:] and [u:]	2
2	Examples of hyphenation	3
3	Inflectional or non-inflectional adjectives	3
4	Morphological appearance when used as attributes: free or bound morph	4
5-1	Inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of vocalic verbs	6
5-2	Consonantal inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of s-ending	6
5-3	Consonantal inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of ts-ending	7
5-4	Consonantal inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of a vowel-ending	7
5-5	Consonantal inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of other consonants	7
5-6	Inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of suru-verbs	7
5-7	Inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of kuru-verbs	8
6	The TE-type verbal inflection type (consonantal verbs)	9
7	Factors for deciding the choice of predicate styles: the da-dearu-style or the desu-masu-style	9
8-1	Inflectional forms of the da-dearu-style and the desu-masu-style in the case of nominal and na-adjectival predicates	10
8-2	Inflectional forms of the da-dearu-style and the desu-masu-style in the case of i-adjectival predicates	10
8-3	Inflectional forms of the da-dearu-style and the desu-masu-style in the case of verbal predicates	10
8-4	Inflectional forms of the da-dearu-style and the desu-masu-style in the case of negated form of the verb aru	11

## Chapter 1

9	List of Japanese PPs	14
10	Phonotactics of Japanese PPs	15
11	Different morphological interpretations of Japanese PPs	16

## Chapter 2

12	The five categories of Japanese PPs based on syntax and semantics	25
----	---	----

## Chapter 3

13	Type A case marking PPs	29
14	An inventory of local cases in Japanese	31
15	An inventory of the functions of the Type A case marking PPs (syntactic-semantic case markers)	33
16	Type B case marking PPs (syntactic-semantic and modality marker)	82

## Chapter 4

17-1	The number of each copulative PP	91
17-2	An inventory of the copulative PPs	91
18	Modality components of copulative PPs	93



**Chapter 5**

19	A list of adverbial PPs	102
20	Semantic functions of adverbial PPs	104

**Chapter 6**

21	A list of conjunctive PPs	149
22	The number of PPs classified into each syntactic function	150
23	The semantic functions of conjunctive PPs	151
24	An overview of the semantic functions of each conjunctive PP	154
25	Adverbial phrases using the PP <i>te/de</i> (て/で)	187
26	Aspectual verb compound < TE+V3 >	188
27	Beneficiary verb compounds < TE+V3 >	189
28	Modality expressions using the PP <i>te/de</i> (て/で)	190

**Chapter 7**

29	The number of functions for each modality expressing PP	204
30	An overview of the functions of modality expressing PPs	206
31	The semantic distinctive features of imperative PPs	210
32	Modality expressing PPs and their functions	211

**Diagrams****Chapter 2**

1	The PP <i>wa</i> (は)	24
2	The PP <i>ttara</i> (ったら)	24

**Chapter 5:**

3	Syncretism of PPs (Case marking + Modality)	102
4	Syncretism of PPs (Case marking + Modality + Adverbial)	102

**Chapter 6**

5	Immediate actions	201
---	-------------------	-----

**Chapter 7**

6	The PP <i>yo</i> (よ)	247
7	The PP <i>ne</i> (ね)	247

**Preface**

Having taught Japanese and Japanese linguistics to foreign students for many years, I came to be convinced that Japanese postpositions are a crucial theme and a key issue for mastering Japanese. It is, however, very difficult to obtain books or practical handbooks which explain the Japanese postpositions thoroughly and systematically. This is the reason why I started to do some research work on this theme.

After summarizing a vast amount of material that I have gathered over the last seven years, I first thought of writing a book in German. But having taught many English speaking students from the U.K., Canada, the U.S.A. and Australia as well as students of other native tongues such as French, Spanish, Chinese and Korean for many years, I soon noticed that the difficulty of using Japanese postpositions is not only limited to the German native speakers. They all share the same problem in using postpositions. This prompted my decision to publish this book in English instead of in German. Not only German speaking students may be able to use this book but students of various nationalities as well.

This book also aims at giving an overview of Japanese postpositions to teachers of Japanese; a systematic teaching of this important, but complex linguistic theme, will enable students to understand the structures of Japanese language more easily. Furthermore, general linguistic features of Japanese postpositions described in respective chapters will give linguists firstly an insight into the case system, secondly the syntactic structures, and thirdly the semantic feature of polysemy of the Japanese language. This will offer them a basis for further research works not only on Japanese syntax, but also on pragmatic characteristics of the language such as the subjectivity, the high context dependency of the Japanese language, the relationality between the speaker and the interlocutor, and finally the relation between the language and the way of thinking.

I would like to express my gratitude to the *LINCOM EUROPA* publishing company for giving me this chance. I appreciate all those who supported me in writing this handbook. Sarah Goss, Rebecca M.B. Hough, Peter Dingley, Ileana Aguilar-Weichselgartner and Jun Ishimaru proofread my manuscript and gave me many precious suggestions. The students of Japanology at the University of Trier have given me a lot of interesting ideas for making this book more profound in content. Horst Plambeck gave me technical support for the layout and computer software. The publishing company *Bildungsverlag EINS* was kind enough to permit the use of copyright material: the verbal inflection tables found in the introduction of this book. My colleagues at the Japanology Department at the University of Trier also constantly supported me in many ways. I thank my husband Richard Pestemer and my son Maximilian Pestemer for their support and encouragement during my work in finishing this book. Without the support and assistance of all these people I would not have been able to publish this book.

I would be very happy if this book could help foreign students of Japanese to improve their Japanese language skills and to get to know more about Japan and the Japanese, and thus contribute to a better understanding of people with different cultural backgrounds.

Noriko Katsuki-Pestemer

# Contents

Abbreviations	ii
Tables and Diagrams	iii
Preface	v
<b>0 Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
0.1 Transcription	1
0.1.1 Long vowels [o:] and [u:]	1
0.1.2 Hyphenation	1
0.2 Orthography	2
0.3 Technical terms	2
0.4 Word classes	2
0.5 Japanese predicates	4
0.6 Types of Japanese verbs	5
0.6.1 Verbal inflections	5
0.6.1.1 The inflection type "V1" to "V6"	6
0.6.1.2 The TE-type inflection	8
0.7 Predicate styles: the <b>da-dearu</b> -style and the <b>desu-masu</b> -style	8
0.7.1 Predicate styles of four distinct predicate types	10
0.8 Other remarks	11
<b>Chapter 1 Japanese PPs: An overview</b>	<b>13</b>
1.1 An overview	13
1.2 Phonology	15
1.3 Morphology	15
1.4 Syntax	16
1.4.1 Word order	16
1.4.2 Multiple use of PPs	18
1.4.3 Hierarchy of PPs in the multiple use	18
1.4.4 Dual cases	18
1.4.4.1 PP <b>kara</b> (から) in the function of < perative + ablative >	18
1.4.4.2 PP <b>o</b> (を) in the function of < perative + locative >	19
1.4.5 Marking of syntactic relations	19
1.4.6 Case alterations	19
1.4.6.1 Potential expressions	19
1.4.6.2 Passive expressions	20
1.4.6.3 Desiderative expressions	21
1.5 Semantics	21
<b>Chapter 2 Categories of PPs</b>	<b>23</b>
2.1 Case marking PPs	23
2.2 Copulative PPs	24

2.3	Adverbial PPs	26
2.4	Conjunctive PPs	26
2.5	Modality expressing PPs	26
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Case marking PPs: functions and usage</b>	<b>29</b>
3.1	The Type A case marking PPs (syntactic-semantic type)	29
3.1.1	Functions of the Type A case marking PPs	29
3.1.1.1	PPs with the same or very similar functions	29
3.1.1.1.1	e (へ) and ni (に) as direction markers	30
3.1.1.1.2	kara (から) and yori (より) as temporal ablative (starting points)	30
3.1.1.1.3	ni (に), kara (から) and de (で) as agent markers	30
3.1.2	Locatives: local cases	31
3.1.2.1	Locatives: the place of existence	31
3.1.2.2	Locatives: the place of an action or an occurrence marked with the PP de (で)	32
3.1.2.3	Locatives: the place of an action or an occurrence marked with the PP ni (に)	32
3.1.2.4	Locatives: the place of a motion	32
3.1.2.5	Locatives: the place of departure	34
3.1.2.6	Local restrictives: a restriction on a place of action	34
3.1.2.7	Local attributives: a specification of the location of a noun	34
3.1.2.8	Local ablatives: a starting point	34
3.1.2.9	Allatives: a destination; a goal; a place someone reaches	35
3.1.2.10	Allatives: a place of contact	35
3.1.2.11	Illatives: a place or thing someone enters or gets into	35
3.1.2.12	Perlatives (a place through which someone passes) + Ablatives (a starting point)	36
3.1.2.13	Perlatives (a place through which someone passes) + Locatives (a place of motion)	36
3.2	Usage of case marking PPs: syntactic-semantic type (Type A)	37
3.2.1	de (で)	37
3.2.1.1	Locatives: the place of an act or event	37
3.2.1.2	Agents: the person who carries out an act	37
3.2.1.3	Instrumentals: means; instruments; devices	37
3.2.1.4	Causals: causes/reasons	37
3.2.1.5	Manner	38
3.2.1.6	Temporatives: a time (especially <i>at the age of ...</i> )	38
3.2.1.7	Quantitatives: a standard; a limit of duration; a limit; a unit	38
3.2.1.8	Restrictives: restrictions	38
3.2.1.8.1	Temporal restrictions	39
3.2.1.8.2	Local restrictions	39
3.2.2	e (へ)	39
3.2.2.1	Directionals: directions	39

3.2.2.2	Allatives: a destination	39
3.2.2.3	Illatives: getting into a place	40
3.2.2.4	Directionals (directions) + Locatives (a place of existence)	40
3.2.2.5	Addressees	40
3.2.2.6	Manner: < ... tokoro e >	41
3.2.3	ga (が)	41
3.2.3.1	Syntactic subjects	41
3.2.3.1.1	Normal usage	41
3.2.3.1.2	Subjects in the <b>wa-ga</b> -sentence structure: < ... wa ... ga predicate >	42
3.2.3.1.3	Emphasis: < N ga N >; < N ga N + da/dearu + kara/shi >	42
3.2.3.2	Modality: profanity; insults	43
3.2.3.3	Expressions from Classical Japanese	43
3.2.3.3.1	Possessives: the owner; the group to which someone belongs	43
3.2.3.3.2	Appearance: < V3 ga gotoku >	43
3.2.3.3.3	Attributives: expressing a purpose: < V1+n ga tame ni >	44
3.2.3.3.4	Attributives: expressing causes or reasons: < sore ga tame ni >	44
3.2.4	kara (から)	45
3.2.4.1	Ablatives: a starting point	45
3.2.4.1.1	A temporal starting point	45
3.2.4.1.2	A local starting point	45
3.2.4.1.3	A personal starting point	45
3.2.4.2	Ablatives: a place of departure or detachment	46
3.2.4.3	Sources	46
3.2.4.4	Possessives: the owner	46
3.2.4.5	Agents	47
3.2.4.6	Causals: causes/reasons	47
3.2.4.7	Perlatives (a point of passing through) + Ablatives (a starting point)	48
3.2.4.8	Modality: emphasis; surprise; unexpectedness	48
3.2.4.8.1	< ... kara no ... >	48
3.2.4.8.2	< ... kara shite >	48
3.2.5	made (まで)	49
3.2.5.1	Local restrictives: an upper local limit	49
3.2.5.2	Temporal restrictives: an upper temporal limit	49
3.2.5.3	Allatives (a destination) + Restrictives (a limit)	49
3.2.6	ni (に)	50
3.2.6.1	Locatives: a place of existence	50
3.2.6.2	Locatives: a place of an action or a happening in the case of static verbs	50
3.2.6.3	Temporatives: a time	51
3.2.6.4	Possessives: the owner: < ... ni (wa) ... ga aru/iru >	51
3.2.6.5	Allatives	52
3.2.6.5.1	Allatives: a destination; an achievement	52
3.2.6.5.2	Allatives: a touching point	52
3.2.6.6	Illatives: getting into a place	53



3.2.6.7	Directionals: a direction	53
3.2.6.8	Addressees	53
3.2.6.9	Resultatives: the result of an action or a happening	54
3.2.6.10	Purposives: a purpose	55
3.2.6.11	Agents	55
3.2.6.11.1	The agent in passive sentences	56
3.2.6.11.2	The agent in causative sentences	56
3.2.6.11.3	The agent in the case of benefactive verbs: the benefactor; the giver	57
3.2.6.11.4	The agent in the case of potential verbs	57
3.2.6.12	Benefactives with verbs of giving: the receiver/the benefactee	57
3.2.6.13	Causals: causes/reasons	58
3.2.6.14	Contents	59
3.2.6.15	Manner	59
3.2.6.16	Criteria	60
3.2.6.16.1	Quantitative criteria	60
3.2.6.16.2	Comparative criteria	60
3.2.6.16.3	A basis of judgement	61
3.2.6.17	Adessives: the object of opposition	61
3.2.6.18	The object of approval or disapproval	61
3.2.6.19	The object of verbs of success or failure	61
3.2.7	<b>no (の)</b>	62
3.2.7.1	Attributives: specifications of a noun	62
3.2.7.1.1	Possessives: the owner	62
3.2.7.1.2	Locatives: a place of existence	62
3.2.7.1.3	Locatives: a place of an action or a happening	63
3.2.7.1.4	Material	63
3.2.7.1.5	Temporatives: a time	63
3.2.7.1.6	Appositions	63
3.2.7.1.7	Characteristics: shape; colour; form, etc.	63
3.2.7.1.8	Manner	64
3.2.7.1.9	Agents	64
3.2.7.1.10	Places someone belongs to	64
3.2.7.1.11	Criteria	64
3.2.7.1.12	Restrictives: a restriction	64
3.2.7.1.13	Partial or holistic frameworks	64
3.2.7.1.14	Purposives: a purpose	65
3.2.7.1.15	Syntactic objects	65
3.2.7.1.16	Contents	65
3.2.7.1.16.1	< N1 <b>no</b> N2 >	65
3.2.7.1.16.2	< N <b>no</b> Pseudo-Noun > or < Pseudo-Noun <b>no</b> N >	66
3.2.7.2	Agents in attributive sentences	66
3.2.7.3	Noun-replacements	67
3.2.7.4	Possessives: < ... <b>no</b> >	67
3.2.7.5	Nominalizations: < sentence + <b>no</b> >	68
3.2.7.6	Modality	68
3.2.7.6.1	< ... <b>no da/dearu/desu</b> > or < ... <b>n da/dearu/desu</b> >	68

3.2.7.6.2	Doubt or assumption with a firm ground: < ... <b>no ka</b> >	69
3.2.7.7	Syntactic subjects: < ... <b>no no</b> ... <b>koto</b> >	69
3.2.7.8	Double/multiple case marking using the PP <b>no (の)</b>	69
3.2.8	<b>o (を)</b>	70
3.2.8.1	Syntactic objects	70
3.2.8.2	Locatives: a leaving point	71
3.2.8.3	Locatives: a place of an action or a happening in the case of verbs of motion	71
3.2.8.4	Perlatives (a place of passing through) + Locatives (a place where something happens or takes place)	72
3.2.8.5	Temporatives: duration	73
3.2.8.6	Directionals: a direction	73
3.2.9	<b>to (と)</b>	74
3.2.9.1	Comitatives (a partner): <b>with somebody</b>	74
3.2.9.2	Comparatives: the object or person in a comparison	74
3.2.9.3	Resultatives: the result of an action or a happening	75
3.2.9.4	Content marking	75
3.2.9.5	Manner	76
3.2.9.6	Quantitatives: < a frequency/duration/amount + <b>to</b> >	76
3.2.9.7	Idiomatic expressions	77
3.2.9.7.1	Roles: < ... <b>to shite</b> > in the sense of <i>as</i> ...	77
3.2.9.7.2	The judge of a judgement: < ... <b>to shite wa</b> >: <i>as for, for ..., in someone's view</i>	77
3.2.9.7.3	Emphatic negation: < 1 + counter unit + <b>to shite</b> >: <i>not a single</i> ...	77
3.2.9.7.4	Concessives: < ... <b>to shite mo</b> > in the sense of <i>even if</i> ...	78
3.2.9.7.5	Expressions of an opinion	78
3.2.9.7.6	Conditionals: a condition	78
3.2.9.7.7	Appearance	78
3.2.9.7.8	Holistic properties: < <b>ari to arayuru</b> > in the sense of <i>all or every</i>	79
3.2.10	<b>yorì (より)</b>	79
3.2.10.1	Comparatives: the object or person of comparison	79
3.2.10.1.1	Comparatives (a comparison): < A <b>wa</b> B <b>yorì</b> ... >	79
3.2.10.1.2	Comparatives (a comparison): < A <b>yorì</b> B ( <b>no hou</b> ) <b>ga</b> ... >	79
3.2.10.1.3	Comparatives (a comparison): < A <b>yorì</b> ... >	80
3.2.10.1.4	Inclination: < A <b>to iu yorì (wa)</b> B > in the sense of <i>it is not A rather B</i>	80
3.2.10.2	Exclusiveness: < ... <b>yorì shikata ga nai</b> > in the sense of <i>there is no way other than...</i>	81
3.2.10.3	Ablatives: a temporal or local starting point	81
3.3	The Type B case marking PPs (syntactic-semantic and modality type)	82
3.3.1	Functions	82
3.4	Usage of case marking PPs: syntactic-semantic and modality expressing type (Type B)	82

3.4.1	<b>mo (も)</b>	83
3.4.2	<b>nado/nanzo/nazo/nanka (など/なんぞ/なぞ/なんか)</b>	83
3.4.2.1	Taking something as an example	83
3.4.2.2	Contempt/scorn/underestimation	83
3.4.2.3	Topic raising + Humbleness	83
3.4.2.4	Emphasis	84
3.4.2.5	Euphemism	84
3.4.2.6	Ambiguous citations	85
3.4.3	<b>nanka (なんか: see § 3.4.2)</b>	85
3.4.4	<b>nante (なんて)</b>	85
3.4.4.1	Topic raising + Taking something as an example + Modality (scorn/mockery/disdain/derision)	85
3.4.4.2	Teasing somebody	85
3.4.4.3	Surprise	86
3.4.5	<b>nanzo/nazo (なんぞ/なぞ: see § 3.4.2)</b>	86
3.4.6	<b>tara/ttara (たら/たら)</b>	86
3.4.6.1	Topic raising + Modality: the expression of anger/disgust/criticism	86
3.4.6.2	Topic raising + Modality: the expression of surprise/astonishment	86
3.4.7	<b>tte (って)</b>	87
3.4.7.1	Topic-raising	87
3.4.7.2	Topic raising + An answer to the question	87
3.4.7.3	Contents/citations	87
3.4.8	<b>tote (とて)</b>	88
3.4.9	<b>wa (は)</b>	88
3.4.9.1	Topic raising	88
3.4.9.1.1	Raising subjects, objects, local or temporal entries as topics	88
3.4.9.1.2	Raising adverbs as topics	89
3.4.9.1.3	Raising adverbial entries as topics	89
3.4.9.2	Contrasts	90
3.4.9.3	Emphasis	90
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Copulative PPs</b>	91
4.1	Functions	91
4.1.1	Semantics of copulative PPs with modality functions	91
4.2	Usage of copulative PPs	92
4.2.1	<b>dano (だの)</b>	92

4.2.1.1	Incomplete listings	92
4.2.2	<b>ka (か)</b>	92
4.2.2.1	Disjunctive listings	92
4.2.3	<b>mo (も)</b>	94
4.2.3.1	Incomplete listings	94
4.2.4	<b>nari (なり)</b>	94
4.2.4.1	Incomplete listings: citing examples	95
4.2.5	<b>ni (に)</b>	95
4.2.5.1	Complete listings: additions	95
4.2.5.2	Complete listings (an increase) + Modality	96
4.2.6	<b>no (の)</b>	96
4.2.6.1	Incomplete listings (citing examples) + Modality	96
4.2.7	<b>shi (し)</b>	97
4.2.7.1	Incomplete listings: additions	97
4.2.8	<b>tari/dari (たり/だり)</b>	97
4.2.8.1	Incomplete listings of actions	97
4.2.9	<b>to (と)</b>	98
4.2.9.1	Complete listings	98
4.2.10	<b>toka (とか)</b>	98
4.2.10.1	Incomplete listings: citing examples	98
4.2.10.2	Uncertainty	99
4.2.11	<b>ya (や)</b>	99
4.2.11.1	Incomplete listings: citing examples	99
4.2.12	<b>yara (やら)</b>	99
4.2.12.1	Incomplete listings (citing examples) + Modality	99
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Adverbial PPs</b>	101
5.1	Common functions	101
5.1.1	Exclusiveness	101
5.1.2	Approximations	103
5.1.3	Extremes	103
5.1.4	Others	106
5.2	Usage of adverbial PPs	107

5.2.1	<b>bakari</b> (ばかり)	107
5.2.1.1	Exclusiveness	107
5.2.1.2	Idiomatic expressions using exclusion	108
5.2.1.3	Approximations	109
5.2.1.4	Emphasis	109
5.2.1.5	Idiomatic expressions: < V1 + n + <b>bakari</b> + no/ni >	109
5.2.1.6	Aspectives: the immediate past	110
5.2.2	<b>dake</b> (だけ)	110
5.2.2.1	Extent <i>as ... as</i>	110
5.2.2.2	Exclusiveness	111
5.2.2.3	Idiomatic expressions	111
5.2.2.3.1	Proportional changes: < V4 ba V3 <b>dake</b> >	111
5.2.2.3.2	Merits/rewards: < ... <b>dake aru</b> >	112
5.2.2.3.3	Causals, causes/reasons: < ... <b>dake ni</b> >	112
5.2.3	<b>datte</b> (だって)	112
5.2.3.1	Extremes	113
5.2.3.2	Citing examples when expressing totality	113
5.2.3.3	Total affirmation	113
5.2.3.4	Total negation	114
5.2.4	<b>demo</b> (でも)	115
5.2.4.1	Extremes	115
5.2.4.2	Concessives	115
5.2.4.3	Indications of choice	115
5.2.4.4	Total affirmation	116
5.2.4.5	Minimums	116
5.2.4.6	Idiomatic expressions: resignation: < ... <b>demo aru mai</b> >/< ... <b>demo nakarou</b> >	117
5.2.5	<b>hodo</b> (ほど)	117
5.2.5.1	Approximations	118
5.2.5.2	Extent	118
5.2.5.3	Superlatives	118
5.2.5.4	Proportional changes	119
5.2.6	<b>ka</b> (か)	120
5.2.6.1	Uncertain statements	120
5.2.6.2	Assumptions	121
5.2.6.3	Doubt	121
5.2.6.4	Idiomatic expressions	121
5.2.6.4.1	Possibilities: < ... <b>ka mo shire-nai</b> >	121
5.2.6.4.2	Rapid procedures: < V3 <b>ka</b> V1-nai <b>ka no uchi ni</b> >	122
5.2.7	<b>kiri</b> (きり)	123
5.2.7.1	Exclusiveness	123

5.2.7.2	Aspectives: an unchanged state	124
5.2.8	<b>koso</b> (こそ)	124
5.2.8.1	Emphasis of nouns	124
5.2.8.2	Emphasis through contrast—1	125
5.2.8.3	Emphasis through contrast—2	126
5.2.8.4	Idiomatic expressions: an emphasis	126
5.2.9	<b>kurai/gurai</b> (くらい/ぐらい)	127
5.2.9.1	Approximations	127
5.2.9.2	Comparatives	127
5.2.9.3	Minimums	127
5.2.9.4	Extremes	128
5.2.9.5	Superlatives	128
5.2.9.6	Modality: taking something for granted	129
5.2.10	<b>made</b> (まで)	129
5.2.10.1	Extent 1: < ... <b>made</b> >	129
5.2.10.2	Extent 2: < ... <b>made mo nai</b> >/< ... <b>made no koto mo nai</b> >	130
5.2.10.3	Extent 3: < ... <b>made da</b> >/< ... <b>made no koto da</b> >	130
5.2.10.4	Extent 4: < V1 + <b>nai</b> + <b>made mo</b> ... >	130
5.2.10.5	Additions	131
5.2.10.6	Extremes	131
5.2.10.7	Idiomatic expressions	132
5.2.11	<b>mo</b> (も)	132
5.2.11.1	Additions: ... <i>too</i>	132
5.2.11.2	Correlative coordination, <i>both</i> ..	133
5.2.11.3	Total affirmation	133
5.2.11.4	Total negation	133
5.2.11.5	Extremes 1: <i>even</i> ... — < 1 + counter unit + <b>mo</b> + predicate in the negation >	134
5.2.11.6	Extremes 2: <i>even</i> ... — < ... <b>mo</b> + predicate in the affirmative >	134
5.2.11.7	Estimations; assumptions	135
5.2.11.8	Restrictives: maximal limits	135
5.2.11.9	Modality	136
5.2.11.10	Emphasis	137
5.2.11.11	Indications of variety	138
5.2.12	<b>nari</b> (なり)	139
5.2.12.1	Indications of choice	139
5.2.12.2	Minimums	139
5.2.12.3	Total affirmation	139
5.2.12.4	Idiosyncrasy	140
5.2.13	<b>nomi</b> (のみ)	140
5.2.13.1	Exclusiveness	140



5.2.14	<b>sae</b> (さえ)	141
5.2.14.1	Extremes	141
5.2.14.2	Additions	141
5.2.14.3	Minimal conditions	142
5.2.15	<b>shika</b> (しか)	142
5.2.15.1	Exclusiveness	142
5.2.16	<b>shimo</b> (しも)	143
5.2.16.1	Total affirmation	143
5.2.16.2	Negation of categorical negations	143
5.2.16.3	Extremes	144
5.2.17	<b>sura</b> (すら)	144
5.2.17.1	Extremes	144
5.2.18	<b>tote</b> (とて)	145
5.2.18.1	Extremes	145
5.2.18.2	Total negation	145
5.2.18.3	Topic raising + Citing an example	145
5.2.19	<b>yara</b> (やら)	146
5.2.19.1	Assumptions: < interrogatives + yara >	146
5.2.19.2	Insecure statements	146
5.2.19.3	Indecisive attitudes	147
5.2.20	<b>zutsu</b> (ずつ)	147
5.2.20.1	Quantitatives: proportional allocations	147
5.2.20.2	Gradual changes	148
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Conjunctive PPs</b>	149
6.1	General characteristics	149
6.1.1	Morphosyntactic features of conjunctive PPs	149
6.1.2	Syntactic-semantic features of conjunctive PPs	150
6.1.3	Examples of the characteristics of conjunctive PPs	152
6.1.3.1	Adversatives	152
6.1.3.2	Introductives	153
6.1.3.3	Causals: causes/reasons	153
6.2	Usage of conjunctive PPs	157
6.2.1	<b>ba</b> (ば)	157
6.2.1.1	Conditionals in a narrow sense	157
6.2.1.1.1	Sentence constructs using the conditional form of the PP <b>ba</b>	157
6.2.1.1.1.1	Duty: < ... V1 + <b>nakereba naranai</b> >	157
6.2.1.1.1.2	Proportional changes: < V4 <b>ba</b> V3 <b>hodo</b> ... >	157

6.2.1.2	Aspectives: habitual (a habit), iterative (recurrence) — < V4 + <b>ba</b> >	158
6.2.1.3	Introductives	158
6.2.1.4	Aspective-temporatives: Two simultaneous actions/happenings in the past	158
6.2.1.5	Copulatives + Modality (astonishment)	159
6.2.1.6	Suggestions	160
6.2.2	<b>dokoroka</b> (どころか)	160
6.2.2.1	Adversatives; opposites	160
6.2.3	<b>domo</b> (ども)	161
6.2.3.1	Concessives	161
6.2.4	<b>ga</b> (が)	162
6.2.4.1	Introductives: an introduction	162
6.2.4.2	Adversatives	162
6.2.4.3	Non-inference	163
6.2.4.4	Modality: humbleness; hesitation; taking a reserved stance; avoiding direct statements	163
6.2.4.5	Modality: surprise	164
6.2.5	<b>kara</b> (から)	164
6.2.5.1	Causals: causes/reasons	165
6.2.5.2	Modality: a firm decision	165
6.2.5.3	Restrictives (restrictive-conditional specifications) < ... <b>kara</b> (ni) <b>wa</b> >	166
6.2.5.4	Sentence constructs with the PP <b>kara</b>	166
6.2.5.4.1	Causals + Concessives 1: < ... <b>kara tote</b> >	166
6.2.5.4.2	Causals + Concessives 2: < ... <b>kara to itte</b> > / < ... <b>kara tte</b> >	167
6.2.5.4.3	Emphasis + Causals < ... <b>sae</b> ... <b>da kara</b> ... > / < ... <b>sae</b> ... <b>kurai</b> ... <b>da kara</b> ... >	167
6.2.5.4.4	Causals (causes/reasons): < ... <b>mono da kara</b> >	168
6.2.5.4.5	Obviousness: < ... <b>kara ni</b> ... >	168
6.2.6	<b>kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo</b> (けど/けども/けれど/けれども)	168
6.2.6.1	Adversatives	168
6.2.6.2	Introductives: an introduction	169
6.2.6.3	Modality: surprise	169
6.2.7	<b>kototote</b> (こととて)	169
6.2.7.1	Causals: causes/reasons	170
6.2.8	<b>kusen</b> (くせに)	170
6.2.8.1	Concessives	170
6.2.9	<b>mo</b> (も)	171
6.2.9.1	Concessives	171
6.2.9.2	Restrictives: minimal/maximal limits	171



6.2.10	<b>monode/monde</b> (もので/もんで)	172
6.2.10.1	Causals (causes/reasons) + Modality (surprise)	172
6.2.11	<b>mononara</b> (ものなら)	173
6.2.11.1	Conditionals: < a condition + a negative consequence >	173
6.2.11.2	Conditionals: < a condition + irrealis >	173
6.2.12	<b>monono</b> (ものの)	174
6.2.12.1	Concessives + Modality (regret)	174
6.2.13	<b>monoo</b> (ものを)	175
6.2.13.1	Conditionals (a condition) + Modality (vexation)	175
6.2.14	<b>nagara</b> (ながら)	175
6.2.14.1	Aspectives. Two synchronous/progressive actions	176
6.2.14.2	Aspectives: habitual actions; unchanged situations	176
6.2.14.3	Concessives	176
6.2.14.4	Quantitatives: holistic quantities	177
6.2.15	<b>nari</b> (なり)	177
6.2.15.1	Temporatives + Aspectives (immediate actions/happenings)	177
6.2.15.2	Aspectives: unchanged situations	178
6.2.16	<b>ni</b> (に)	178
6.2.16.1	Introductives, an introduction	178
6.2.16.2	Modality: astonishment; bewilderment	179
6.2.17	<b>node</b> (ので)	179
6.2.17.1	Causals: causes/reasons	179
6.2.18	<b>noni</b> (のに)	180
6.2.18.1	Concessives	180
6.2.19	<b>shi</b> (し)	181
6.2.19.1	Causals: causes/reasons	181
6.2.19.2	Causals (additional information) + Modality	181
6.2.19.3	Causals (causes/reasons) + Copulatives	182
6.2.20	<b>tatte/datte</b> (たって/だって)	182
6.2.20.1	Concessives	182
6.2.20.2	Restrictive-concessives	183
6.2.21	<b>te/de</b> (て/で)	183
6.2.21.1	Concessives	184
6.2.21.2	Causals: causes/reasons	184
6.2.21.3	Temporatives: consecutive time sequences	184
6.2.21.4	Temporatives: preceding actions	185

6.2.21.5	Copulatives (coordination), <i>and</i>	185
6.2.21.6	Manner	186
6.2.21.7	Contrastives: contrasts	186
6.2.21.8	Adverbials	186
6.2.21.9	Verb compounds: < TE + V3 >	187
6.2.21.10	Modality expressions	190
6.2.22	<b>temo/demo</b> (ても/でも)	191
6.2.22.1	Concessives	191
6.2.23	<b>to</b> (と)	192
6.2.23.1	Conditionals in a narrow sense	192
6.2.23.2	Aspectives: habitual (a habit); iterative (recurrence)	192
6.2.23.3	Conditionals: adverbials	193
6.2.23.4	Temporatives (consecutive actions in the past) + Aspectives (immediate actions) + Perceptions (recognition of something)	193
6.2.23.5	Concessives	193
6.2.24	<b>tokorode</b> (ところで)	194
6.2.24.1	Concessives	194
6.2.25	<b>tokoroga</b> (ところが)	195
6.2.25.1	Concessives	195
6.2.25.2	Temporatives (consecutive actions in the past) + Perceptions (recognition of something)	195
6.2.26	<b>tomo</b> (とも)	196
6.2.26.1	Concessives	196
6.2.26.2	Restrictives: minimal/maximal limits	197
6.2.26.3	Quantitatives: holistic quantities	197
6.2.27	<b>tote</b> (とて)	197
6.2.27.1	Concessives	198
6.2.28	<b>tsutsu</b> (つつ)	199
6.2.28.1	Concessives	199
6.2.28.2	Aspectives: two synchronous actions	199
6.2.28.3	Aspectives: present progressive actions or phenomena	200
6.2.29	<b>ya</b> (や)	200
6.2.29.1	Aspectives: immediate actions	200
Chapter 7	<b>Modality expressing PPs</b>	203
7.1	Main features	203
7.1.1	Interchangeability	203
7.1.1.1	Interchangeability of PPs for expressing impatience	203

7.1.1.2	Interchangeability of PPs for expressing dissatisfaction/ desperation	204
7.1.1.3	Interchangeability with differences in nuance: imperatives (commands)	205
7.1.1.4	Interchangeability with differences in nuance: criticism	207
7.1.2	Poly-functionality	208
7.1.3	Syncretism of functions	208
7.1.4	Pragmatic encoding	208
7.1.4.1	Gender	208
7.1.4.2	Sociolects: age	209
7.1.4.3	Sociolects: hierarchical relations	209
7.1.4.4	Intimacy	209
7.1.5	Dialogues/monologues	210
7.2	Usage of modality expressing PPs	215
7.2.1	<b>e</b> (え)	215
7.2.1.1	Intimacy	215
7.2.2	<b>ga</b> (が)	215
7.2.2.1	Desideratives: desires/wishes	215
7.2.2.2	Indirectness; euphemism	216
7.2.2.3	Persuasion	216
7.2.3	<b>i</b> (い)	216
7.2.3.1	Interrogatives + Intimacy	216
7.2.3.2	Complaints/protests	217
7.2.3.3	Rhetorical questions	217
7.2.3.4	Disdain	217
7.2.3.5	Criticism	217
7.2.3.6	Emphasis	217
7.2.3.7	Imperatives, commands	218
7.2.3.8	Infancy	218
7.2.4	<b>ka</b> (か)	218
7.2.4.1	Dubitatives: Suspicion	218
7.2.4.2	Interrogatives	218
7.2.4.3	Rhetorical questions	218
7.2.4.4	Criticism	219
7.2.4.5	Confirmation	219
7.2.4.6	Exhortation; invitations, suggestions	219
7.2.4.7	Requests	219
7.2.4.8	Imperatives: moderate negative commands, gentle prohibitions	220
7.2.4.9	Will	220
7.2.4.10	Astonishment; unexpectedness	220
7.2.4.11	Desideratives: desires/wishes	221
7.2.4.12	Monologues + A feeling of slightly being moved	221

7.2.5	<b>kashira</b> (かしら)	221
7.2.5.1	Dubitatives (doubt, questions) + Monologues	221
7.2.5.2	Expectations of an answer to a question	222
7.2.5.3	Desideratives: desires/wishes	222
7.2.6	<b>ke/kke</b> (け/っけ)	222
7.2.6.1	Retrospection; reminiscence	222
7.2.6.2	Confirmation	223
7.2.7	<b>kedo</b> (けど)/ <b>kedomo</b> (けども)/ <b>keredo</b> (けれど)/ <b>keredomo</b> (けれども)	223
7.2.7.1	Desideratives: desires/wishes	223
7.2.7.2	Reserved stance	224
7.2.7.3	Dissatisfaction	224
7.2.8	<b>koto</b> (こと)	224
7.2.8.1	Softness: < ... <b>koto yo</b> >	224
7.2.8.2	Being affected/impressed	225
7.2.8.3	Soft invitations; mild suggestions	225
7.2.8.4	Interrogatives: gentle questions	225
7.2.9	<b>mono</b> (もの)	225
7.2.9.1	Causals (causes/reasons) + Criticism	226
7.2.9.2	Causals (causes/reasons) + Coquettish behaviour	226
7.2.9.3	Causals (causes/reasons) + Being impressed	226
7.2.10	<b>monka/monoka/monokai</b>	226
7.2.10.1	Rhetorical statements	227
7.2.10.2	Being impressed: < ... <b>to iu monoka/monka</b> >	227
7.2.11	<b>na</b> (な)	227
7.2.11.1	Prohibitives (abrupt prohibitions): < V3 + <b>na</b> >	227
7.2.11.2	Imperatives (abrupt commands): < V2 + <b>na</b> >	228
7.2.11.3	Imperatives (gentle commands): < V2 + <b>nasai + na</b> > or < ... <b>o kudasai na</b> >	228
7.2.11.4	Emotional feelings: being impressed, happy, sad, etc	229
7.2.11.5	Desideratives (strong desires or wishes): < V1 + <b>nai + ka + na/naa</b> > or < ... <b>to ii (n da ga) na/naa</b> >	229
7.2.11.6	Mild statements	229
7.2.11.7	Asking for confirmation	230
7.2.11.8	Persuasive statements	230
7.2.12	<b>ne</b> (ね)	230
7.2.12.1	Being impressed	231
7.2.12.2	Soft insistence/persuasion	231
7.2.12.3	Mild warnings	231
7.2.12.4	Expectations of an agreement or a confirmation	231

7 2 12 5	Intimacy + Interrogatives (questions)	232
7.2 12 6	Evitatives: avoiding a clear statement	232
7 2 12.7	Emphasis + Copulatives (conjunction of sentence constituents)	232
7 2 13	<b>ni (に)</b>	233
7 2 13 1	Hypothesis + Regret/Being relieved: < V6 + u/you + ni >	233
7 2 14	<b>no (の)</b>	234
7 2 14 1	Expressing softness or gentleness	234
7 2 14 2	Interrogatives + Intimacy	234
7 2.14.3	Criticism	235
7 2 14 4	Persuasion	235
7 2.15	<b>sa (さ)</b>	235
7 2 15 1	Relaxed statements; resignation	235
7 2.15 2	Insistence	235
7 2 15 3	Information from a third party, third party reported information	236
7 2 15 4	Being emotionally affected	236
7 2 15 5	Criticism + Refutation	236
7.2 15 6	Copulatives: conjunction of sentence constituents	237
7.2 16	<b>tara/tara (たら/たら)</b>	237
7 2 16 1	Impatience	237
7 2 16 2	Astonishment	238
7 2 16 3	Imperatives: commands or suggestions	238
7.2 17	<b>tteba (ってば)</b>	239
7 2 17.1	Impatience	239
7 2 17.2	Astonishment	239
7 2 18	<b>tomo (とも)</b>	240
7.2 18 1	Certainty/confidence	240
7 2.18 2	Indications of strong confirmation	240
7 2 19	<b>wa (わ)</b>	240
7.2 19 1	Softness	241
7 2.19 2	Being emotionally affected	241
7 2.19 3	Copulatives + Exaggeration + Emotionality	242
7 2 20	<b>wai (わい)</b>	242
7 2 20 1	Expressing emotional feelings: regret, joy, happiness, surprise, etc.	242
7 2 20 2	Abrupt statements	242
7 2.20.3	Expressing offense	243
7.2 21	<b>ya (や)</b>	243
7.2.21.1	Imperatives (indirect commands): < V6 + u/you + ya >	243
7 2 21 2	Imperatives (urgent commands): < V5 + ya + V5 >	243

7 2.21 3	Monologues	244
7.2.21 4	Rhetorical questions: < ... koto ga ari-mashou ya >	244
7.2 21 5	Drawing somebody's attention	244
7.2.21 6	Emphasis + Being emotionally affected	244
7.2.22	<b>yai (やい)</b>	245
7.2.22 1	Imperatives, mild, intimate commands	245
7.2 22 2	Contempt	245
7 2 22.3	Definitive statements	245
7 2.23	<b>yara (やら)</b>	245
7.2.23.1	Uncertainty	246
7 2 24	<b>yo (よ)</b>	246
7.2.24 1	Definitive statements + Giving information	247
7.2 24 2	Rebuking somebody of something	247
7.2.24 3	Requests + Emphasis	248
7 2 24 4	Suggestions + A coquettish attitude	248
7.2.24.5	Giving information + Emotional attitudes	249
7.2.24 6	A perfunctory attitude + Dissatisfaction: < ... deshou yo >	249
7 2 24.7	Drawing attention + Giving information	249
7.2 24 8	Drawing somebody's attention	249
7 2 25	<b>ze (ぜ)</b>	250
7.2 25 1	Drawing attention	250
7.2 25 2	Arrogance	250
7.2.25 3	Drawing attention + Expressing surprise	250
7.2 26	<b>zo (ぞ)</b>	250
7 2 26 1	Monologues	251
7.2 26 2	Drawing attention + Cautioning	251
7 2 26 3	Rhetorical statements: < V6 + u/you + zo >	251
7 2.26 4	Emphasis	252
7.2 26 5	Scolding	252
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Conclusions</b>	253
8.1	A brief summary of Japanese PPs	253
8.2	Relations between PPs and some characteristics of the Japanese language	255
8 2 1	Perception of space	255
8 2 2	Resistance against changes	255
8.2 3	Subjectivity	257
8 2.4	Context dependency	257
8 3	Further research topics	258
<b>Terminology</b>		261

References	267
Index of PPs	275
Subject index	279

## Introduction

The Japanese language has about eighty<sup>1</sup> different postpositions, which all play very important roles in forming sentences and expressing minute nuances. For the sake of convenience, postpositions are hereafter abbreviated to PP. This handbook gives an overview of the syntax and the semantics of PPs in Japanese. It explains their linguistic characteristics and illustrates the practical usage of Japanese PPs through the use of many examples. Each example is written first in transcription, followed by the sentence in Japanese characters, and finally its English translation. Suprasegmental or pragmatic elements of the language are not taken into consideration so the user of this handbook should be aware that there might be other translation possibilities depending upon the context in which the sentences are used.

In order to facilitate understanding of explanations given in this handbook, this introductory part gives the reader general information on the transcription system employed in this book, orthography, technical terms, word classes, types and styles of predicates, types of verbs and their inflections. Examinations of Japanese PPs begin with Chapter 1 which briefly elucidates general linguistic features of Japanese PPs. Chapter 2 introduces categories of Japanese PPs. Chapter 3 deals with functions and usage of case marking PPs and comprises of four sections: Type A and Type B case marking PPs and their respective usages. Copulative PPs with concrete examples are scrutinized in Chapter 4. Chapters 5 and 6 portray adverbial and conjunctive PPs respectively. PPs, which mark the speaker's feelings or attitudes towards propositions, are discussed in Chapter 7. Chapter 8 gives a brief summary and conclusions.

### 0.1 Transcription

#### 0.1.1 Long vowels [o:] and [u:]

This handbook uses the Hepburn transcription system with some exceptions. The long vowels *ō* [o:] and *ū* [u:] are used in words for plants, foreign names, animals and loan words according to the Hepburn system. However, for Japanese and Sino-Japanese words the long vowels *ō* [o:] and *ū* [u:] are written *ou* [o:] or *oo* [o:] and *uu* [u:] just as they would be written using Japanese characters. This facilitates a clear distinction of the morphological composition of words.

The first example (1) (see Table 1) shows that the reader cannot extract the auxiliary verb *u* (う) from the Hepburn transcription. Also for non-native speakers of Japanese the orthography of the nouns like *otōsan* and *tōi* is not clear. However, if they are written as in Japanese おとうさん (o-to-u-sa-n) and とおい (to-o-i), Japanese language learners do not have to think about whether they should be written *otoosan* or *otousan* nor *tooi* or *toui* respectively.

#### 0.1.2 Hyphenation

Hyphens are used throughout for most compound words as well as verbal and

<sup>1</sup> The number of PPs varies depending upon different morphological and syntactic interpretations of words classified as PPs. This book defines 80 words as PPs so that their syntactic and semantic structures can be described systematically. The National Language Research Institute lists altogether 75 PPs (Kokuritsu-koku-go-kenkyūjo 1951 IV and V), Chino and Akimoto (1987) enumerate 72 PPs; Kitagawa et al. (1988) introduce 49 PPs.



Table 1: Transcription of long vowels [o:] and [u:]

	Hepburn system	This handbook	Morphology
(1)	Hon o yomô.	Hon o yomou.	Hon o yomo -u N: book V: an inflectional form of the verb <i>yomu</i> (to read) PP: case marker (object) Aux: hortative (let's) <i>Let's read a book!</i>
(2)	otôsan	otousan	o- tou -san Pre honorific N father Suf honorific <i>father</i>
(3)	tôl	tooi	too -i I-Adj: stem ending <i>far</i>
(4)	kûki	kuuki	ku-u-ki (a three moraic word) <i>air</i>

adjectival inflections including auxiliary verbs (see Table 2)

## 0.2 Orthography

Throughout this book Japanese sentences are intentionally written using many Chinese characters (*kanji*) including those which are now generally written in *hiragana*: pseudo-nouns such as *koto* (事), *goro/koro* (頃), *tachi* (達), *toki* (時) and *mono* (物), or the expression *kudasai* (下さい). This enables learners of the Japanese language to recognize sentence structures more easily and also to improve their reading ability.

## 0.3 Technical terms

The terms and their definitions used for cases differ among case grammarians such as Charles Fillmore (1971; 1987), John Anderson (1971; 1977), Simon Dik (1978), Stanley Starosta (1988) and other linguists. In order to avoid any misunderstanding, technical terms relating to cases and linguistics in general are listed along with brief explanations at the end of this book. The user of this book should start by reading each of these terms and their definitions so that the function of each PP can be correctly understood.

## 0.4 Word classes

On the basis of syntactic-semantic criteria, this handbook classifies words into eleven categories<sup>2</sup>: (1) nouns (including pronouns), (2) counters (quantifying words), (3) i-adjectives, (4) na-adjectives, (5) *rentaishi*-adjectives, (6) verbs, (7) auxiliary verbs,<sup>3</sup> (8)

<sup>2</sup> For further discussions on syntactic categories see Uehara (1998)

<sup>3</sup> The term 'auxiliary verb' is used in this book because there is an independent word category in the School Grammar for it and so-called auxiliary verbs have their entries in dictionaries. It is, however, possible to categorize words of this kind as inflectional suffixes, for they are morphologically agglutinated to the verb and cannot be used independently.

Table 2: Examples of hyphenation

Compound words	Verbs + Auxiliary verbs
shin-gakki (新学期)	utao-u (歌おう)
chika-michi (近道)	yomi-tai (読みたい)
niku-rashii (憎らしい)	tabe-ta-ku-nai (食べたくない)
tabe-hajimeru (食べ始める)	tabe-sase-rareru (食べさせられる)

adverbs, (9) conjunctions, (10) interjections, and (11) PPs

The salient characteristic of Japanese nouns is that they are not inflectional (Uehara 1998: 60). They describe concrete or abstract things as in English. However, in Japanese some quantifying nouns are used as attributes to other nouns, e.g., *tasuu no hito* (多数の人/many people).

Counters are expressions of units for counting things. Each object or abstract matter has its specific associated counter; the counter *satsu* (冊) is, for example, used for books, and therefore "three books" in Japanese is "san-satsu no hon (三冊の本)". Nouns and counters are syntactically equivalent. Thus, counters can also form syntactically the subject, the object, the local/temporal adverbial, etc.

Both i-adjectives and na-adjectives as well as *rentaishi*-adjectives express the properties, nature, or characteristics of objects or abstract matters, and therefore have the same semantic function. However, from the viewpoint of their morphology (how words are formed) and syntax (how they are used when forming sentences), they are different

First, i-adjectives as well as na-adjectives in conjunction with the auxiliary verb *da* (だ), < na-adj. + da >, are predicative, whereas *rentaishi*-adjectives are not: *Nihon-go wa yasashii* (日本語は易しい/Japanese is easy to learn), *Nihon-go wa kantan da* (日本語は簡単だ/Japanese is easy to learn). *Rentaishi*-adjectives have only an attributive function: *ookina ie* (大きな家/a big house)

Secondly, i-adjectives are inflectional, whereas na-adjectives and *rentaishi*-adjectives are not. The following examples comparing the i-adjective *yasashii* (易しい/easy) and the na-adjective *kantan* (簡単/easy) serve to illustrate this difference (see Table 3)

Table 3: Inflectional or non-inflectional adjectives

	i-adjective	na-adjective + da
present tense	yasashi-i	kantan da
negation	yasashi-ku-nai	kantan de wa nai
past tense	yasashi-kai-ta	kantan da-t-ta

Thirdly there are morphological differences between na-adjectives in conjunction with the auxiliary verb *da* (だ), < na-adj. + da >, and those *rentaishi*-adjectives which have the na-ending. When the predicative unit < na-adj. + da > is used as an attribute, the auxiliary verb *da* (だ) is inflected to *na* (な), thus having the form < na-adj. + na >. We can now see that both of them have the same ending of -na. *kantan na* and *chiisana*. As is shown in Table 4, the *rentaishi*-adjective *chiisana* is a word which cannot further be decomposed into smaller units bearing meanings (a bound morph), whereas *kantan na* comprises of two units (free morphs)

Table 4: Morphological appearance when used as attributes: free or bound morph

i-adjective	na-adjective	rentaishi-adjective
yasashii shitsumon	kantan na shitsumon	chisana mondai
易しい質問	簡単な質問	小さな問題
<i>an easy question</i>	<i>an easy question</i>	<i>a small problem</i>

Verbs describe actions, situations, emotions and properties and are inflectional. The inflection forms are explained in detail in Subsections 0.6.1, 0.6.1.1 and 0.6.1.2. Auxiliary verbs are used to express the time (past/non-past), aspect (begin/continuity/end, etc.), modality (emotions of the speaker such as desires, commands, conjectures, etc.), genus verb: (passive), and other grammatical categories such as negation. And they are attached to the predicate (see § 0.5) of sentences.

Adverbs are used to modify predicates (see § 0.5) or other adverbs. Semantically, they express manner, time, degree, states (of people and things), assumptions, wishes/desires, negations, and so on.

Japanese conjunctions are used at the beginning of sentences. This means that if a sentence consists of a subordinate and a main clause, they are placed in front of a subordinate clause because a main clause always comes at the end of complex sentences in Japanese. Their main function is to facilitate a cohesion of sentences in a textlinguistic sense.

Interjections are also placed at the beginning of sentences and express emotion of the speaker, such as, anger, disappointment, happiness, joy, sorrow, etc.

Finally PPs are the theme of this handbook. An overview of their syntactic and semantic functions is to be found in Chapter 1.

## 0.5 Japanese predicates (see also Section 0.7)

In Japanese the predicate gives some information about the topic of the sentence and, in most cases, it is also the syntactic subject of the sentence. There are four different types of predicates: (1) nominal predicate: < noun + copula *da/dearu/desu* >; (2) na-adjectival predicate: < na-adjective + copula *da/dearu/desu* >; (3) i-adjectival predicate: < i-adjective >; and finally (4) verbal predicate: < verb > (see examples below)

- (1) *Watashi wa Nihon-jin da/dearu/desu.*  
私は日本人だ。/私は日本人である。/私は日本人です。  
*I am a Japanese.*
- (2) *Nihon-go wa kantan da/dearu/desu*  
日本語は簡単だ。/日本語は簡単である。/日本語は簡単です。  
*Japanese is easy (to learn)*
- (3) *Nihon-go wa yasashii.*  
日本語は易しい。  
*Japanese is easy (to learn).*
- (4) *Watashi wa Nihon-go o hanasu*  
私は日本語を話す。  
*I speak Japanese.*

The copula *da* (だ), *dearu* (である) and *desu* (です), the i-adjectives and verbs are inflectional. In order to express the time (past/non-past), the aspect (beginning/progressive/end/continuance/completeness, etc.), expressions of modality (desiderative, negative, imperative, hortative, irrealis, conditional, etc.), genus verb: (active/passive), etc., morphological changes are applied to the predicates listed above by agglutinating auxiliary verbs, PPs, or nouns

## 0.6 Types of Japanese verbs

Japanese verbs can be morphologically categorized into three types: (1) vocalic verbs (further sub-categorized into *iru-* and *eru-*vocalic verbs), (2) consonantal verbs, and (3) irregular verbs (also further sub-categorized into *suru-* and *kuru-*verbs).

The first type of verbs all end with *-iru* or *-eru* such as "*ochi-iru* (落ちる/*to drop; to fall*)" or "*oshi-eru* (教える/*to teach; to instruct*)". However, the stem of these verbs are formed by removing the final ending *ru*: "*ochi-ru* (*ochi* is the stem and *ru* the ending)" and "*oshie-ru* (*oshie* is the stem and the *ru* the ending)". It is also worth noting that there are a small number of verbs with the ending *-iru* or *-eru* which belong, however, to the next type of verbs "consonantal verbs", for example, *kir-u* (切る/*to cut*), *hair-u* (入る/*to enter; to get into*), *hashir-u* (走る/*to run*), *mair-u* (参る/*to visit a temple/shrine; to come; to go*), *suber-u* (滑る/*to slide; to slip*), *her-u* (減る/*to decrease; to diminish*), *kaer-u* (帰る/*to go home; to return; to come back*), etc.

The last phoneme of the consonantal verb stem is a consonant. Verbs such as "*oyog-u* (泳ぐ/*to swim*)", "*kak-u* (書く/*to write*)" and "*yom-u* (読む/*to read*)", to name but a few examples, all belong to this category. There are, however, also verbs which belong to this group although their stems end in a vowel, e.g., "*uta-u* (歌う/*to sing*)", "*a-u* (会う/*to meet*)", "*ka-u* (買う/*to buy*)", "*i-u* (言う [*ju*]/*to say; to tell; to remark; to speak*)", "*ku-u* (食う/*to eat*)", "*su-u* (吸う/*to inhale; to breathe; to smoke*)", "*o-u* (追う/*to chase; to hunt; to track*)", "*omo-u* (思う/*to think; to believe; to conceive*), etc. This phenomenon arises from phonological alterations, which took place in the Heian and the Kamakura period in the 11th and 12th century; they all once ended with the consonant (voiceless bilabial fricative) [ɸ], and later voiced velar approximant [w] (*utaw-u* and *aw-u*) which has subsequently disappeared (Ōno 1980: 156; Kobayashi 1981: 44-46; Akinaga 1990: 82-87; Watanabe 1997: 39 and 89).

The irregular verbs consist of *suru-*verbs<sup>4</sup> and *kuru-*verbs: verbs *suru* (する/*to do*) and *kuru* (来る/*to come*) in their own right, as well as their compounds. Some honorific verbs, which express the speaker's politeness to the interlocutor or to others, are also included in this category. These verbs inflect in the same manner as the consonantal verbs with minor irregularities. Examples of such verbs are: *irasshar-u* (いらっしゃる/*to come; to go, to be there*); *kudasar-u* (下さる/*to give*); *osshar-u* (おっしゃる [*o?jaru*]/*to say*), etc.

### 0.6.1 Verbal inflections

There are two major categories of verbal inflections: "V1 to V6"-inflection types and TE-type inflection. These different inflection forms are used, depending upon the sentence structure, when the speaker chooses to convey various ideas. Examples from the first category are: the verbal inflection form "V2 (see § 0.6.1.1)" used in combination with the auxiliary verb *tai* (たい) to express the speaker's desire to do something, the "V4

<sup>4</sup> Miyamoto (1999) thoroughly discusses the *suru*-verbs in terms of the *light verbs*



(see § 0.6.1.1)" for conditional sentences and the "V6 (see § 0.6.1.1)" together with the auxiliary verb **u** (う)/**you** (よう) for volitional (the act of making a free choice or decision), intentional (a determination to act in a certain way), hortative (urging or suggesting sb to do sth), or speculative (an opinion based on speculation) content. The second category contains structures such as the TARI-form (see §§ 0.6.1.2 and 4.2.8) used to list several actions the speaker takes/has taken.

### 0.6.1.1 The inflection type "V1" to "V6"

The following Table 5 consisting of seven parts (vocalic verbs [Table 5-1], four different types of consonantal verbs [Tables 5-2, 5-3, 5-4 and 5-5] and two types of irregular verbs [Tables 5-6 and 5-7]) shows the inflection forms belonging to this category:

#### (1) Vocalic verbs (illustrated using the verb **mi·ru** (見る/look))

Table 5-1: Inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of vocalic verbs

Form	Stem	Inflectional ending	Examples of words (auxiliary verbs, PPs, nouns, etc.) which can be attached to verbs in this form
V1	mi		<b>nai</b> (negation: <i>sb does not see sth</i> ) <b>rareru</b> (passive, potentialis, honorific, spontaneity: <i>sb will be seen, sb can see sth, sb sees sth</i> ) <b>saseru/sasu</b> (causative: <i>sb lets/makes somebody see sth</i> ), etc.
V2	mi		<b>masu</b> (honorific: <i>sb sees sth</i> ); <b>tai</b> (desiderative: <i>sb wishes to see sth</i> ), etc.
V3	mi	ru	nouns, etc.
V4	mi	re	<b>ba</b> (conditional: <i>if sb sees something</i> ), etc.
V5	mi	ro	(abrupt command: <i>look!</i> )
V6	mi		<b>you</b> (volitional, hortative, intentional, speculative: <i>sb will see sth; let us see sth; sb intends to see sth; sb will probably see sth</i> )

#### (2) Consonantal verbs

Here are four subgroups categorized on the basis of the last consonant of the verb stem: (2-1) -s, (2-2) -ts, (2-3) -vowel<sup>5</sup> and (2-4) all other consonants.

##### (2-1) s-ending (eg. **hanas·u** 話す/ speak, to tell)

Table 5-2: Consonantal inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of s-ending

V1	hanas	a	<b>nai</b> (negation), <b>seru/su</b> (causative), etc.
V2	hanash	i	<b>masu</b> (honorific); <b>tai</b> (desiderative), etc.
V3	hanas	u	nouns, etc.
V4	hanas	e	<b>ba</b> (conditional), etc.
V5	hanas	e	(abrupt command), etc.
V6	hanas	o	<b>u</b> (volitional, hortative, intentional, speculative)

<sup>5</sup> See Section 0.6 regarding the vowel-stem-ending among consonantal verbs.

##### (2-2) ts-ending (eg. **mats·u** 待つ/ wait)

Table 5-3: Consonantal inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of ts-ending

V1	mat	a	<b>nai</b> (negation), <b>seru/su</b> (causative), etc.
V2	mach	i	<b>masu</b> (honorific); <b>tai</b> (desiderative), etc.
V3	mats	u	nouns, etc.
V4	mat	e	<b>ba</b> (conditional), etc.
V5	mat	e	(abrupt command)
V6	mat	o	<b>u</b> (volitional, hortative, intentional, speculative)

##### (2-3) vowel-ending<sup>5</sup> (eg. **uta·u** 歌う/ sing)

Table 5-4: Consonantal inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of a vowel-ending

V1	utaw	a	<b>nai</b> (negation); <b>seru/su</b> (causative), etc.
V2	uta	i	<b>masu</b> (honorific); <b>tai</b> (desiderative), etc.
V3	uta	u	nouns, etc.
V4	uta	e	<b>ba</b> (conditional), etc.
V5	uta	e	(abrupt command)
V6	uta	o	<b>u</b> (volitional, hortative, intentional, speculative)

##### (2-4) other consonants (eg. **oyog·u** 泳ぐ/ swim)

Table 5-5: Consonantal inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of other consonants

V1	oyog	a	<b>nai</b> (negation), <b>seru/su</b> (causative), etc.
V2	oyog	i	<b>masu</b> (honorific); <b>tai</b> (desiderative), etc.
V3	oyog	u	nouns, etc.
V4	oyog	e	<b>ba</b> (condition), etc.
V5	oyog	e	(abrupt command)
V6	oyog	o	<b>u</b> (volitional, hortative, intentional, speculative)

#### (3) Irregular verbs

##### (3-1) suru-verbs (eg. **suru** する/ do something)

Table 5-6: Inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of suru-verbs

V1	shi		<b>nai</b> (negation)
	sa		<b>reru</b> (passive, honorative, spontaneity)
	se		<b>zu</b> (negation), etc.
V2	shi		<b>masu</b> (honorific); <b>tai</b> (desiderative), etc.
V3	su	ru	nouns, etc.
V4	su	re	<b>ba</b> (conditional), etc.
V5	shi	ro	(abrupt command)
V6	shi		<b>you</b> (volitional, hortative, intentional, speculative)

(3-2) kuru-verbs (eg. kuru: 来る/come)Table 5-7: Inflection type "V1" to "V6" in the case of kuru-verbs

V1	ko		nai (negation), rareru/reru (potentialis), rareru (passive, honorific, spontaneity); zu (negation), etc
V2	ki		masu (honorative), tai (desiderative), etc
V3	ku	ru	nouns, etc.
V4	ku	re	ba (conditional), etc.
V5	ko		i (abrupt command)
V6	ko		you (volitional, hortative, intentional, speculative)

## 0.6.1.2 The TE-type inflection

The following PPs together with an auxiliary verb are examples of this type of inflection: the PPs tari/dari (たり/だり: see § 4.2.8), tatte/datte (たって/だって: see § 6.2.20), te/de (て/で: see § 6.2.21) and temo/demo (ても/でも: see § 6.2.22), the auxiliary verb ta/da (ただ) and its inflected form tara/dara (たら/だら). The formation of the TE-form, frequently used to form many different sentence structures, is shown below.

(1) Vocalic verbs (eg. tabe·ru [食べる/eat])

The TE-form is formed by placing the ending -te, which is the conjunctive PP (see § 6.2.21), after the V2-form of the verb: < tabe + TE >

(2) Consonantal verbs (see Table 6)

These verbs are further subdivided into six different subgroups, which are classified by the last phoneme of their stem (2-1) -k-ending, (2-2) -g-ending, (2-3) -s-ending, (2-4) -b/m/n-ending, (2-5) -ts/r-ending and (2-6) vowel-ending. Note that these subdivisions are different from those of the "V1 to V6"-type inflection (see § 0.6.1.1-[2]) [2-1] -s, [2-2] -ts, [2-3] -vowel and [2-4] all other consonants)

(3) Irregular verbs

The TE-forms of the suru- and kuru-verbs are formed by placing the ending -te after their V2-form of the verb respectively: < shi-TE (して) > and < ki-TE (来て) >.

TARA-, TARI- or TATTE-, TEMO-forms are made just by replacing the -te (て)/-de (で)-ending of the TE-form with -tara/dara, -tari/dari, -tatte/datte, or -temo/demo respectively. The TARA-form of the verb ka·u (買う/to buy) is kattara (ka-t-tara. 買ったたら), the TARI-form of the verb kazar·u (飾る/to decorate) is kazattari (kaza-t-tari: 飾ったり) and the TEMO-form of the verb oyog·u (泳ぐ/to swim) is oyoidemo (oyo-i-demo: 泳いで).

0.7 Predicate styles: the da-dearu-style and the desu-masu-style

Japanese predicates which we touched upon in Section 0.5, have two different styles: the da-dearu-style and the desu-masu-style. In spoken language, there is a main pragmatic factor determining which of these styles the speaker chooses, namely the interpersonal relationship between the speaker and the hearer, whether it is formal or informal/intimate. In the same manner, in the case of a written language,

Table 6: The TE-type verbal inflection (consonantal verbs)

(2-1) <u>-k</u> -ending	ka[k] u i + TE	kaku (書く/to write) kaite (書いて)
(2-2) <u>-g</u> -ending	oyo[g] u i + DE	oyogu (泳ぐ/to swim) oyoide (泳いで)
(2-3) <u>-s</u> -ending	hana[s] u shi + TE	hansu (話す/to speak) hanashite (話して)
(2-4) <u>-b/m/n</u> -ending	to[b] u n + DE yo[m] u n + DE shi[n] u n + DE	tobu (飛ぶ/to fly) tonde (飛んで) yomu (読む/to read) yonde (読んで) shinu (死ぬ/to die) shinde (死んで)
(2-5) <u>-ts/r</u> -ending	ma[ts] u t + TE kaza[r] u t + TE	matsu (待つ/to wait) matte (待って) kazaru (飾る/to decorate) kazatte (飾って)
(2-6) <u>-vowel</u> -ending	ka[ ] u t + TE	kau (買う/to buy) katte (買って)

purposes and genres of writing determine the choice of predicate styles (see Table 7). This means that the speaker/writer employs the da-dearu-style when he/she speaks to his/her family or friends, but uses the desu-masu-style when he/she writes a letter to them as addressee(s)<sup>6</sup>

Table 7: Factors for deciding the choice of predicate styles: the da-dearu-style or the desu-masu-style

Style	Spoken language	Written language
<u>da-dearu</u> -style	- intimate, informal (in families, among close friends)	essays, theses, diaries, written reports, articles (in newspapers, contracts, laws, academic publications, and so on), etc
<u>desu-masu</u> -style	- formal - news in TV or radio	letters, advertisements, etc.

<sup>6</sup> See Maynard (1997b: 49-61) for further discussion



### 0.7.1 Predicate styles of four distinct predicate types

This subsection gives you the inflectional forms for four different Japanese predicate types: nominal, na-adjectival, i-adjectival and verbal predicates (see § 5.0). The abbreviation *pr.*, *pa.*, *aff.* and *neg.* used in Table 8 consisting of four parts (Tables 8-1 to 8-4) stands for present tense, past tense, affirmative and negative, respectively.

#### (1)/(2) Nominal and na-adjectival predicates (in the cases of *yuki* (雪/snow) and *kirei* (綺麗/beautiful))

Both predicate types have the same inflectional forms. We use *yuki* (雪/snow) as an example for the nominal predicate, < N + *da/desu/dearu* >, and *kirei* (綺麗/beautiful) for the na-adjectival predicate, < na-adj. + *da/desu/dearu* >

Table 8-1: Inflectional forms of the *da-dearu*-style and the *desu-masu* style in the case of nominal and na-adjectival predicates

		<i>da-dearu</i> -style		<i>desu-masu</i> -style	
Aff.	pr.	<i>yuki/kirei</i>	<i>da</i>	<i>yuki/kirei</i>	<i>desu</i>
	pa.	<i>yuki/kirei</i>	<i>da-ta</i>	<i>yuki/kirei</i>	<i>deshi-ta</i>
Neg.	pr.	<i>yuki/kirei</i>	<i>de wa na-i</i>	<i>yuki/kirei de wa ari-mase-n</i>	
	pa.	<i>yuki/kirei</i>	<i>de wa na-kat-ta</i>	<i>yuki/kirei de wa ari-mase-n</i>	<i>deshi-ta</i>

#### (3) I-adjectival predicate (in the case of i-adjective *aka* (赤/red))

Table 8-2: Inflectional forms of the *da-dearu*-style and the *desu-masu* style in the case of i-adjectival predicates

		<i>da-dearu</i> -style		<i>desu-masu</i> -style	
Aff.	pr.	<i>aka</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>aka-i</i>	<i>desu</i>
	pa.	<i>aka</i>	<i>kat-ta</i>	<i>aka-kat-ta</i>	<i>desu</i>
Neg.	pr.	<i>aka-ku-na</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>aka-ku ari-mase-n</i>	
	pa.	<i>aka-ku-na</i>	<i>kat-ta</i>	<i>aka-ku ari-mase-n</i>	<i>deshi-ta</i>
	pr.			<i>aka-ku na-i</i>	<i>desu</i>
	pa.			<i>aka-ku na-kat-ta</i>	<i>desu</i>

As can be seen from Table 8-2 above, the *desu-masu*-style has two different ways of negating i-adjectives both for the present and past tense *akaku arimasen* or *akaku nai desu* (赤くありません/赤くないです: something is not red), and *akaku arimasen deshita* or *akaku nakatta desu* (赤くありませんでした/赤くなかったです: something was not red)

#### (4) Verbal predicate (in the cases of the verb *tabe* (食べ/to eat) and the verb *aru* (ある/to be, to have, to occur))

Table 8-3: Inflectional forms of the *da-dearu*-style and the *desu-masu*-style in the case of verbal predicates

		<i>da-dearu</i> -style		<i>desu-masu</i> -style	
Aff.	pr.	<i>tabe</i>	<i>ru</i>	<i>tabe-masu</i>	
	pa.	<i>tabe</i>	<i>ta</i>	<i>tabe-mashi</i>	<i>ta</i>
Neg.	pr.	<i>tabe-na</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>tabe-mase-n</i>	
	pa.	<i>tabe-na</i>	<i>kat-ta</i>	<i>tabe-mase-n-i</i>	<i>deshi-ta</i>

Special attention must be paid to the verb *aru* (ある/to exist; to have, to occur), i.e. its negative forms in the *da-dearu*-style in Modern Japanese: it is not *ara-nai* and *ara-na-kat-ta*, but *na-i* and *na-kat-ta* as shown below (see Sentences 1, 2 and 3).

Table 8-4: Inflectional forms of the *da-dearu*-style and the *desu-masu*-style in the case of negated form of the verb *aru*

		<i>da-dearu</i> -style		<i>desu-masu</i> -style	
Aff.	pr.	<i>ar-u</i>		<i>ari-masu</i>	
	pa.	<i>a-i-ta</i>		<i>ari-mashi</i>	<i>ta</i>
Neg.	pr.	<i>na-i</i>		<i>ari-mase-n</i>	
	pa.	<i>na-kat-ta</i>		<i>ari-mase-n-i</i>	<i>deshi-ta</i>

1. Tsukue no ue ni hon ga aru  
机の上に本がある。  
There are some books on the desk
2. Tsukue no ue ni hon ga nai.  
机の上に本がない。  
There aren't any books on the desk
3. Tsukue no ue ni hon ga na-kat-ta  
机の上に本がなかった。  
There weren't any books on the desk

### 0.8 Other remarks

The sentences used as examples in the book are mostly written in the *da-dearu*-style. However, some sentences, which have polite implications or colloquial forms, are written in the *desu-masu*-style. The example sentences are numbered anew from one at the start of each new PP subsection

For most of the sentence structures and expressions, which require the i-adjective *yoi* (良い: *good*) the i-adjective *ii* (いい: *good*) is deliberately employed throughout the book, in order to convey a naturally sounding colloquial speech. For formal speech, however, the learner should use the i-adjective *yoi* (良い).

Regarding the English translations, many aspects of the Japanese language make deciding on a single translation difficult. Example sentences have, for the most part, no subjects since the omission of the syntactic subject is quite common in Japanese and, therefore, forms a more naturally sounding sentence. In these cases, the first person *I* or *we* has been used in the translation of a sentence. There is no distinction made between grammatical categories such as number in nouns (plural/singular), grammatical gender in nouns (masculine/feminine/neuter) or determination in nouns (definite/indefinite). Therefore, nouns are arbitrarily given in one of these forms in the English translations.

## Chapter 1 General Linguistic Features of Japanese PPs

### 1.1 An overview

Syntactically speaking, the English language belongs to the group of languages that have a subject-verb-object word order (SVO-pattern). Japanese, on the other hand, is categorized in the language group with a subject-object-verb word order (SOV-pattern). As with English and Japanese, it is frequently the case that the former type of languages has prepositions and the latter postpositions (Greenberg 1963: 73-113; Tsunoda 1997: 3-28).

The English prepositions have syntactic and semantic functions marking cases (Kageyama and Hoffmann 1990: 118; Davis 2000: 30) indicating direction (*along, back to, down, into, onto, to, towards, up, etc.*), a starting point (*from*), a partner (*with*), content (*about, on*), and so on. A part of Japanese PPs also functions in these roles (cf. Chapter 3), but Japanese PPs cover a much wider range of functions. They have, for example, syntactic functions such as coordinating nouns or sentences, e.g., *A and B, A or B, A as well as B* (cf. Chapter 4), or they indicate adverbial meanings such as *even, just, only, exclusively*, etc. (cf. Chapter 5). Many PPs are also used in conjunctive roles in order to express meanings such as *although, but, and, even if, because* and the like (cf. Chapter 6). Furthermore, they may even express modality, i.e. the emotions or attitudes of the speaker to the statement he/she makes, e.g., *surprise, anger, frustration, hesitation, suspicion, scorn, criticism, desperation*, etc. (cf. Chapter 7). This can best be illustrated with a few examples.

#### (1) Syntactic and semantic case marking (see Chapter 3)

##### 1. Tomu **ga** Nihon-go o Nihon de benkyou-shi-ta

PP: subject marker    PP: object marker    PP: locative (a place of an action)

トムが日本語を日本で勉強した。

*Tom learned Japanese in Japan*

#### (2) Copulative (see Chapter 4)

##### 2. Kinou depâto de hon to enpitsu wa ka-t-ta ga, nôto ya bôrupen wa kawa-na-kat-ta

昨日デパートで本と鉛筆は買ったが、ノートやボールペンは買わなかった。

*I bought books and pencils at a department store, but I didn't buy any notebooks, ballpoint pens, or other things yesterday.*

#### (3) Adverbial (see Chapter 5)

##### 3. Tomu wa yasai shika tabe-nai

トムは野菜しか食べない。

*Tom only eats vegetables*

#### (4) Conjunctive (see Chapter 6)

##### 4. Tomu wa saishoku-shugi-sha na node, niku ya sakana wa tabe-nai.

トムは肉食主義者なので、肉や魚は食べない。

Table 9: List of Japanese PPs (in an alphabetic order)

1. ba	29. mono	56. tatte [ta?te]/ datte [da?te]
2. bakari/bakkan [ba?kari]/bakashi/ bakka [ba?ka]	30. monode/ monde	57. tan/dan
3. dake	31. monoka/ monka	58. te/de
4. dano	32. mononara	59. teba/ tteba [?teba]
5. datte [da?te]	33. monono	60. temo/demo
6. de	34. monoo	61. to
7. demo	35. na/naa	62. toka
8. domo	36. nado	63. tokorode
9. dokoroka	37. nagara	64. tokoroga
10. e (え)	38. nanka	65. tomo
11. e (へ)	39. nante	66. tote
12. ga	40. nanzo/nazo	67. tsutsu
13. gurai/kurai	41. nari	68. tte [?te]
14. hodo	42. ne/nee	69. o (を)
15. i	43. ni	70. wa (は)
16. ka	44. nite	71. wa (わ)
17. kana	45. no	72. wai (わい)
18. kara	46. node	73. ya
19. kashira	47. nomi	74. yai
20. ke/kke [?ke]	48. noni	75. yara
21. kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo	49. sa	76. yo
22. kin	50. sae	77. yori
23. koso	51. shi	78. ze
24. koto	52. shika	79. zo
25. kototote	53. shimo	80. zutsu
26. kusen	54. sura	
27. made	55. tara/tara [?tara]	
28. mo		

Tom doesn't eat meat, fish, and the like, **because** he's a vegetarian.

(5) Modality (see Chapter 7)

5. Toukyou no bukka wa takai desu ne!

東京の物価は高いですね。

**No/Wow/My god!** Things are so expensive in Tokyo!

A brief summary of the syntactic categories of PPs follows in Chapter 2 and concrete examples are introduced in the respective chapters (see Chapters 3 to 7) with general descriptions of main features as mentioned afore. As for the total number of PPs, there are different opinions among Japanese grammarians (Kokuritsu-kokujo-kenkyūjo 1984; Kitagawa et al. 1988; Okutsu et al. 1986; Chino et al. 1987). For the sake of systematic explanations, this handbook deals with eighty PPs in total (see Table 9)

## 1.2 Phonology

Most of the PPs listed in this book show the predominant phonotactic pattern CV, consonant-vowel phoneme combination. As can be seen from Table 10, there are ten different phonotactic combinations for Japanese PPs. The most frequent form is the CV-CV type with 32 cases followed by the CV type with 20 cases. When the term 'mora' is defined as a unit of phonological duration for pronouncing phonemes, the number of mora per PP ranges from one to four; two and three moraic PPs are the most common

Table 10: Phonotactics of Japanese PPs

No.	Phono-tactics	Mora	Number of PPs	PP
1.	V	1	4	e (え), e (へ), i, o
2.	CV	1	20	ba, de, ga, ka, ke, mo, na, ne, ni, no, sa, shi [ɕi] [ʃi], te, to, wa (は), wa (わ), ya, yo, ze, zo
3.	CV-V	2	4	sae, sei, naa, nee
4.	C-CV	2	2	kke, tte [?te]
5.	CV-CV	2	32	dake, dano, demo, domo, hodo, kara, kedo, kiri, koso, koto, made, mono, nado, nari, nazo, node, nomi, noni, shika, shimo, sura, tara (dara), tari (dari), teba, temo, toka, tomo, tote, tsutsu, yara, yori, zutsu
6.	CV-C-CV	3	5	monde, monka, nanka, nante, tatte (datte)
7.	CV-CV-V	3	3	kurai, gurai, monoo
8.	C-CV-CV	3	2	tara [?tara], tteba [?teba]
9.	CV-CV-CV	3	8	bakari, kashira, kedomo, keredo, kusen, monode, monoka, nagara
10.	CV-CV-CV-CV	4	6	dokoroka, keredomo, kototote, mononara, tokorode, tokoroga

N.B.: C (consonant), V (vowel). The hyphen signals the moraic segmentation

## 1.3 Morphology

Japanese PPs are not inflectional. This book lists eighty PPs (see Table 9), but this number can change when different linguistic criteria are used as the basis for categorization.

For example, the conjunctive PP **monono** (ものの) is regarded as one word in this book. It can, however, also be interpreted as a compound consisting of the pseudo-noun **mono** (物/もの) and the PP **no** (の). Momiyama (2002: 87-90) also points out a specific language change, namely the changing of nouns to conjunctive PPs. He determines it as a grammaticalization of nouns into functional words.

Table 11 portrays a list of PPs which can be morphologically analysed in a different way than that presented in this book; namely, as pseudo-nouns in the cases of the PPs **dake** (だけ), **hodo** (ほど) and **kurai** (くらい), or as compounds comprised of a pseudo-noun and a PP or an auxiliary verb (Nagata et al. 1987)



Table 11: Different morphological interpretations of Japanese PPs

PP	Pseudo-Noun (+ PP/Aux.)	Remarks
dake	dake (丈)	cf. § 5.2.2
hodo	hodo (程)	cf. § 5.2.5
kototote	koto (事) + PP tote	cf. § 6.2.7
kurai/gurai	kurai (位)	<b>Gurai</b> is a phonologically changed form of <b>kurai</b> , the initial voiceless velar plosive [k] has changed to a voiced sound [g] (cf. § 5.2.9).
kuseni	kuse (癖) + PP ni	cf. § 6.2.8
monode	mono (物) + PP de	cf. § 6.2.10
mononara	mono (物) + nara	<b>nara</b> (conditional form of the auxiliary verb <b>da</b> [だ]) (cf. § 6.2.11)
monono	mono (物) + PP no	cf. § 6.2.12
monoo	mono (物) + PP o	cf. § 6.2.13
tokorode	tokoro (所) + PP de	cf. § 6.2.24
tokoroga	tokoro (所) + PP ga	cf. § 6.2.25
dokoroka	tokoro (所) + PP ka	<b>Dokoro</b> is a phonologically changed form of <b>tokoro</b> , the initial voiceless alveolar plosive [t] has changed to a voiced sound [d] (cf. § 6.2.2).

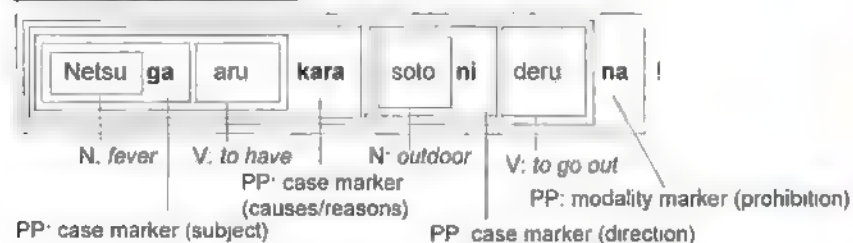
## 1.4 Syntax

The syntactic characteristics of Japanese PPs are summarized below.

### 1.4.1 Word order

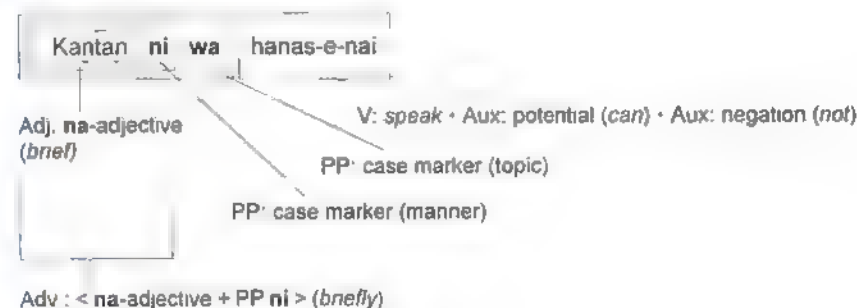
As the name implies, PPs are placed after nouns (see Chapters 3, 4 and 5), adverbs, adverbials, subordinate clauses (see Chapter 6), or even noun phrases that are already marked with other PPs (cf. § 1.4.3). In the case of modality expressing PPs, they can also be placed after main clauses (see Chapter 7). The following diagrams serve to illustrate the typical structure of Japanese sentences. For the sake of convenience, we call constituents/entities of sentences such as postpositional phrases consisting of a noun and a PP or PPs, adverbials, and predicates, **entries**. From the viewpoint of Case Grammar it can also be called *argument* (Fillmore 1971; 1987).

#### (1) After nouns and sentences



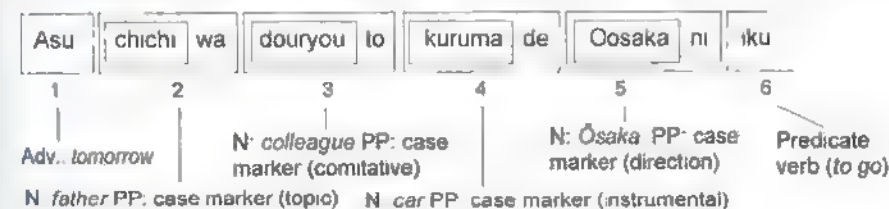
6. 熱があるから、外に出るな!  
Because you've got a fever, don't go outside!

#### 2) After an adjective, adverb and a PP



7. 簡単には話せない。  
I can't speak briefly (about something)

Japanese word order within a sentence is quite flexible with one restriction: the predicate has to be at the end of the sentence. Just as postpositional phrases comprising of a noun and a PP or PPs, adverbs and predicates can also make entries of a sentence.<sup>7</sup> The following sentence, for instance, is composed of six entries:



8. 明日父は同僚と車で大阪に行く。  
My father is driving to Osaka with his colleague tomorrow.

The word order of the above sentence could also have been:

Chichi wa (2) douryou to (3) kuruma de (4) Osaka ni (5) asu (1) iku (6).  
Chichi wa (2) kuruma de (4) douryou to (3) asu (1) Osaka ni (5) iku (6).  
Asu (1) chichi wa (2) Osaka ni (5) douryou to (3) kuruma de (4) iku (6).  
Chichi wa (2) asu (1) Osaka ni (5) kuruma de (4) douryou to (3) iku (6).  
Osaka ni (5) chichi wa (2) asu (1) douryou to (3) kuruma de (4) iku (6).  
Osaka ni (5) chichi wa (2) kuruma de (4) douryou to (3) asu (1) iku (6).  
Kuruma de (4) chichi wa (2) douryou to (3) asu (1) Osaka ni (5) iku (6).  
Kuruma de (4) douryou to (3) Osaka ni (5) chichi wa (2) asu (1) iku (6).  
etc

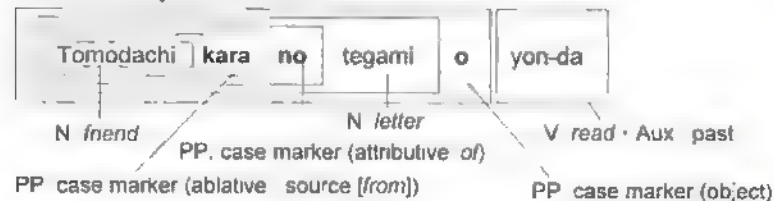
<sup>7</sup> Japanese sentences can drop contextually recoverable entries excluding predicates, i.e. the predicates alone can constitute sentences (Katsuki 1991: 98, Uehara 1998: 85)



As illustrated above, there are, at least theoretically, many ways of arranging the order of entries in a sentence (Katsuki 1991: 98; Tsujimura 1996: 185-212; Tonoike 1997; Ishii 1998: 431-444). However, the topic is generally mentioned at the beginning and the predicate must always be placed at the end of the sentence.

#### 1.4.2 Multiple use of PPs

A noun or a sentence can be marked by more than one PP. The following example clarifies this syntactic feature



9. 友達からの手紙を読んだ。  
I read a letter from my friend

#### 1.4.3 Hierarchy of PPs in the multiple use

There is a hierarchical relation when multiple PPs are used



10. コートは五万円ぐらいまでのをしか買わない。  
I will only buy a coat if it costs less than approximately 50,000 yen

The five PPs used in this example are placed in the order of 1 (gurai: approximation), 2 (made: limit), 3 (no: attributive), 4 (o: syntactic object) and 5 (shika: exclusiveness). There are certain regularities in the sequence of multiple PPs (Teramura 1991: 3-190). However, a further discussion of this topic is omitted as it comes outside the scope of this handbook.

#### 1.4.4 Dual cases

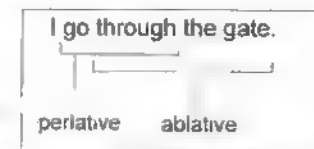
Some case marking PPs have dual semantic functions contained within one PP. Here, by way of example, in the next two subsections, we take a detailed look at the PPs *kara* (から) and *o* (を) to illustrate this characteristic. Both PPs have a perlocative function marking the point within a location, through which somebody is passing (see §§ 3.2.4.7 and 3.2.8.4). The major difference between the two, however, is that the PP *kara* (から) is used with verbs of entering, whereas the PP *o* (を) combines with verbs of passing through

##### 1.4.4.1 PP *kara* (から) in the function of < perlocative + ablative >

Sentence 11 using the PP *kara* (から) draws one's attention to the very starting point of

the action going through, namely the gate (*mon*/門). It also has a connotation that something/somebody carries out this action in order to reach a destination which is not explicitly mentioned in the sentence. In this way the PP *kara* (から) has a perlocative and an ablative function.

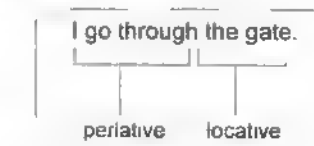
11. Mon kara hairu.  
門から入る。  
I go through the gate (to get to somewhere else)



##### 1.4.4.2 PP *o* (を) in the function of < perlocative + locative >

In the case of Sentence 12, the PP, in its locative functionality, draws the attention to the place of action, namely at the gate, as well as to the action itself, to go through the gate. The indication of the place of motion or movement is also incorporated in the PP *o* (を). The perlocative meaning is also derived from the compound verb *toori-nuke-ru* (to go through). *toori-ru* (to pass) and *nuke-ru* (to go through). Thus, the PP *o* (を), in this case, has a locative and a perlocative function.

12. Mon o toori-nukeru.  
門を通り抜ける。  
I go through the gate.



#### 1.4.5 Marking of syntactic relations

Particular PPs indicate the syntactic relation of entries (see § 3.1) used in a sentence such as subject or object

13. Inu ga niku o tabe-ta.  
犬が肉を食べた。  
The dog ate meat.

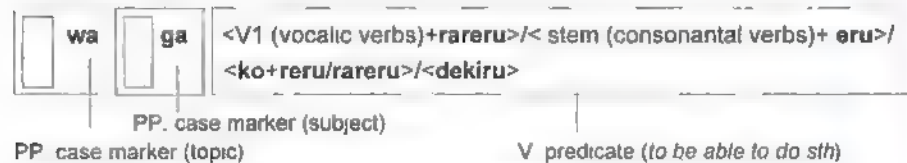
The PP *ga* (が) marks the syntactic subject, and *o* (を) the syntactic object of a sentence. They are called case marking PPs and their functions will be explained in Chapter 3 in detail

#### 1.4.6 Case alterations

In potential, passive and desiderative expressions, there is a phenomenon of case alteration (Shibatani 1988: 247-264; Inoue 1991: 94; Hasegawa 1999: 120-146). We will analyse this in the following three subsections with the aid of schematized sentence structures, namely the *wa-ga-sentence structure* comprising three constituents: a topic marked with the PP *wa* (は), the syntactic subject designated with the PP *ga* (が), and the predicate.

##### 1.4.6.1 Potential expressions

With the following sentence structure the speaker can express that he/she is capable of doing something



The following is a sentence constructed according to the above syntax:

14. Watashi wa Nihon-go ga hanas-eru

私は日本語が話せる。

*I can speak Japanese. (Lit.: As far as I am concerned, Japanese is speakable)*

**Watashi** (私/I) is the topic, and **Nihon-go** (日本語/the Japanese language) is the subject of the above sentence. There is, however, a tendency in Modern Japanese to use the object case marker PP **o** (を) instead of the subject case marker PP **ga** (が) (Hasegawa 1999: 120-131). Thus, the same meaning can be expressed as follows:

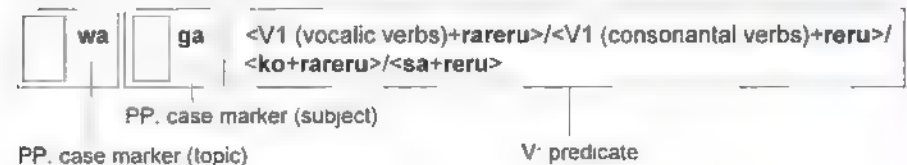
15. Watashi wa Nihon-go o hanas-eru.

私は日本語を話せる。

*I can speak Japanese. (Lit.: As far as I am concerned, I can speak Japanese)*

#### 1.4.6.2 Passive expressions<sup>8</sup>

The Japanese passive has two different semantic functions (Kimura 1995: 5; Nitta 1995: 32; Teramura 1995: 214-254). Firstly, it can be used in the same semantic sense as the English passive. The second semantic function is to express the disappointment, anger or sorrow of the speaker towards what will take place or what has taken place. In the latter usage, the subject case marking PP **ga** (が) is frequently replaced with the object case marking PP **o** (を) (Shirota 1998: 128-129; Hasegawa 1999: 120-146). For example:



16. Furui tatemono ga kowasa-re-ta

古い建物が壊された。

*An old building was destroyed*

17. Furui tatemono o kowasa-re-ta

古い建物を壊された。

<sup>8</sup> Maynard (1997: 129-132) depicts salient features of Japanese passives and Ikegami (1991: 303-314) analyses Japanese passives in respect to agentivity and causativity. Uda (1996) and Matsumoto (1996) describe morphosyntactic features of the Japanese passives in relation to causatives and benefactives.

*An old building was destroyed. (What a pity!/What a thing to do!)*

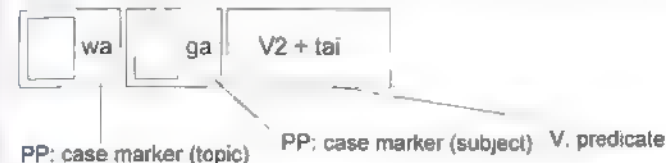
18. Dorobou ni kinko o nusuma-re-ta

泥棒に金庫を盗まれた。

*A burglar stole our safe (What a thing to happen!) (Lit.: I was stolen a safe by a burglar)*

#### 1.4.6.3 Desiderative expressions

Desiderative expressions have the same sentence structure as that of passive and potential sentences illustrated in Subsections 1.4.6.1 and 1.4.6.2. The auxiliary verb **tai** (たい) is agglutinated to the verbal inflection form V2 (see § 0.6.1.1). Note that in this case, there is a restriction in the grammatical category *person*, the topic, i.e. the person who wishes to do something, has to be the 1st person *I* or *we* (see Sentence 19).



19. Watashi wa kôhî ga nomi-tai.

私はコーヒーが飲みたい。

*I want to drink a cup of coffee*

Sentence 20 shows that in contemporary usage the subject marker PP **ga** (が) can be replaced by the object marker PP **o** (を) (Inoue 1991: 94).

20. Watashi wa kôhî o nomi-tai

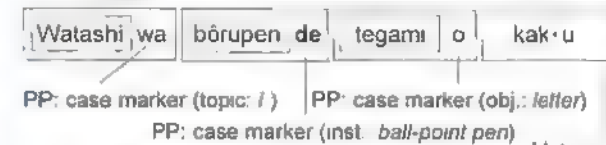
私はコーヒーを飲みたい。

*I want to drink a cup of coffee.*

#### 1.5 Semantics

Japanese PPs usually have multiple functions so that different meanings can be expressed using the same PP. The PP **kara** (から), for instance, has eight semantic case marking functions (see § 3.2.4) and four syntactic-semantic conjunctive functions (see § 6.2.5). This characteristic of polysemy is illustrated below with the aid of the PP **de** (で).

##### (1) Instrumental



21. 私はボールペンで手紙を書く。

*I will write a letter using a ballpoint pen*

(2) Locative: place of an action

PP: case marker (topic: friend[s])    PP: case marker (obj: book[s])

PP: case marker (locative: here)    V: to read • Time: present or future

22. 友達はどこで本を読む。

(My) friend(s) will read a book/books here.

(3) Causal: causes/reasons

PP: case marker (topic: I)

PP: case marker (obj: school)

PP: case marker (causal: causes/reasons [cold])

V: be absent • Aux: polite • Aux: past

23. 私は風邪で学校を休みました。

I didn't go to school because I had a cold

Furthermore, the PP *de* (で) has five other functions (see § 3.2.1). It is, however, not easy to make distinct functional differentiations of PPs purely using semantic criteria as the basis for differentiation. The following examples illustrate this difficulty.

(4) Ablative: a starting point

24. Koko kara shuppatsu-suru.

ここから出発する。

I start from here.

(5) Source

25. Jiko no koto wa Tomu kara ki-i-ta

事故のことはトムから聞いた。

I heard about the accident from Tom.

The use of the PP *kara* (から) in Sentence 24 above indicates a starting point, a physical place (here), whereas the use of the PP *kara* (から) in Sentence 25 also indicates a starting point, as the source (Tom). It is indeed not easy to make a clear distinction between the two functions 'ablative' and 'source'. The PP *kara* (から) in Sentence 25 could also be interpreted as having an ablative function, i.e., indicating the starting point of the information

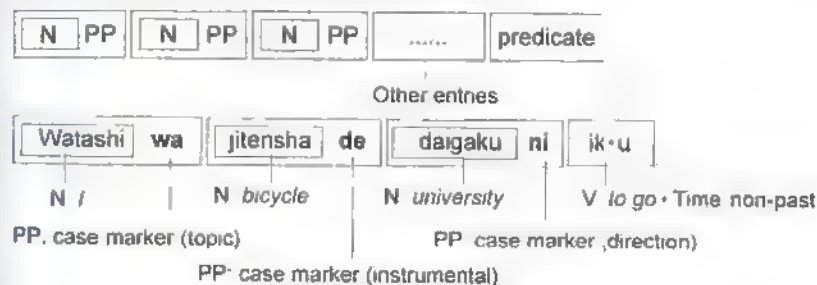
## Chapter 2

### Categories of PPs

As mentioned earlier, the number and the categorization of Japanese PPs may change according to the various current grammatical theories in Japanese linguistics (Kokuritsu-kokujo-kenkyūjo 1984, Kitagawa et al. 1988; Okutsu et al. 1986, Chino et al. 1987). This book recognizes eighty PPs (see Table 9 in Chapter 1) altogether that are categorized in five different groups: case marking PPs (Chapter 3), copulative PPs (see Chapter 4), adverbial PPs (see Chapter 5), conjunctive PPs (see Chapter 6) and modality expressing PPs (see Chapter 7). Since some PPs belong to more than one category, the total number of PPs, amounting to 103, which are categorized into the five groups below (see Table 12), does not coincide with the afore mentioned total number of 80.

#### 2.1 Case marking PPs (see Chapter 3)

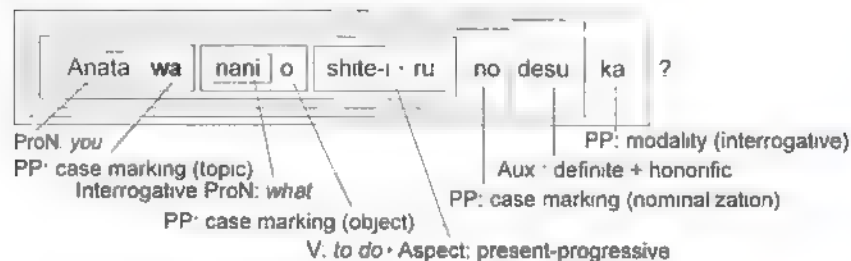
A postpositional phrase is an entry (constituent/entity) consisting of a noun and a case marking PP or PPs. This book defines the syntactic and semantic case as that in which the PP acts as an indicator of syntactic-semantic relation between nouns used in a sentence. Each entry also defines its relationship to the predicate located at the end of a sentence. This can be illustrated as follows:



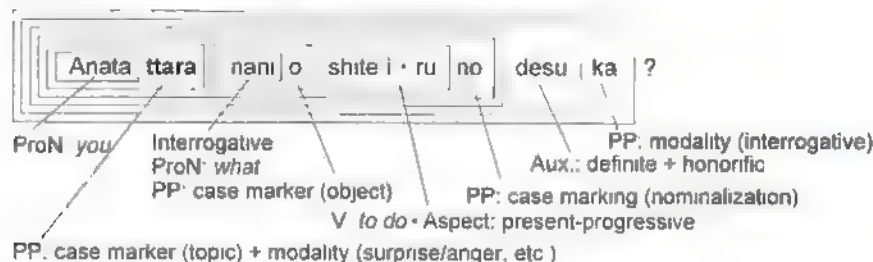
There are two types of case marking PPs: Type A and Type B (see Table 12). The first type denotes solely the syntactic and semantic relationships of nouns used in a sentence, e.g. temporative (time), locative (a place), purposive (an aim/a purpose), etc. The second type, in addition to these syntactic and semantic functions, also express emotions or attitudes of the speaker to his/her statements: such as astonishment, or contempt, or his feeling that something/somebody is worthless/unimportant, and other feelings. On the one hand they have the role of raising the topic, and on the other hand they have, simultaneously, a role of expressing the speaker's feelings and emotions. The following examples should make this difference between these two types clear. We will use two topic raising PPs *wa* (は) as an example of a Type A PP (see Diagram 1 below) and *tara* (たら) as an example of a Type B PP (see Diagram 2 below).

When suprasegmental features are not taken into consideration, Sentence 1 is neutral in its meaning, but Sentence 2, depending upon the context in which this statement is made, expresses the surprise or anger of the speaker to the proposition that you are doing something.



Diagram 1: The PP *wa* (は)

1. あなたは何をしているのですか。  
What are you doing?

Diagram 2: The PP *ttara* (ったら)

2. あなたったら何をしているのですか。  
What in the world are you doing! / What ARE YOU doing here! (I am surprised to find you here!)

## 2.2 Copulative PPs (see Chapter 4)

Some PPs are used to create lists of entries (nouns, postpositional phrases or clauses) within a sentence. They are further subdivided into three groups according to whether the list is complete, incomplete, or disjunctive. The following examples depict these three semantically different types of copulative PPs.

### (1) Complete listing

3. Koko ni hon to enpitsu ga aru.  
ここに本と鉛筆がある。  
There is a book **and** a pencil here. (There is nothing else. That's all)

### (2) Incomplete listing

4. Koko ni hon ya enpitsu ga aru.  
ここに本や鉛筆がある。  
**Among other things**, there is a book and a pencil. (There are other things, too)

Table 12: The five categories of Japanese PPs based on syntax and semantics

Number	Category of PPs
1.	Type A: <b>Case marking PPs</b> (with syntactic and semantic functions) de, e (へ), ga, kara, made, ni, no, o, to, yori
10	Type B: <b>Case marking PPs</b> (with syntactic, semantic and modality functions) mo, nado, nanka, nante, nanzo/nazo, tara/ttara [?tara], tte [?tte], wa (は)
8	
2.	<b>Copulative PPs</b> dano, ka, mo, nari, ni, no, shi, tari (/dari), to, toka, ya, yara
12	
3.	<b>Adverbial PPs</b> bakan/bakkan/bakka/bakashi, dake, datte [da?te], demo, hodo, ka, kin, koso, kurai/gurai, made, mo, nari, nomi, sae, shika, shimo, sura, tote, yara, zutsu
20	
4.	<b>Conjunctive PPs</b> ba, demo, dokoroka, domo, ga, kara, kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo, kototote, kuseni, mo, monde/monode, mononara, monono, monoo, nagara, nari, ni, node, noni, shi, tatte [ta?te] (/datte [da?te]), te (/de), temo (/demo), to, tokorode, tokoroga, tomo, tote, tsutsu
29	
5.	<b>Modality expressing PPs</b> e (え), ga, i, ka, kashira, ke/kke [?ke], kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo, koto, mono, monka/monoka, na/naa, ne/nee, ni, no, sa, tara/ttara [?tara], teba/tteba [?teba], tomo, wa (わ), wai (わい), ya, yai, yara, yo, ze, zo
26	
103	

N.B. The PPs which have phonologically altered forms, namely where the initial alveolar plosive [t] changes from the voiceless to the voiced phonation [d], are indicated in parentheses

Owing to the fact that some PPs synchronously belong to different categories, the total number of PPs listed in Table 12 goes beyond the number 80, which has been given in Table 9 in Chapter 1 as the total existing PPs

### (3) Disjunctive listing

5. Hon ka enpitsu o kudasai  
本か鉛筆を下さい。  
Please give me a book **or** a pencil.

### 2.3 Adverbial PPs (see Chapter 5)

This group of PPs, when placed after nouns, express adverbial meanings such as *only*, *even*, *for example*, *solely* and so on.

6. Gaikoku-go wa Furansu-go shika hanas-e-nai.  
外国語はフランス語しか話せない。  
*The only foreign language that I can speak is French*
7. Ei-go bakari hanashi-te-iru.  
英語ばかり話している。  
*I speak English all the time.*

### 2.4 Conjunctive PPs (see Chapter 6)

The role of PPs of this type is to coordinate sentences. By using conjunctive PPs the speaker can express the following English meanings: *but*, *even if*, *although*, *because*, *and*, *therefore*, *while*, etc. Some examples are given below

#### (1) Concessive concession

8. Mariko wa Ei-go ga hanas-eru noni, Ei-go o hanasa-nai.  
真理子は英語が話せるのに、英語を話さない。  
*Although Mariko can speak English, she doesn't.*

#### (2) Causal causes/reasons

9. Mariko wa Ei-go ga hanas-eru kara, Ei-go o hanasu.  
真理子は英語が話せるから、英語を話す。  
*Because Mariko can speak English, she does.*

#### (3) Adversative contrary

10. Mariko wa Ei-go ga hanas-eru ga, amari hanasa-nai.  
真理子は英語が話せるが、あまり話さない。  
*Mariko can speak English, but she doesn't speak it very often.*

There are many other conjunctive PPs with multifarious semantic roles. As can be seen from Table 12, there are lots of PPs belonging to this category (see Table 12).

### 2.5 Modality expressing PPs (see Chapter 7)

Modality expressing PPs are placed, in most cases, at the end of a sentence. They express the mental or emotional attitude of the speaker towards the statement he/she is making (Masuoka 1991; Nitta & Masuoka 1995; Nakau et al. 1998). By using PPs belonging to this category, the speaker can express his/her regret, astonishment, anger, hesitation, request, or one of many other emotions. Some examples are shown below

#### (1) Threat

11. Kane o dasa-nai to koroshi-te-yaru zo!  
金を出さないと殺してやるぞ。

**Watch out!** *If you don't hand over your money, I'll kill you! (Your money or your life!)*

#### (2) Astonishment

12. Kirei-na hana desu ne!  
綺麗な花ですね。  
*The flowers are very beautiful!*

#### (3) Suspicion or doubt

13. Hontou ka i?  
本当かい。  
*Is it true?*

#### (4) Definite statements

14. Hontou da yo!  
本当だよ。  
*It really is true!*

#### (5) Certainty

15. Hontou desu tomo!  
本当ですとも。  
*It surely is true!*

#### (6) Impatience

16. Hontou tteba!  
本当ってば。  
*Believe me! It's true! / Of course, it's true!*

Some modality expressing PPs are gender markers (see Sentences 17 and 18), and some are both the gender and the age marker of the speaker (see Sentences 19 and 20).

#### (7) A male speaker

17. Hontou da zo.  
本当だぞ。  
*It's true! (♂)*

#### (8) A female speaker

18. Hontou yo.  
本当よ。  
*It's true! (♀)*

#### (9) An old man

19. Konna no wa yo-ku-nai wai.  
こんなのは良くないわい。

*This isn't good at all. (♀)*

(10) A young boy

20. Konna no iya da i!

こんなのがいやだーい。

*I don't like it! (♀)*

## Chapter 3

### Case marking PPs: functions and usage

Case marking PPs were briefly introduced in Chapter 2. Because of the complexity of the case marking PPs, they warrant a chapter for themselves in which their functions can be summarized in detail. Section 3.1 deals with the Type A case marking PPs, which solely mark the syntactic and semantic relationship of nouns used in a sentence; concrete examples using this type of PPs are comprised in Section 3.2. Section 3.3 discusses the Type B case marking PPs, which have a threefold function, namely marking of the syntactic and semantic roles of nouns used in a sentence and the designation of the modality (emotions or stance of the speaker to a proposition). Section 3.4 clarifies the usage of Type B case marking PPs.

#### 3.1 The Type A case marking PPs (syntactic-semantic type)

As explained briefly in Section 2.1, the syntactic or semantic relation of postpositional phrases — each made up of a noun and a PP or PPs within a sentence — are indicated using PPs. There are ten such PPs: **de** (で), **e** (へ), **ga** (が), **kara** (から), **made** (まで), **ni** (に), **no** (の), **o** (を), **to** (と), and **yor**i (より). Each of these has one or more functions (see Table 13).

The PPs range from **ni** (に) and **no** (の), which are both multifunctional each having a total of twenty-three functions, to **made** (まで) in its function as a case marker, which has just one function. However, it can also be used as an adverbial PP to express adverbial meanings such as *simply*, *merely*, *even*, and so on. Its adverbial functions are described separately in Chapter 5 (see § 5.2.10).

##### 3.1.1 Functions of the Type A case marking PPs

Syntactic-semantic types of case marking PPs have, in total, thirty-three different functions (see Table 15), of which locative (a case indicating places) has a further thirteen different roles, as shown in Table 14. There are cases of duplicated functions and some cases that are only separated by a subtle nuance in meaning.

##### 3.1.1.1 PPs with the same or very similar functions

Some of the PPs functions, such as the difference between **e** (へ) and **ni** (に), or **kara**

Table 13: Type A case marking PPs

No.	PP	Number of functions	No.	PP	Number of functions
1	de (で)	8	6.	ni (に)	23
2	e (へ)	6	7.	no (の)	23
3.	ga (が)	8	8.	o (を)	6
4	kara (から)	11	9.	to (と)	14
5	made (まで)	1	10.	yori (より)	6



(から), **yori** (より) and **de** (で), have semantically identical or very similar roles. In most of the cases, but not all, they can be used interchangeably.

### 3.1.1.1.1 **e** (へ) and **ni** (に) as direction markers (see § 3.1.2.9)

In Sentence 1 below, it does not make any difference to the meaning whether the speaker uses **e** (へ) or **ni** (に), at least in contemporary usage of the language. Originally, there used to be a difference in that the use of **ni** (に) indicated a very concrete destination, whereas using **e** (へ) only indicated a vague direction (Matsuo 1995: 347). Due to this semantic alteration, which presumably first occurred at the end of the 8th century (Matsuo 1995: 347) and is still in the transitional phase, there are still cases in Modern Japanese where the PPs **ni** (に) and **e** (へ) cannot be used interchangeably (cf. §§ 3.2.6.5.1, 3.2.6.6 and 3.2.8.6).

1. **Amerika ni/e iku**  
アメリカに行く。/アメリカへ行く。  
*I am going to America.*

### 3.1.1.1.2 **kara** (から) and **yori** (より) as temporal ablative (starting points)

In Sentence 2, using **yori** (より) is more formal than using **kara** (から). They can generally be used interchangeably, however, owing to the polysemy of PPs, there are cases where more than one entry (constituent/entity) in a sentence are marked by the same PP **kara** (から) or **yori** (より), but in different semantic functions. Should this be the case, the speaker tends, as a matter of style, to use different PPs in different parts of the sentence with the same semantic roles in order to avoid making elusive statement (see Sentence 3).

2. **San-ji kara/yori kaigi ga hajimari-masu**  
三時から会議が始まります。/三時より会議が始まります。  
*The conference begins at three o'clock*
3. **San-ji yori kono hon no go-ju-p-pêji kara yomi-masu.** (Cf.: **San-ji kara kono hon no go-ju-p-pêji kara yomi-masu.**)  
三時よりこの本の五十ページから読みます。(三時からこの本の五十ページから読みます。)  
*Starting at three o'clock we will read the book from page fifty onwards*

### 3.1.1.1.3 **ni** (に), **kara** (から) and **de** (で) as agent markers

In Sentence 4, **ni** (に) and **kara** (から) are interchangeable, but they could not be replaced by **de** (で) which is used in Sentence 5, although they all mark the agent of an action. This restriction occurs due to two factors. firstly, differences in the structure of the sentence. Namely, Sentence 4 has the compound verb **TE-morau**, whereas Sentence 5 is comprised with the single verb **V3** (see § 0.6.1.1). Secondly, the lexical differences of the predicates determine the use of a specific PP (Muraki 1996: 137-172). The verb in Sentence 4 is a beneficiary verb and that of Sentence 5 denotes an active action of the syntactic subject as a benefactor.

4. **Sensei ni/kara Nihon-go o oshie-te-mora-t-ta**

先生に日本語を教えてもらった。/先生から日本語を教えてもらった。  
*My teacher taught me Japanese./I was taught Japanese by my teacher.*

5. **Roudou-kumiai-gawa de kekka o kumiai-in ni oshie-ta.**  
労働組合側で結果を組合員に教えた。  
*The labour union informed its members of the result(s).*

## 3.1.2 Locatives: local cases

There are thirteen local cases in Japanese (see Table 14). They mark a place of an action or an occurrence, a point of departure, a destination, or a location through which someone passes. Most of these PPs can be translated into English using the preposition *in*. In Japanese, however, there are seven different PPs: **de** (で), **e** (へ), **kara** (から), **ni** (に), **no** (の), **o** (を) and **yori** (より). These PPs are congruent with the verb used in the sentence, i.e. there is a dependency relation between these PPs and verbs, in that the semantic meanings of verbs determine which case marking PPs should be used (Teramura 1986: 87-138; Morita 1994: 41-75; Muraki 1996: 144-147).

### 3.1.2.1 Locatives: the place of existence

When something exists, its location is marked with the PP **ni** (に). The verbs of existence require their use: **iru** (いる/*to be there*) in the case of animate subjects, **aru** in the case of inanimate subjects (*ある/to be there*), **sonzai-suru** in the case of both animate and inanimate subjects (*存在する/to be there*), etc.

6. **Kono heya ni wa gakusei ga iru.**  
この部屋には学生がいる。  
*There are students in this room /There is a student in this room.*

Table 14: An inventory of local cases in Japanese

No.	Function	Postposition
1	Locative (a place of existence in the case of verbs of existence)	ni
2	Locative (a place of an action or an occurrence)	de
3	Locative (a place of an action in the case of static verbs)	ni
4	Locative (a place of an action in the case of verbs of motion)	o (を)
5	Locative (a point of departure)	o (を)
6	Local restrictive (a restriction of a place)	de
7	Local attributive (a specification of the location of nouns)	no
8	Local ablative (locality of a starting point)	kara, yori
9	Allative (a destination, a goal, a place one reaches)	e (へ), ni
10	Allative (a place or object one touches)	ni
11	Illative (somewhere where someone gets into)	ni
12	Perlative (a place where someone or something passes through) + Ablative (a starting place)	kara
13	Perlative (a place where someone passes through) + Locative (a place of motion)	o (を)

7. Watashi-tachi no daigaku ni wa tosho-kan ga aru.  
私達の大学には図書館がある。  
*There is a library at our university /We have a library at our university.*

**3.1.2.2 Locatives: the place of an action or an occurrence marked with the PP de**  
The PP *de* (で) is used with a large number of verbs, which designate actions or happenings. It indicates the site where the occurrence takes place.

8. Gakusei ga kono heya de benkyou-suru.  
学生がこの部屋で勉強する。  
*Students study in this room.*
9. Oka no ue/mae/ushiro/soba de nngo o taberu.  
丘の上(前/後ろ/傍)でりんごを食べる。  
*I eat an apple on/in front of/behind/near the hill.*
10. Jidousha-jiko ga machi no kousaten de oko-t-ta.  
自動車事故が町の交差点で起こった。  
*There was a car accident at an intersection in the city (Lit.: A car accident happened at an intersection in the city.)*

**3.1.2.3 Locatives: the place of an action or an occurrence marked with the PP ni**  
Certain types of verbs which have stative meanings such as *to stay* or *to live* are used together with the PP *ni* (に) in order to mark the place of residence or the place where somebody is staying: *taizai-suru* (滞在する/*to stay*), *tomar-u* (泊まる/*to stay over, to stay*), *shukuhaku-suru* (宿泊する/*to stay over, to stay*), *sum-u* (住む/*to live*), *nokor-u* (残る/*to stay behind*), etc. A static characteristic is embodied in these verbs (cf. § 3.2.6.2)

11. Nihon ni san-nen-kan taizai-shi-ta.  
日本に三年間滞在した。  
*I stayed in Japan for three years*
12. Konban wa kono hoteru ni tomaru.  
今晚はこのホテルに泊まる。  
*I will stay at this hotel tonight*
13. Kono machi ni wa takusan no gakusei ga su-n-de-iru.  
この町にはたくさんの学生が住んでいる。  
*Many students live in this city*

#### 3.1.2.4 Locatives: the place of a motion

The PP *o* (を) is used to indicate a place of an action when it is a motion such as *to fly*, *to run*, *to climb*, *to walk*, etc. Idiosyncratic verbs of motion are used in this case: *aruk-u* (歩く/*to walk*), *tob-u* (飛ぶ/*to fly*), *nobor-u* (上る/*to go up*), *nobor-u* (登る/*to climb*), *sanpo-suru* (散歩する/*to take a walk*), *hashir-u* (走る/*to run; to drive*), *ha-u* (這う/*to crawl*), *sakanobor-u* (漕る/*to go, to sail; to row against the current; to swim upstream*), *mawar-u* (回る/*to go around*), *ryokou-suru* (旅行する/*to travel*), etc

**Table 15: An inventory of the functions of the Type A case marking PPs (syntactic-semantic case markers)**

1.	addressee (a person to whom an action is directed)
2.	adessive (a person/thing against whom/which an action is directed)
3.	agent (a person who performs an action)
4.	appearance (how somebody/something looks like)
5.	attributive (specifications of a noun)
6.	copulative (listings; coordinations)
7.	exclusive (exclusiveness)
8.	benefactive (beneficiary; somebody who receives a benefit)
9.	directional (directions/destinations)
10.	purposive (purposes)
11.	content
12.	instrumental (means/instruments)
13.	causal (causes/reasons)
14.	comitative (a person with whom somebody carries out an action)
15.	comparative (comparisons)
16.	comparative criteria (criteria of a comparison)
17.	criteria
18.	manner
19.	modality (emotions or attitudes of the speaker to the statement he/she makes) (see § 3.3)
20.	syntactic object
21.	semantic object of verbs of success or non success
22.	possessive (possessors)
23.	quantitative (quantities)
24.	quantitative criteria (criteria of quantity)
25.	restrictive (restrictions)
26.	syntactic subject
27.	temporative (time)
28.	temporal restrictive (time boundaries)
29.	temporal ablative (starting time)
30.	resultative/translative (results of an action or a happening)
31.	locative (local places)*
32.	limit
33.	topic (topic raising) (see § 3.3)

N.B.: \*Local cases are listed separately (see § 3.1.2. Table 14)

14. Heya no naka o aruki-mawara-nai de kudasai  
部屋の中を歩き回らないで下さい。  
*Please do not walk around in the room.*

### 3.1.2.5 Locatives: the place of departure

A place from which someone leaves is marked with *o* (を). Verbs denoting departure or leaving somewhere require this PP: *de·ru* (出る */to leave; to go out; to come out; to check out; to graduate from*), *sar·u* (去る */to leave*), *ori·ru* (降りる */to get off*), *hanare·ru* (離れる */to leave; to depart from; to get away from*), *shuppatsu-suru* (出発する */to start from*), *sutāto-suru* (スタートする */to start from*), *sotsugyou-suru* (卒業する */to graduate from*), *yame·ru* (止める */to quit; to stop*), *yame·ru* (辞める */to quit; to retire from*), *jinin-suru* (辞任する */to resign*), *jishoku-suru* (辞職する */to resign*), etc.

15. Sen-kyuu-hyaku-kyuu-juu-hachi-nen ni daigaku o de-ta.  
一九九八年に大学を出た。  
*I graduated from university in 1998*
16. San-ji ni daigaku o de-ta  
三時に大学を出た。  
*I left the university at 3 o'clock*

### 3.1.2.6 Local restrictives: a restriction on a place of action

When an action or something that occurs is restricted in its locality, i.e. in the sense that it does not happen everywhere, the PP *de* (で) is used. This usage of the PP *de* (で) is usually accompanied by the topic raising PP *wa* (は; see § 3.4.9.1): "N de wa".

17. Nihon de wa uchi ni hairu toki ni kutsu o nuga-na-kere-ba-nara-nai.  
日本では家に入る時に靴を脱がなければならない。  
*In Japan you have to take off your shoes when you enter a house*

### 3.1.2.7 Local attributives: a specification of the location of a noun

The PP *no* (の) is generally used to specify a noun through one or more other nouns. The speaker can indicate many meanings using the PP *no* (の; see § 3.2.7); its function as a local attributive is one of its many semantic roles.

18. kono heya no gakusei  
この部屋の学生  
*the students/the student/a student in this room*

### 3.1.2.8 Local ablatives: a starting point

A physical starting point is marked by the PP *kara* (から) or *yori* (より). The latter is more formal (see § 3.1.1.2)

19. Kono rain kara sutāto-shi-te-kudasai.  
このラインからスタートして下さい。  
*Please start from this line!*

20. Koko yori saki wa tachi-iri-kinshi da  
ここより先は立ち入り禁止だ。  
*From now on, keep out!*

### 3.1.2.9 Allatives: a destination; a goal; a place someone reaches (see § 3.1.1.1.1)

A place someone reaches is marked with the PPs *ni* (に) or *e* (へ). They can be used interchangeably. Verbs meaning *to arrive* require these PPs: *tsuk·u* (着く */to arrive*), *touchaku-suru* (到着する */to arrive*), *tas-suru* (達する */to reach; to arrive*), *toutatsu-suru* (到達する */to reach*), and other synonyms. Verbs which have the meaning of *to concentrate* are also categorized in this group; the speaker regards the act of concentration as aiming at something, for instance, a goal: *shuuchuu-suru* (集中する */to concentrate on*), *netchuu-suru* (熱中する */to be enthusiastic in; to devote oneself to*), *chakumoku-suru* (着目する */to aim at; to pay attention to*), etc.

21. Nanta-kuukou ni/e gogo yo-ji ni tsuku  
成田空港に午後四時に着く。  
*I will get to the Nanta Airport at four o'clock in the afternoon*
22. Benkyou ni shuuchuu-suru.  
勉強に集中する。  
*I concentrate on my studies*

### 3.1.2.10 Allatives: a place of contact

A place where something or somebody touches is marked by the PP *ni* (に). Verbs with the sememe of *touching*, both in a concrete or abstract sense, require this PP: *nur·u* (塗る */to paint*), *har·u* (貼る */to paste*), *sawar·u* (触る */to touch*), *fure·ru* (触れる */to touch*), *teishoku-suru* (抵触する */to conflict [with regulations, etc.]*).

23. Kabe ni penki o nuru.  
壁にペンキを塗る。  
*I paint the wall*
24. Watashi no te ni fure-nai de kudasai  
私の手に触れないで下さい。  
*Please do not touch my hand!*

Other verbs, which have a connotation of *to touch* in an obscure sense, also belong to this group. *kan-suru* (関する */to relate to*), *kan'yo-suru* (関与する */to have something to do with; to participate in*), *chakushu-suru* (着手する */to commence; to undertake; to begin; to initiate*), *tori-kakaru* (取りかかる */to begin; to set about; to commence*), etc.

### 3.1.2.11 Illatives: a place or thing someone enters or gets into

A place or thing, which someone *enters* or *gets into*, is marked by the PP *ni* (に). Verbs which mean *to enter* or *to get into* require this PP: *hair·u* (入る */to enter*), *nor·u* (乗る */to get into; to get on [a vehicle]*), etc.

25. Heya ni hairu.



部屋に入る。

*I go into the room./I enter the room*

26. Furo ni hairu

風呂に入る。

*I take a bath (Lit.: I get into the bathtub.)*

27. Basu ni noru.

バスに乗る。

*I get on the bus.*

**3.1.2.12 Perlatives (a place through which someone passes) + Ablatives (a starting point)**

A place through which someone goes is marked by the PP *kara* (から). The perlative function of *kara* (から) in this usage is combined with its ablative function in that it also expresses a physical starting point of an action or an occurrence (see § 1.4.4.1). Verbs denoting *to enter* or *to get into*, as mentioned in Subsection 3.1.2.11, require this PP

28. Dorobou ga mado kara ie no naka ni hai-t-ta

泥棒が窓から家の中に入った。

*A burglar got into the house through the window*

**3.1.2.13 Perlatives (a place through which someone passes) + Locatives (a place of motion) (see § 3.2.8.4)**

A place through which someone or something goes, penetrates, or crosses is marked with the PP *o* (を). In addition to the perlative function, the locative function of *o* (を) specifies the location of the motion (see § 1.4.4.2). The following verbs belong to this group: *nagare·ru* (流れる/*to flow*), *tsuuka·suru* (通過する/*to go through; to run through; to fly over/through; to pass through*), *watar·u* (渡る/*to cross*), *toor·u* (通る/*to go through*), *he·ru* (経る/*to pass through*), *keiyu·suru* (経由する/*to fly via*), etc.

29. Michi o wataru

道を渡る。

*I cross the street*

30. Arasuka o keiyu-shi-te Toukyou ni iku.

アラスカを経由して東京に行く。

*I will fly to Tokyo via Alaska.*

31. Mōzeru-gawa ga Toriá no machi no naka o nagare-te-iru

モーゼル川がトリアーの町の中を流れている。

*The Mosel River runs through the City of Trier.*

32. Ressha ga eki o tsuuka-shi-ta

列車が駅を通過した。

*A train passed through the station*

**3.2 Usage of case marking PPs: syntactic-semantic type (Type A)**

**3.2.1 de (で)**

**3.2.1.1 Locatives: the place of an act or event**

A place of an action or an event is marked in most cases with the PP *de* (で)

1. Koko de hon o yomu

ここで本を読む。

*I read a book/books here*

2. Kodomo-tachi ga soto de aso-n-de-iru.

子供達が外で遊んでいる。

*The children are playing outside*

**3.2.1.2 Agents: the person who carries out an act**

The use of the PP *de* (で) in this function is rather limited. The nouns marked by the PP *de* (で) are often compound nouns with the bound form morpheme *gawa* (側/*side*) or with the free form morpheme *saido* (サイド/*side*). Other nouns used are usually institutions or personal pronouns in the plural form.

3. Yatou-gawa de kono kaikaku-an ni tsuyoi hantai no shisei o shimeshi-ta.

野党側でこの改革案に強い反対の姿勢を示した。

*The opposition parties were strongly against this reform plan. /The opposition parties showed a firm stance of rejection to this reform plan.*

4. Kore wa watashi-tachi de kangae-dashi-ta yari-kata da

これは私達で考え出したやり方だ。

*This is the method we have elaborated. /We have elaborated this method*

**3.2.1.3 Instrumentals: means; instruments; devices**

An instrument with which an action is carried out, or the material out of which something is made, are marked with the PP *de* (で)

5. Gakusei wa pen de tegami o ka-i-ta.

学生はペンで手紙を書いた。

*The student wrote a letter with a pen*

6. Kome de sake o tsukuru. (cf. § 3.2.4.3)

米で酒を造る。

*We make sake with rice*

7. Haha wa densha de eki made iku

母は電車で駅まで行く。

*My mother goes to the station by train*

**3.2.1.4 Causals: causes/reasons (cf. §§ 3.2.4.6 and 3.2.6.13)**

A reason or a cause for something is marked with the PP *de* (で)

8. Musuko wa byouki de gakkou o yasu-n-da.

息子は病気で学校を休んだ。

*My son didn't go to school because he was sick. (Lit.: ...because of his sickness.)*

9. Shiken no junbi de hima ga nai.

試験の準備で暇がない。

*I don't have any free time because I have to prepare for an examination. (Lit.: ...because of a preparation for an examination.)*

### 3.2.1.5 Manner

The manner in which an action is carried out, or how something happens, is marked with the PP **de** (で).

10. Zensoku-ryoku de hashi-t-ta

全速力で走った。

*I drove at full speed.*

11. Nani mo tabe-nai de shuumatsu o sugoshi-ta.

何も食べないで週末を過ごした。

*I didn't eat anything all weekend. (Lit.: I spent my weekend without eating anything.)*

### 3.2.1.6 Temporatives: a time (especially at the age of ...)

The temporal use of the PP **de** (で) is limited. It is often used in the sense of *at the age of ...*

12. Kodomo-tachi wa roku-sai de shougakkou ni nyuugaku-suru.

子供達は六歳で小学校に入学する。

*Children enter elementary school at the age of six*

### 3.2.1.7 Quantitatives: a standard; a limit of duration; a limit; a unit

A limit of duration or a unit of quantity within which something is done is marked with the PP **de** (で)

13. Mi-k-ka de kono shigoto o shi-ageru

三日でこの仕事を仕上げる。

*I will finish this work in three days*

14. Sen-en de o-tsuru o kudasai

千円でおつりを下さい。

*Please give me change for one thousand yen*

### 3.2.1.8 Restrictives: restrictions

The PP **de** (で) in this role is used mostly in conjunction with the topic raising PP **wa** (は): **de wa** (では). The restrictiveness that is applied here is either temporal (see § 3.2.1.8.1) or local (see § 3.2.1.8.2).

### 3.2.1.8.1 Temporal restrictions

Something which is not valid for the whole period of time, rather only for a restricted portion of this time, is marked with the PP **de** (で).

15. Kon'nichi de wa nougyou moikai-ka ga susu-n-de-ori, sagyou mo raku ni na-t-ta

今日では農業も機械化が進んでおり、作業も楽になった。

*Agriculture is highly mechanized today so that work has become easier./*

*Agriculture is highly mechanized today. Therefore, labour has become less strenuous*

### 3.2.1.8.2 Local restrictions

Something which is not valid everywhere but only for a certain locations is marked with the PP **de** (で)

16. Toukyou de wa, kuruma yori mo densha ya chikatetsu o tsuka-t-ta hou ga hayai.

東京では、車よりも電車や地下鉄を使った方が速い。

*It is quicker in Tokyo to take a train or a subway rather than driving a car (in order to reach a destination). (Lit.: In Tokyo it is quicker to use a train or a subway rather than a car.)*

### 3.2.2 e (へ)

The case marking PP **e** is written with the *hiragana* へ [he] with the pronunciation of [e], and not with the *hiragana* え [e], as is the case with the modality expressing PP **e** (え/see § 7.2.1). The six semantic roles are listed below which form a subset of those of the PP **ni** (に) so that the PPs **e** (へ) and **ni** (に) can in most cases be used interchangeably for the purposes described in this subsection (cf. **ni** (に) of § 3.2.6).

### 3.2.2.1 Directionals: directions (cf §§ 3.2.6.7 and 3.2.8.6)

The direction of an action or a motion is marked with the PP **e** (へ).

1. Toukyou e mukau

東京へ向かう。

*I am heading for Tôkyô*

2. Kita e iku

北へ行く。

*I'm going/driving/flying northwards*

3. Sono bôru o watashi no hou e nage-te-kudasai

そのボールを私の方へ投げて下さい。

*Please throw the ball to/towards me!*

### 3.2.2.2 Allatives: a destination (cf § 3.2.6.5.1)

A destination someone reaches is marked with the PP **e** (へ). Note that in the case of the verb **shuuchuu-suru** (集中する/to concentrate on) the PP **ni** (に) cannot be replaced by the PP **e** (へ) (see Sentence 6 below).

4. Mokuteki-chi e tsuku  
目的地へ着く。  
*I reach my destination.*
5. Narita-kuukou e touchaku-suru  
成田空港へ到着する。  
*I reach the Nanta Airport.*
6. Benkyou ni shuuchuu-shi-te-iru. (Wrong. Benkyou e shuuchuu-shi-te-iru.)  
勉強に集中している。  
*I'm concentrating on my studies*

### 3.2.2.3 Illatives: getting into a place (cf § 3.2.6 6)

The difference between the functions *allative* (see § 3.2.2.2) and *illative* is that the former has the meaning of *to get to* somewhere, whereas the latter indicates the nuance of *getting into* somewhere or something.

7. Mizo e hamaru  
溝へ嵌る。  
*I get into the ditch*

### 3.2.2.4 Directionals (directions) + Locatives (a place of existence)

The PP e (へ), in this usage, has a syncretism: it marks the direction of an action and, at the same time, the location of an object mentioned in the sentence. Verbs which have meanings such as *to put* and *to place* require this PP: *ok-u* (置く *to put; to place*), *haichi-suru* (配置する *to station; to post, to allocate; to dispose; to place; to staff*), *haibi-suru* (配備する *to station; to post; to array*), etc.

8. Koko e nimotsu o oi-te wa ike-nai  
ここへ荷物を置いてはいけない。  
*You can't put your luggage here./You are not allowed to put your luggage here.*

### 3.2.2.5 Addressees

A person or an institution to whom or towards which an action is directed is marked with the PP e (へ). The PP e (へ) of this function is interchangeable with the PP ni (に; see § 3.2.6 8)

9. Yamada-san e toi-awaseru.  
山田さんへ問い合わせる。  
*I will contact Mr/Ms Yamada and inquire about it./I will ask Mr/Ms Yamada about it.*
10. Tanaka-sensei e yoroshiku o-tsutae-kudasai  
田中先生へ宜しくお伝え下さい。  
*Please give my best regards to (my teacher,) Mr/Ms Tanaka.*
11. Nakamura-san e shirase-te-oi-te-kudasai  
中村さんへ知らせておいて下さい。  
*Please inform Mr/Ms Nakamura about it.*

### 3.2.2.6 Manner: < ... tokoro e >

The sentence structure < ... tokoro e > is used in concordance with aspectual expressions denoted by the verbal compound TE-iru (see Table 26 in § 6.2.21.9). The PP e (へ) in this usage is a manner marker. With the sentence structure given below, the speaker can express the aspectual meanings such as *something is in progress*, *somebody is just about to do something*, or *someone is on the verge of doing something* (proximative). Tokoro (所) is a pseudo-noun which has lost its original meaning of place and now has a purely syntactical role (see Nagara et al. 1987. 67-74). It is always followed by the PP e (へ).



12. Hon o yo-n-de-iru tokoro e tomodachi ga ya-t-te-ki-ta  
本を読んでいるところへ友達が出来て来た。  
*I was just reading a book when my friend came to visit me*

The sentence structures < V6 + u/you + to suru [〜う/よう+と] > or < V2 + kakeru [掛ける] >, which express a proximative aspectual meaning of *to be about to* or *on the verge of*, are often used for the subordinate clause within this sentence structure; there are even cases where more than one proximative aspectual sentence structures are exploited as illustrated in Sentence 13. It contains first the verb compound < V2 + kakeru > and secondly the sentence structure < V6 + u/you + to suru >.



13. De-kake-you to shi-te-iru tokoro e o-kyaku-san ga ya-t-te-ki-ta  
出掛けようとしているところへお客さんが来て来た。  
*A guest came to visit me just as I was about to leave*

In cases of verbs which have a sememe of instantaneous action or occurrence, the TA-form (see § 0.6.1.2) of the verb is used:



14. Choudo nemuri-kake-ta tokoro e denwa ga kaka-t-te-ki-ta.  
丁度眠りかけたところへ電話が掛かってきた。  
*I received a telephone call just as I was about to fall asleep.*

### 3.2.3 ga (が)

#### 3.2.3.1 Syntactic subjects

##### 3.2.3.1.1 Normal usage

The syntactic subject of a sentence is marked with the PP ga (が). Note that the



semantic case of the syntactic subject varies (Helbig 1992: 19-46) depending upon what is being expressed by the sentence. The following Sentences 1 to 3 all have a syntactic subject which is marked with the PP **ga** (が). However, their semantic cases differ as shown in parentheses below.

1. Ame **ga** fu-t-te-iru. (ame [rain] the object of the phenomenon)  
雨が降っている。  
It is raining.
2. Saru **ga** ki kara ochi-ta. (saru [monkey] the experiencer)  
猿が木から落ちた。  
A monkey fell down from the tree.
3. Me **ga** akai. (me [eye] a location)  
目が赤い。  
My eyes are red.

### 3.2.3.1.2 Subjekts in the wa-ga-sentence structure: < ~ wa ~ ga predicate >

This sentence structure consists of three entries: a postpositional phrase for the topic (...wa), a postpositional phrase for the subject (...ga), and a predicate.

4. Jon **wa** Nihon-go **ga** tokui da  
ジョンは日本語が得意だ。  
John is good at Japanese. (Lit.: Concerning John, Japanese is [his] speciality)
5. Tomu **wa** hana **ga** takai.  
トムは鼻が高い。  
Tom is proud of something, Tom is boasting about something; Tom's got a big nose (Lit.: Concerning Tom, [his] nose is high.)

### 3.2.3.1.3 Emphasis: < N ga N >; < N ga N + da/dearu + kara/shi >

These idiomatic expressions are used to emphasize the noun marked with the PP **ga** (が). The two diagrams below show their syntactic structure. The nouns marked with N in diagrams are always identical in respective sentence constructions.

#### (1) < N ga N >



#### (2) < N ga N + da/dearu + kara/shi >



PP case marker (subject)

PP: conjunctive (causal causes/reasons)

6. Mina **ga** mina kore o nozo-n-de-iru wake de wa nai

皆が皆これを望んでいるわけではない。

*Not everybody wants this*

7. Baai **ga** baai da kara, kon-kai wa yurushi-te-age-masho-u.  
場合が場合だから、今回は許して上げましょう。  
*Seeing as the circumstances are unusual, I'll forgive you (for this) this time*

### 3.2.3.2 Modality: profanity; insults

The PP **ga** (が) in this usage is an expression of modality. However, its syntactic structure is different from conjunctive (see § 6.2.4) or modality expressing PPs (see § 7.2.2) which are placed at the end of a subordinate or main clause. Here the PP **ga** (が) is placed after a noun instead. Because of this syntactic difference it is categorized into the case marking PPs in this book. The anger of the speaker is expressed in his statement by way of swearing at or insulting the addressee

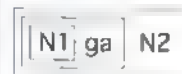
8. Baka-mono-me **ga**!  
馬鹿者奴が!  
You are an idiot!
9. Kono kichigai **ga**!  
この氣違いが!  
You are crazy!/You must be insane!

### 3.2.3.3 Expressions from Classical Japanese

There are some expressions used in Modern Japanese, which originally came from Classical Japanese. The following Subsections 3.2.3.3.1, 3.2.3.3.2, 3.2.3.3.3 and 3.2.3.3.4 show some examples.

#### 3.2.3.3.1 Possessives: the owner; the group to which someone belongs

The PP **ga** (が), in its possessive function, is very formal. It indicates the owner of something or the institution to which somebody belongs. This usage of the PP **ga** (が) is limited to just a few specific expressions in Modern Japanese



10. wa **ga** kuni  
我が国  
our country
11. ware-ra **ga** bokou  
我れ等が母校  
our Alma Mater

#### 3.2.3.3.2 Appearance: < V3 ga gotoku >

**Gotoku** (ごとく) is an adverbial form of the auxiliary verb **gotoshi** (ごとし) which has an i-adjective inflection. One of its semantic functions in Classical Japanese is an

expression of appearance: how things, situations or people look like.

V1+n	ga	gotoku	main sentence
------	----	--------	---------------

12. Otoko wa tobu **ga** gotoku heya o hashiri-sa-t-ta.  
男は飛ぶがごとく部屋を走り去った。  
*The man hurried out of the room, (Lit.: The man ran out of the room in such a way that it seemed as if he were flying)*
13. Chichi wa nemuru **ga** gotoku shi-n-de-i-t-ta.  
父は眠るがごとく死んでいった。  
*My father died in such a way that it seemed as if he were just falling asleep.*

### 3.2.3.3.3 Attributives: expressing a purpose: < V1 + n ga tame ni >

N (ん), which is placed after the verb inflection form V1 (see § 0.6.1.1), is an auxiliary verb in the volitional function<sup>9</sup>; it expresses the speaker's will to do something. Tame (為) is a pseudo-noun and is used to express the meaning of *in order to ...* It is not usually written in *kanji* but rather in *hiragana*. The PP ni (に) used after **tame** (為) has a purposive use (see § 3.2.6.10). The PP **ga** (が) does not have the purposive function; rather, in this sentence structure, it has an attributive role

V3	ga	tame	ni	main sentence
----	----	------	----	---------------

14. Iki-n **ga** tame ni hataraku  
生きんが為に働く。  
*In order to live, I work*

### 3.2.3.3.4 Attributives: expressing causes or reasons: < sore ga tame ni >

The sentence structure is the same as that in Subsection 3.2.3.3.3, but the pseudo-noun **tame** (為) is used in a different functional role, namely, in the role of indicating a reason or a cause

Sore	ga	tame	ni	main sentence
------	----	------	----	---------------

15. Sore **ga** tame ni chichi wa shi-n-da no da  
それが為に父は死んだのだ。  
*Due to this, my father died.*

<sup>9</sup> The auxiliary verb n (ん) is a phonologically altered form of the auxiliary mu (む [mu]) deriving from Classical Japanese, through the elipsis of the vowel [u], the bilabial nasal [m] has changed to the velar nasal [ŋ] or uvular nasal [ɴ]. This change took place in the 12th century (Ōno 1988: 56)

### 3.2.4 kara (から)

#### 3.2.4.1 Ablatives: a starting point

The time or place of the commencement of an action or a happening is labelled with the PP **kara** (から). The PP **kara** (から) can be replaced by the more formal PP **yor** (より) (see §§ 3.1.1.1 2 and 3.2.10)

##### 3.2.4.1.1 A temporal starting point

The time at which an action or a happening begins/began is marked with PP **kara** (から)

1. Jugyou wa ichi-ji **kara** hajimaru.  
授業は一時から始まる。  
*The lesson/lecture/class starts at one o'clock*
2. Juukyuu-seiki **kara** niju-s-seiki ni kake-te mezamashii hatten ga mi-rare-ta  
十九世紀から二十世紀にかけて目覚ましい発展が見られた。  
*There were remarkable developments during the 19th century and into the 20th century*
3. Mae-motte denwa o shi-te-**kara**, sochira ni iki-masu  
前もって電話をしてから、そちらに行きます。  
*I will give you a call before I go to your place/flat/office, etc (Lit.: I will give you a call beforehand and then I will go there.)*

##### 3.2.4.1.2 A local starting point

A physical starting point, where something begins to take place, is marked with the PP **kara** (から).

4. Kodomo ga gakkou **kara** kae-t-te-ki-ta.  
子供が学校から帰って来た。  
*Children came home from school.*
5. Eki **kara** daigaku made aru-i-te iku tsumori desu  
駅から大学まで歩いて行くつもりです。  
*I will walk from the train station to the university*

##### 3.2.4.1.3 A personal starting point

Nouns marked with the PP **kara** (から) can also be personal pronouns or people

6. Anata **kara** douzo  
あなたからどうぞ。  
*After you! /Please, (you) go first.*
7. Kodomo **kara** otoma made konpyūtāgēmu ni muchuu ni na-t-te-iru  
子供から大人までコンピューターゲームに夢中になっている。  
*Everybody, from kids to adults, enthusiastically play computer games*

## 3.2.4.2 Ablatives: a place of departure or detachment

The PP **kara** (から) is assigned to a noun when denoting a place, both in an abstract and concrete sense, from which something/somebody departs

8. Hito wa kiken **kara** toozakaru.  
人は危険から遠ざかる。  
*A man stays away from danger*
9. Isogashi-sa **kara** kaihou-sare-tai.  
忙しさから解放されたい。  
*I want to be freed from my busy life*
10. Chichi **kara** tegami ga ki-ta.  
父から手紙が来た。  
*I received a letter from my father. (Lit.: A letter came from my father.)*

## 3.2.4.3 Sources

The source of information obtained, the content of a composition of something, or materials out of which something is made, are marked with the PP **kara** (から).

11. Kono koto wa ano hito **kara** kiki-mashi-ta.  
この事はあの人から聞きました。  
*I heard it from him/her*
12. Mizu wa sanso to suiso **kara** naru kagou-butsu da.  
水は酸素と水素から成る化合物だ。  
*Water is a compound of oxygen and hydrogen.*

In cases where materials are being marked (see Sentences 13 and 14 below), the PP **de** (で) in the instrumental role can also be used (cf. § 3.2.1.3). In analogy to the sentence *sake wa kome de tsukuru* (酒は米で造る) the statement with the PP **kara** (から) puts the emphasis on the source and not on the means.

13. Chizu wa gyuu'nyuu **kara** tsukuru. (cf. Chizu wa gyuu'nyuu **de** tsukuru.)  
チーズは牛乳から造る。(cf. チーズは牛乳で造る.)  
*Cheese is made out of milk.*
14. Sake wa kome **kara** tsukuru. (cf. Sake wa kome **de** tsukuru.)  
酒は米から造る。(cf. 酒は米で造る.)  
*Sake is made from rice*

## 3.2.4.4 Possessives: the owner

The owner of an object mentioned in a sentence is marked with the PP **kara** (から). This function of **kara** (から) is realized in conjunction with verbs bearing meanings such as *to take something away*, *to rob somebody of something*, and the like. The PP **kara** (から), in the possessive function, can also be interpreted as an indicator of source from what/whom something is taken away (see § 3.2.4.3).

15. Oya wa kodomo **kara** naifu o tori-age-ta.  
親は子供からナイフを取り上げた。  
*The parents took the knife away from the child*
16. Kono dorobou wa kane-mochi **kara** shika mono o nusuma-nai.  
この泥棒は金持ちからしか物を盗まない。  
*This thief only steals from rich people.*
17. Goutou wa kaisha-in **kara** kuruma o uba-t-te nige-te-i-t-ta.  
強盗は会社員から車を奪って逃げていった。  
*The robber stole a car of an employee of the company and drove away.*

## 3.2.4.5 Agents

The agent of an action is marked with the PP **kara** (から). The verbs used in this case are those of the passive or beneficiary verbs — verbs of receiving — such as, **mora·u** (もらう *to receive*), **itadak·u** (頂く・戴く *to receive*), **oshie·ru** (教える *to teach*), **osowar·u** (教わる *to be taught*), **home·ru** (褒める *to praise*), etc. The PP **ni** (に) also has this function, and in these cases is interchangeable with the PP **kara** (から) see §§ 3.2.6.11.1 and 3.2.6.12)

18. Sensei **kara** oshie-te-itada-i-ta uta o mada wasure-te-i-mase-n.  
先生から教えて頂いた歌をまだ忘れていません。  
*I still haven't forgotten the song the teacher taught me.*
19. Ano hito wa dare **kara** mo hinaru-sare-na-ka-t-ta.  
あの人は誰からも非難されなかった。  
*He/She was not criticized by anybody./Nobody criticized him/her.*

## 3.2.4.6 Causals: causes/reasons (cf. §§ 3.2.6.13 and 5.2.2.3.3)

The cause or reason for something is labelled with the PP **kara** (から). In comparison with the use of the PP **de** (で), which also embodies the causal function (see § 3.2.1.4), the expression with **kara** (から) emphasizes the nuance of an instigator. On the other hand, the causal sentence with the PP **de** (で) merely signifies the reason for what is going to happen or what has happened.

20. Unten-shu no fu-chuu **kara** dai-sanji ni na-t-ta.  
運転手の不注意から大惨事になった。  
*A catastrophe arose due to the carelessness of the driver.*
21. Otoko no hito wa douyou **kara** naki-dashi-ta.  
男の人は動揺から泣き出した。  
*The man burst into tears because he was so upset*
22. Kaze **kara** haen o hiki-okoshi-ta.  
風邪から肺炎を引き起こした。  
*I got pneumonia from what started as a cold*
23. Kono jitsui **kara** kare ga han'nin da to waka-t-ta.  
この事実から彼が犯人だと分かった。



*Due to this fact we realized that he was the culprit.*

### 3.2.4.7 Perlatives (a point of passing through) + Ablative (a starting point)

The perlative case marker **kara** (から) attracts attention mainly to the fact that something/somebody is passing through somewhere. The ablative nuance is also incorporated in this case, indicating that this action begins from the location marked with the PP **kara** (から: see § 1.4.4 1).

24. Mon **kara** hairu.  
門から入る。  
*I go through the gate*
25. Mado **kara** soto no keshiki o nagameru  
窓から外の景色を眺める。  
*I see the outside scenery from the window*
26. Mado **kara** gomi o sute-te wa ik-e-mase-n.  
窓からゴミを捨ててはいけません。  
*You are not allowed to throw rubbish out of the window.*
27. Kiken desu **kara**, kuruma no mado **kara** kao o dasa-nai-de-kudasai.  
危険ですから、車の窓から顔を出さないで下さい。  
*Please do not stick your head out of the car window because it is dangerous.*

### 3.2.4.8 Modality: emphasis, surprise, unexpectedness

Sentient nuances, such as surprise, astonishment, unexpectedness or even scorn, or desperation, can be expressed with the PP **kara** (から). The PP **kara** (から), in this use, is employed as illustrated in the sentence structures below.

#### 3.2.4.8.1 < ~kara no ... >



PP: case marker (attributive: specification of a noun)

PP: case marker (modality: surprise/scorn/unexpectedness)

28. Hyaku-nin **kara** no hito ga atsuma-t-ta.  
百人からの人が集まった。  
*About a hundred people have gathered! (It is amazing!/It was unexpected!)*
29. 1-s-sen-man-en **kara** no shakkin ga aru.  
一千万円からの借金がある。  
*I have debts amounting to tens of millions of yen! (I'm desperate!)*

#### 3.2.4.8.2 < ~kara shite >



30. Sensei **kara** shite, sou iu mi-kata o suru  
先生からして、そういう見方をする。  
*Even our teacher thinks that! (Can you imagine!/It's incredible!)*  
*(Lit. Even our teacher has this viewpoint!)*

### 3.2.5 made (まで)

A local or temporal limit as well as a local destination is marked with the PP **made** (まで). Note that the PP **made** (まで) also has adverbial functions, which will be handled later in Chapter 5 (Adverbial PPs: see § 5.2.10).

#### 3.2.5.1 Local restrictives: an upper local limit

The upper limit of a distance is marked with the PP **made** (まで). It is common that an ablative postpositional phrase marked with the PP **kara** (から) indicating a starting point, is also incorporated into such sentences, thus describing a whole range or framework (see § 3.2.4 1)

1. Chikyuu **kara** tsuki **made** no kyori wa dono kurai desu ka?  
地球から月までの距離はどのくらいですか。  
*How far is it from the earth to the moon? (Lit.: Concerning the distance from the earth to the moon, how long is it approximately?)*
2. San-pêji **kara** ni-ju-p-pêji **made** yo-n-da  
ページから二十ページまで読んだ。  
*I read (the book) from page three to page twenty*
3. Yon-man-yen gurai **made** da-t-tara, o-kane o kifu-shi-temo ii  
四万円ぐらいまでだったら、お金を寄付してもいい。  
*I can make a donation of up to about 40,000 yen*

#### 3.2.5.2 Temporal restrictives: an upper temporal limit

In the same way, an upper temporal limit can be marked with the PP **made** (まで)

4. Fuyu-gakki wa juu-gatsu **kara** san-gatsu **made** da  
冬学期は十月から三月までだ。  
*The winter semester runs from October till March*
5. Go-sai **kara** ju-s-sai **made** Nihon ni i-ta  
五歳から十歳まで日本にいた。  
*I was/lived in Japan from the age of five until the age of ten*

#### 3.2.5.3 Allatives (a destination) + Restrictives (a limit)

The place someone reaches can be marked with the PP **made** (まで). In this case, the restrictive nuance is not very strong. However, depending upon the context in which the statement is made, the emphasis might be put more on the allative function of this PP. For example, the following sentence can be interpreted in two ways, depending on the context

6. Asu wa Rondon made ika-na-kere-ba-nara-nai  
 明日はロンドン まで行かなければならない。  
*I have to go to London tomorrow*  
*I have to go as far as London tomorrow*

### 3.2.6 ni (に)

The PP ni (に) has a wide range of functions as described below (see also Table 13)

#### 3.2.6.1 Locatives: a place of existence

The place where something/somebody exists is marked by the PP ni (に). Verbs of existence such as i·ru (いる/ to be; to exist) for animate subjects, ar·u (ある/ to be; to exist) for inanimate subjects, and sonzai-suru (存在する/ to be; to exist) for both animate and inanimate subjects are used in this case.

1. Kono heya ni wa gakusei ga iru. Niwa ni wa inu ga iru.  
 この部屋には学生がいる。庭には犬がいる。  
*There are students in this room./There is a student in this room.*  
*There are dogs in the garden./There is a dog in the garden.*
2. Hoka no wakusei ni seimei ga sonzai-suru ka dou ka wakara-nai.  
 他の惑星に生命が存在するかどうか分からない。  
*I don't know whether or not life exists on other planets.*

#### 3.2.6.2 Locatives: a place of an action or a happening in the case of static verbs

The PP de (で) is usually used to mark the place of an action or a happening (cf. § 3.2.1.1). There are, however, a few verbs which require the PP ni (に) in order to signalize the place of an activity with duration (cf. § 3.1.2.3). chuuzai-suru (駐在する/ to station; to stay), taizai-suru (滞在する/ to stay), todomar·u (留まる/ to remain; to stay), todomar·u (駐る/ to station; to stay), tomar·u (泊まる/ to stay), sum·u (住む/ to live), tats·u (立つ/ to stand up), and tsutome·ru (勤める/ to work). They all share a static characteristic. The place of an action or a happening marked with the PP ni (に) can be either concrete (see Sentences 3 to 5) or abstract (see Sentence 6)

3. Watashi wa Toukyou ni su-n-de-iru.  
 私は東京に住んでいる。  
*I live in Tokyo.*
4. Toukyou de wa doko no hoteru ni tomari-mashi-ta ka?  
 東京ではどこのホテルに泊まりましたか。  
*In which hotel did you stay in Tokyo?*
5. Chichi wa hoken-gaisha ni tsutome-te-iru.  
 父は保険会社に勤めている。  
*My father works at an insurance company*
6. Josei no tachi-ba ni ta-t-te mono o iu.  
 女性の立場に立って物を言う。

*I express my opinions from the viewpoint of a woman.*

#### 3.2.6.3 Temporatives: a time

Entries (constituents/entities) of a sentence that designate a time are marked with the PP ni (に).

7. Nihon no shin-gakki wa shi-gatsu ni hajimaru  
 日本の新学期は四月に始まる。  
*In Japan, school begins in April*
8. Asu, san-ji ni hoteru ni ki-te-kudasai  
 明日、三時にホテルに来て下さい。  
*Please come to the hotel at three o'clock tomorrow.*
9. Kyou koukuu-bin de kozutsumi o okuri-mashi-ta node, i-s-shuu-kan-inai ni sochira ni tsuku hazu desu.  
 今日航空便で小包を送りましたので、一週間以内にそちらに着くはず。  
*The parcel will get there within a week because I sent it by air mail today*

Temporal adverbs derived from nouns are to some extent used without any temporal case marker ni (に) kinou (昨日/ yesterday), kyou (今日/ today) ashita (明日/ tomorrow), kyonen (去年/ last year), kotoshi (今年/ this year), rainen (来年/ next year), etc

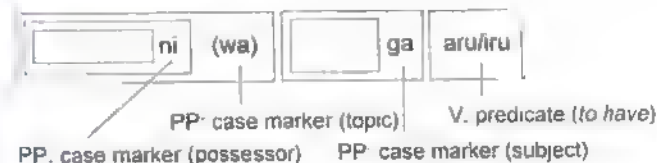
10. Kinou musume to issyo ni doubutsu-en ni i-t-ta  
 昨日娘と一緒に動物園に行った。  
*I went to the zoo with my daughter yesterday*

In the case of some noun derivations the use of the PP ni (に) is optional

11. Natsu (ni) Nihon ni iku tsumon da  
 夏(に)日本に行くつもりだ。  
*I'm thinking of going to Japan in the summer (Lit.: I have an intention of going to Japan in the summer.)*

#### 3.2.6.4 Possessives: the owner: < ... ni (wa) ... ga aru/iru >

The PP ni (に) in this sentence construction marks the owner. The verbs used in this case are i·ru (いる) or ar·u (ある) with the meaning of to have. Note that the negation of the verb aru (ある) in the da-dearu-style is the auxiliary verb nai (ない), which has an i-adjective inflection, and not ara-nai (see Table 8-4 in § 0.7) in Modern Japanese (see Sentence 13).



12. Watashi ni wa kodomo ga san-nin iru/aru.  
私には子供が三人いる。/私には子供が三人ある。  
*I have three children*

13. Watashi-tachi ni wa o-kane mo hima mo nai.  
私達にはお金も暇もない。  
*We have neither money nor time.*

### 3.2.6.5 Allatives

A place someone reaches or touches, both in a concrete and an abstract sense, is marked with the PP ni (に), and thus, the semantic object of concentration or focus, being a meeting-point, is also labelled with the PP ni (に: cf. Sentence 16).

#### 3.2.6.5.1 Allatives: a destination; an achievement

Verbs with the meaning of *to reach*, *to achieve*, *to concentrate on* or *to focus on* are used **tsuk-u** (着く *to arrive at*), **touchaku-suru** (到着する *to arrive at*), **tadori-tsuku** (辿り着く *to reach; to get to; arrive at*), **tas-suru** (達する *to reach; to attain; to arrive at*), **shuuchuu-suru** (集中する *to concentrate on; to converge on; to focus on/upon*), **oyob-u** (及ぶ *to reach*), **itar-u** (至る *to reach*), etc. Note that the PP ni (に) cannot be replaced with the PP e (へ: see § 3.2.2.2) in all cases. For example, the PP ni (に) in Sentences 14 and 15 is replaceable through the PP e (へ), however the verb **shuuchuu-suru** (集中する *to concentrate on*), as illustrated in Sentence 16, can not be rewritten using the PP e (へ).

14. Ryokou-saki ni wa asu tsuki-masu.  
旅行先には明日着きます。  
*I will reach my final destination tomorrow. (Lit.: I will reach the destination of my trip tomorrow)*
15. Mokuhyou ni tas-suru.  
目標に達する。  
*I achieve my aim/goal.*
16. Benkyou ni shuuchuu-shi-te-kudasai.  
勉強に集中して下さい。  
*Please concentrate on your studies*

#### 3.2.6.5.2 Allatives: a touching point

The place someone/something touches is marked with the PP ni (に)

17. Kabe ni karendā o haru.  
壁にカレンダーを貼る。  
*We stick the calendar on the wall*
18. Kitanai te de watashi no te ni fure-nai de kudasai.  
汚い手で私の手に触れないでください。  
*Please don't touch my hands with your grubby paws.*

### 3.2.6.6 Illatives: getting into a place (cf § 3.2.2.3)

A place reached through the motion of *getting into* something, is marked with the PP ni (に) In this case the compound verb < V2 + **kom-u** [込む] > is often used. In Sentence 21 the PP ni (に) can be replaced with the PP e (へ), but not with verbs **nor-u** (乗る *to ride; to get on*) and **hair-u** (入る *to enter*) used in Sentences 19 and 20

19. Basu ni noru.  
バスに乗る。  
*I get on the bus.*
20. Mai-nichi furo ni hairu.  
毎日風呂に入る。  
*I take a bath every day. (Lit.: I get into the bathtub every day.)*
21. Neko ga futon no naka ni hairi-kon-de-ki-ta.  
猫が布団の中に入り込んできた。  
*The cat sneaked into my bed.*

### 3.2.6.7 Directionals: a direction (see § 3.2.8.6)

A direction in which someone is moving or towards which someone is heading is marked with the PP ni (に). In this function the PP e (へ) can also be used (see § 3.2.2.1)

22. Daigaku ni iku.  
大学に行く。  
*I go to university.*
23. Biyou-in ni wa itsu iki-masu ka?  
美容院にはいつ行きますか。  
*When are you going to the hairdressers?/ When are you going to have your hair cut?*

### 3.2.6.8 Addressees

A person or an institution towards which an action is directed is marked with the PP ni (に). The PP e (へ) can also be used for this purpose (see § 3.2.2.5)

24. Kisha-dan ni happyou-suru.  
記者団に発表する。  
*We are giving a press conference for the journalists. (Lit.: We are reporting something to the group of journalists)*
25. Anata dake ni hanasu.  
あなただけに話す。  
*I am only saying it to you./I'm not going to tell it to anyone but you*
26. Kami ni chikau.  
神に誓う。  
*I pledge allegiance to god*



27. Jon ni denwa o kakeru  
ジョンに電話を掛ける。  
*I'm going to make a telephone call to John*
28. Sensei ni kiku.  
先生に聞く。  
*I'll ask the teacher (a question/something)*
29. Tanaka-san ni tanomu  
田中さんに頼む。  
*I'll ask Mr/Ms Tanaka (to do something)*
30. Tomodachi ni au  
友達に会う。  
*I'll meet up with my friend(s).*
31. Shachou ni kono puran o teian-suru  
社長にこのプランを提案する。  
*I'll suggest this plan to the president*
32. Kaisha ni kotae o motomeru  
会社に答えを求める。  
*We'll demand an answer from the company.*

### 3.2.6.9 Resultatives: the result of an action or a happening (see § 3.2.9.3)

Things/conditions which arise/arose through changes of any kind are marked with the PP *ni* (に). Verbs which imply a change of state are used in this case: *wake·ru* (分ける/*to divide sth into ...; to separate sth into ...*), *kettei-suru* (決定する/*to decide upon ...*), *kae·ru* (変える/*to change sth to ...*), *aratame·ru* (改める/*to reform; to change; to improve*), *zouka-suru* (増加する/*to increase to ...*), etc

33. Shingou ga aka ni kawa-t-ta.  
信号が赤に変わった。  
*The traffic light has changed to red.*
34. Musuko to musume wa isha ni na-t-ta  
息子と娘は医者になった。  
*Both my son and my daughter have become doctors.*
35. Musuko o isha ni shi-you to omo-t-te-iru.  
息子を医者にしようと思っている。  
*I am thinking of persuading/forcing my son to become a doctor.*
36. Yamada-san o gichou ni erabu.  
山田さんを議長に選ぶ。  
*We'll choose Mr/Ms Yamada as chairman*
37. Tanaka-san wa bu-chou ni shoukaku-shi-ta.

田中さんは部長に昇格した。  
*Mr/Ms Tanaka was promoted to general manager*

38. Ashita mitingu o hiraku koto ni shi-ta  
明日ミーティングを開くことにした  
*We have decided to have a meeting tomorrow*
39. Midonkawa-san to kekkon-suru koto ni kime-ta  
緑川さんと結婚することに決めた。  
*I have decided to marry Mr/Miss Midonkawa*

### 3.2.6.10 Purposives: a purpose

The purpose of an action is marked with the PP *ni* (に). The following two sentence structures are frequently used for this purpose:

V2	ni	iku/kuru/kaeru
----	----	----------------

N	ni	Verb
---	----	------

40. Hon o kai ni machi no honya ni i-t-te-kuru  
本を買いに町の本屋に行ってくる。  
*I will go to the bookstore in the city to buy a book/some books. (After I've done that, I'll be back.)<sup>10</sup>*
41. Kaimono ni issho ni iki-mase-n ka?  
買い物に一緒に行きませんか。  
*Would you like to go shopping with me?*
42. Haha o mukae ni eki made i-t-te-kuru  
母を迎えに駅まで行って来る。  
*I will go to the station to pick up my mother. (After I've done that, I'll be back.)<sup>10</sup>*
43. Kuruma wa mai-nichi no seikatsu ni wa benri da.  
車は毎日の生活には便利だ。  
*Cars are convenient in our everyday life.*
44. Igrisu ni iku ni wa hikouki de iku no ga ii.  
イギリスに行くには飛行機で行くのがいい。  
*It's best to get to England by airplane*

### 3.2.6.11 Agents

The agent of an action is marked with the PP *ni* (に) in passive, causative, and potential

<sup>10</sup> The nuance in parentheses arises owing to the verbal compound *TE-kuru* which automatically indicates that the agent of the action, here 'I', will return to the place at which the statement was made after the action has been carried out (see Table 26 in § 6.2.21.9)

sentences expressing ability (see §§ 3.2.6.11.1, 3.2.6.11.2 and 3.2.11.4). Also, in the case when the predicate is a verb of receiving, such as *mora·u* (もらう /to receive, to get, to obtain), *itadak·u* (頂く /戴く /to receive, to get, to obtain), *nara·u* (習う /to be taught), etc., the PP *ni* (に) is used to indicate the benefactor (see § 3.2.6.11.3).

### 3.2.6.11.1 The agent in passive sentences

The agent of passive sentences is marked with the PP *ni* (に) and the passive construction is built using the auxiliary verbs *reru* (れる) and *rareru* (られる): < V1 + *reru* (vocalic verbs) >, < V1 + *reru* (consonantal verbs) >, < *sa* + *reru* (*suru*-verbs) > and < *ko* + *rareru* (*kuru*-verbs) >. Note that the Japanese passive voice has two semantic functions (Teramura 1982: 214). On the one hand, it expresses the ordinary meaning of passive (see Sentence 45). On the other hand, it expresses a situation in which one is suffering or even offended by an action carried out by someone else (see Sentences 46 and 47). Sentence 46 conveys, for example, the nuance that *I am suffering from insufficient sleep because my child cries every night*. Here the agent of this action is *kodomo* (子供: [my] child), which is marked with the PP *ni* (に).

45. *Shizā wa Burūtasu ni koro-sare-ta*  
シーザーはブルータスに殺された。  
*Caesar was killed by Brutus.*
46. *Maiban, kodomo ni naka-re-te nemu-re-nai*  
毎晩、子供に泣かれて眠れない。  
*I can't sleep because our baby cries every night*
47. *Dorobou ni o-kane to houseki o nusuma-re-ta*  
泥棒にお金と宝石を盗まれた。  
*My money and jewellery were stolen by a burglar*

### 3.2.6.11.2 The agent in causative sentences

Causative sentences are built using auxiliary verbs *seru* (せる) and *saseru* (させる). < V1 + *saseru* (vocalic verbs) >, < V1 + *seru* (consonantal verbs) >, < *sa* + *seru* (*suru*-verbs) > and < *ko* + *saseru* (*kuru*-verbs) >. The Japanese causative also has two semantic meanings: *to let someone do something* and *to allow someone to do something*. A person who has to carry out an action or who has obtained permission to do something is marked with the PP *ni* (に). In this case the verbs have to be transitive verbs.

48. *Uchi de wa kodomo-tachi ni shokki o arawa-se-te-iru*  
家では子供達に食器を洗わせている。  
*In our family we let our children do the dishes.*
49. *Tomodachi ni watashi no pasokon o tsukawa-se-ta*  
友達に私のパソコンを使わせた。  
*I let my friend use my computer. / I allowed my friend to use my computer*

Note that the PP *o* (を) is used for marking an agent in causative sentences when intransitive verbs are involved.

50. *Kesa, otouto o kaibono ni ika-se-ta.*  
今朝、弟を買い物に行かせた。  
*I let my brother go shopping this morning*

In Sentence 50 above, *ik·u* (行く) is an intransitive verb, and therefore the agent is marked with the PP *o* (を): *otouto* (弟: younger brother). There is also a PP *ni* (に) in this sentence, (*kaibono ni*), which has a purposive function (see § 3.2.6.10).

### 3.2.6.11.3 The agent in the case of benefactive verbs: the benefactor; the giver

A giver of something, both in a concrete and an abstract sense, is marked with the PP *ni* (に). The verbs of giving and receiving require this use of the PP *ni* (に).

51. *Itou-san ni piano o oshie-te-mora-t-te-iru*  
伊藤さんにピアノを教えてもらっている。  
*Mr/Ms Itō gives me piano lessons. (Lit.: I get piano lessons from Mr/Ms Itō.)*
52. *Haha ni kono sukāfu o mora-t-ta*  
母にこのスカーフをもらった。  
*My mother gave me this scarf. (Lit.: I got this scarf from my mother.)*
53. *Tomodachi ni hon o kari-ta.*  
友達に本を借りた。  
*I borrowed a book/some books from my friend(s)*
54. *Kitayama-san ni wa hontou ni o-sewa ni na-t-ta*  
北山さんには本当に世話になった。  
*I am very thankful that Mr/Ms Kitayama has done so many things for me.*

### 3.2.6.11.4 The agent in the case of potential verbs

A person who is capable of doing something is marked with the PP *ni* (に). In this case, potential verbs are employed: < V1 of vocalic verbs + *rareru* >; < V1 of consonantal verbs + *eru* >; *dekiru* (出来る /can; to be able to do sth) for the *suru*-verbs; and *ko-rareru/reru* (来られる /来れる /to be able to come) for the *kuru*-verbs.

55. *Kono kikai wa omo-ku-te watashi ni wa mochi-age-rare-nai.*  
この機械は重くて私には持ち上げられない。  
*This machine is so heavy that I can't lift it*
56. *Chisai kodomo ni wa yom-e-nai kanji da*  
小さい子供には読めない漢字だ。  
*This is a Chinese character which small children won't be able to read*
57. *Watashi ni dekiru shigoto nara yoroko-n-de hiki-uke-masu.*  
私に出来る仕事なら喜んで引き受けます。  
*If I can do the job, I'll take it with pleasure.*

### 3.2.6.12 Benefactives with verbs of giving: the receiver/the benefactee

A person who obtains a benefit is marked with the PP *ni* (に). The verbs of giving make

use of this function of the PP *ni* (に) *age·ru* (上げる/ito give), *sashi-age·ru* (差し上げる/ito give), *purezento-suru* (プレゼントする/ito give something as a present), *okur·u* (贈る/ito give something as a present), *kure·ru* (くれる/ito give), *kudasar·u* (下さる/ito give), etc. Note that there are many factors which determine which of the many Japanese verbs with the meaning of *to give* has to be used: (1) direction in which something is being given (from the speaker to the receiver or vice versa), (2) the grammatical person (1., 2. or 3. person) of the giver and of the receiver, (3) the hierarchical relations of the speaker and the receiver, (4) the relationship of the speaker to the receiver, i.e. whether he/she belongs to the speaker's group or not (Katsuki 1991: 40-56). Detailed explanations on the use of "verbs of giving and receiving" go beyond the scope of this book and are, therefore, not dealt with in any great detail here (see Table 27 in Chapter 6)

58. Tomodachi ni hon o age-ta.  
友達に本を上げた。  
*I gave my friend(s) a book/some books.*
59. Sakuban kodomo ni e-hon o yo-n-de-age-ta  
昨晚、子供に絵本を読んで上げた。  
*I read a children's picture book to my children last night*
60. Iwata-san ga otouto ni ka-t-te-kure-ta hon wa totemo omoshiroi.  
岩田さんが弟に買ってくれた本はとても面白い。  
*The book, which Mr/Ms Iwata bought for my (younger) brother, is very interesting.*
61. Watashi wa Kitamura san ni o-kane o kashi-ta.  
私は北村さんにお金を貸した。  
*I lent Mr/Ms Kitamura some money*
62. Watashi wa musume ni gurando-piano o ka-t-te-yaru tsumori da  
私は娘にグランドピアノを買ってやるつもりだ。  
*I am planning to buy a grand piano for my daughter.*

### 3.2.6.13 Causals: causes/reasons (cf. §§ 3.2.4.6 and 5.2.2.3.3)

A reason for or a cause of a certain physiological or emotional condition/situation is marked with the PP *ni* (に) in conjunction with the verbs of emotions: *odorok·u* (驚く/ to be surprised at/about), *ando-suru* (安堵する/ to be relieved), *obie·ru* (怯える/ to be scared of), etc. (Teramura 1982: 139-154) Note that the PP *de* (に), which is also a causal marker, cannot be replaced with the PP *ni* (に) in this function (cf. § 3.2.1.4).

63. Watashi wa jinsei ni tsukare-ta  
私は人生に疲れた。  
*I'm tired of life.*
64. Anata wa o-kane ni koma-t-ta koto ga nai.  
あなたはお金に困ったことがない。  
*You've never had any money troubles/problems.*
65. Sake ni yo-t-te-shima-t-ta.

酒に酔ってしまった。  
*I got drunk on sake*

66. Samu-sa ni furue-te-iru.  
寒さに震えている。  
*Due to the cold weather, I am shivering*
67. Byouki ni kurushi-n-de-iru.  
病気に苦しんでいる。  
*He/She's suffering from the disease*
68. Ningen-kankei ni nayamu  
人間関係に悩む。  
*He/She worries about human relationships.*
69. Shiken no kekka ni shitsubou-shi-ta  
試験の結果に失望した。  
*I was very disappointed with the result of my examination.*

### 3.2.6.14 Contents

A detailed specification of a condition or situation described by the predicate of a sentence is marked with the PP *ni* (に).

70. Ano hito wa doutoku-kan'nen ni toboshi  
あの人は道徳観念に乏しい。  
*He/She has very few morals. (Lit.: He/She is very poor in morals)*
71. Kodai-egyptu-jin wa tenmon-gaku ni kuwashi-kat-ta  
古代エジプト人は天文学に詳しかった。  
*The ancient Egyptians knew a lot about astronomy. (Lit.: The ancient Egyptians were well informed about astronomy.)*
72. Watashi wa kono shigoto ni wa mu-i-te-i-nai.  
私はこの仕事には向いていない。  
*I am not the proper person for this job. (Lit.: I don't have an aptitude for this job.)*
73. Michiko-san wa sainou ni meguma-re-te-iru  
道子さんは才能に恵まれている。  
*Michiko is very talented. (Lit., Michiko is rich in talent.)*

### 3.2.6.15 Manner

The way or the manner in which an action is carried out, as well as stating how things are, is marked with the PP *ni* (に)<sup>11</sup>

<sup>11</sup> In Classical Japanese, *ni* (に) is a part of an adverbial inflection of the *nari*-adjective (noun + *nari*): < noun + *ni* >. This book treats it as a PP due to its syntactic-semantic features



74. Otoko wa aomuke **ni** taore-ta  
男は仰向けに倒れた。  
*The man fell on to his back*
75. Akiraka **ni** anata no iu koto wa tadashi.  
明らかにあなたの言うことは正しい。  
*What you are saying is absolutely correct./You are absolutely right.*
76. Sen-shuu wa anata ni awa-zu **ni** ie ni kae-t-te-shima-t-ta.  
先週はあなたに会わずに家に帰ってしまった。  
*I regret that I went home last week without having seen you.*

A variety of adverbs consisting of a noun, mostly Sino-Japanese morpheme, and the PP **ni** (に) are common (Shirota 1998: 232). **gen ni** (現に/as a matter of fact) **is-shun ni** (一瞬に/instantly), **kyuu ni** (急に/suddenly), **koto ni** (殊に/especially), **narabi ni** (並びに/furthermore), **shidai ni** (次第に/gradually), **sude ni** (既に/already), **tadachi ni** (直ちに/right away), **tagai ni** (互いに/mutually), **tan ni** (単に/simply), **toki ni** (時に/sometimes), **toku ni** (特に/especially), **tomo ni** (共に/together), **tsui ni** (遂に/at last), **tsune ni** (常に/constantly), **wari ni** (割に/relatively), etc

### 3.2.6.16 Criteria

Criteria for quantities, comparisons or judgements are marked with the PP **ni** (に).

#### 3.2.6.16.1 Quantitative criteria

Criterion (unit of duration/quantity)	<b>ni</b>	frequency/quantity
---------------------------------------	-----------	--------------------

77. Mi-k-ka **ni** i-k-kai wa pūru **ni** oyogi **ni** i-t-te-iru  
三日に一回はプールに泳ぎに行っている。  
*I go swimming every three days. (Lit.: I go [to swim] to the swimming pool once every three days)*
78. Tomodachi wa ichi-nichi **ni** roku-ju-p-pon mo tabako o su-t-te-iru.  
友達は一日に六十本もたばこを吸っている。  
*My friend smokes sixty cigarettes a day. (It is astonishing!)*

The adverbial PP **mo** (に) used in Sentence 78 expresses the speaker's surprise (see § 5.2.11.9)

#### 3.2.6.16.2 Comparative criteria

The object of a comparison (a thing/person) is marked with the PP **ni** (に).

79. Watashi wa chichi **ni** ni-te-iru  
私は父に似ている。  
*I resemble my father*
80. A wa B **ni** hitoshu

AはBに等しい。  
*A is equal to B*

81. Watashi no bessou wa umi **ni** chikai.  
私の別荘は海に近い。  
*My weekend house is close to the sea*

#### 3.2.6.16.3 A basis of judgement

The basis of a judgement is marked with the PP **ni** (に). It is also usually used in conjunction with the topic marker PP **wa** (は): ... **ni wa** (～には)

82. Watashi **ni wa** kare no i-t-te-iru koto ga wakara-nai  
私には彼の言っていることが分からない。  
*I don't understand what he is saying.*
83. Watashi no musuko **ni wa** kono sētā wa ooki-sugiru  
私の息子にはこのセーターは大き過ぎる。  
*This sweater is too big for my son.*

#### 3.2.6.17 Adessives: the object of opposition

Objects/people against which/whom someone counters or opposes are marked with the PP **ni** (に). Verbs such as **taikou-suru** (対抗する/to confront with; to match with/against; compete with/against; to counter, to oppose to/against), **chokumen-suru** (直面する/to confront with, to face with, to encounter), **shoutotsu-suru** (衝突する/to crash against/into, to strike against; to conflict with, to interfere, to collide with), **han-suru** (反する/to be contrary to; to be contradictory to; to oppose against/to), etc make use of this PP

84. Wakai toki wa oya **ni** sakara-t-ta  
若い時は親に逆らった。  
*When I was young, I was not obedient to my parents*

#### 3.2.6.18 The object of approval or disapproval

Semantic objects/people of which/whom someone approves or disapproves are marked with the PP **ni** (に), which appears in conjunction with verbs denoting an action of approval or disapproval

85. Watashi wa anata no teian **ni wa** sansei-suru ga, kare no teian **ni wa** hantai da.  
私はあなたの提案には賛成するが、彼の提案には反対だ。  
*I am in favour of your suggestion, but not of his*

#### 3.2.6.19 The object of verbs of success or failure

Things in which someone succeeds or fails are marked with the PP **ni** (に).

86. Amerika wa sensou **ni** ka-t-ta ga, Nihon wa sensou **ni** make-ta.  
アメリカは戦争に勝ったが、日本は戦争に負けた。  
*America won the war, but Japan lost it*

87. Watashi wa shiken ni uka-t-ta ga, tomodachi wa shiken ni ochi-ta.  
私は試験に受かったが、友達は試験に落ちた。  
*I passed the exam, but my friend failed it.*
88. Chichi wa kaisha-keiei ni shippai-shi-ta ga, oji wa kaisha-keiei ni seikou-shi-ta.  
父は会社経営に失敗したが、叔父(伯父)は会社経営に成功した。  
*Where my father failed in the running of his company, my uncle succeeded*

### 3.2.7 no (の)

The PP **no (の)** has seven main syntactic-semantic roles. Its predominant semantic function is attributive (§ 3.2.7.1), which is further divided into sixteen subgroups (see §§ 3.2.7.1.1–3.2.7.1.16). The last subsection (§ 3.2.7.8) explains a general syntactic property of PPs by using the PP **no (の)**, namely dual/multiple agglutination of PPs

#### 3.2.7.1 Attributives: specifications of a noun

The speaker can use the PP **no (の)** to specify a noun more precisely. The semantic meanings expressed through the PP **no (の)** are, as listed below, multifarious. Altogether there are sixteen different types of semantic specifications. The context, in which the statement is made, is often a decisive factor for determining the semantic meaning of the PP **no (の)**. The basic syntactic structure is as shown below



PP: case marker (attributive: specification of N2 through N1)

##### 3.2.7.1.1 Possessives: the owner

1. Watashi no hon wa kore desu.  
私の本はこれです。  
*This is my book. (Lit.: My book is this.)*

##### 3.2.7.1.2 Locatives: a place of existence

2. Doitsu no kawa wa nagai.  
ドイツの川は長い。  
*The German rivers are long. (Lit.: The rivers in Germany are long.)*
3. Watashi wa Nihon no shuukan o shira-nai.  
私は日本の習慣を知らない。  
*I don't know Japanese customs. (Lit.: I don't know the customs in Japan.)*
4. Toukyou no chijin ga ya-t-te-kuru.  
東京の知人がやって来る。  
*My friend from Tōkyō is coming to visit me*

5. Sekkei-jou no kekkan de jiko ga oko-t-ta  
設計上の欠陥で事故が起こった。  
*Due to the failures in the construction plan, an accident happened*

#### 3.2.7.1.3 Locatives: a place of an action or a happening

6. Kaigi no kaijou wa doko desu ka?  
会議の会場はどこですか。  
*Where is the conference held? (Lit.: Where is the place of the conference?)*

#### 3.2.7.1.4 Material

7. Renga no ie ga mieru.  
レンガの家が見える。  
*I can see a brick house. (Lit.: A house built with bricks is visible.)*
8. Kawa no kutsu o ka-t-ta.  
革の靴を買った。  
*I bought a pair of leather shoes*

#### 3.2.7.1.5 Temporatives: a time

9. Sen-kyuu-hyaku-kyuu-juu-nen no ichi-gatsu ni kodomo ga umare-ta.  
一九九〇年の一月に子供が生まれた。  
*Our child was born in January 1990*
10. Kon-nichi no kyouiku wa ooku no mondai o kakae-te-iru.  
今日の教育は多くの問題を抱えている。  
*There are many problems with today's education*

#### 3.2.7.1.6 Appositions

N 1 and N 2 are identical but the content of N2 is more concrete than N1. Note that in the case of the appositional use of the PP **no (の)**, N1 and N2 cannot be swapped without completely changing the meaning (see Sentence 11 below).



- |   |    |  |
|---|----|--|
| 11. Musuko no Tarou ga kekkon-shi-ta.<br>息子の太郎が結婚した。<br><i>My son, Tarō, has married.</i> | Cf | Tarou no musuko ga kekkon-shi-ta.<br>太郎の息子が結婚した。<br><i>Tarō's son has married.</i> |
|---|----|--|

#### 3.2.7.1.7 Characteristics: shape; colour; form, etc.

12. Sankaku-kei no fonsui o koshirae-ta.  
三角形の噴水を拵えた。  
*I made a triangular shaped fountain*

13. Kiku no you na kaori da  
 菊の様な香りだ。  
*It smells like a chrysanthemum.*

### 3.2.7.1.8 Manner

14. Chichi wa hinshi no juushou de byouin ni hakoba-re-ta.  
 父は瀕死の重傷で病院に運ばれた。  
*Because my father was seriously injured he was taken to hospital*

### 3.2.7.1.9 Agents

15. Yamada-san no choukoku-sakuhin wa subarashii  
 山田さんの彫刻作品は素晴らしい。  
*The sculpture made by Mr/Ms Yamada is fantastic*
16. Sokkou-jo no kiroku wa koko ni aru.  
 測候所の記録はここにある。  
*The weather station's records are here*

### 3.2.7.1.10 Places someone belongs to

17. Chichi wa saikousai no hanji da.  
 父は最高裁の判事だ。  
*My father is a judge in the Supreme Court*

### 3.2.7.1.11 Criteria

18. Ano hito no taijuu wa watashi no ni-bai da  
 あの人の体重は私の二倍だ。  
*His/Her weight is double mine*

### 3.2.7.1.12 Restrictives: a restriction

19. Douryou no hito-ri ga tazune-te-ki-ta.  
 同僚の一人が訪ねて来た。  
*One of my colleagues has come to visit me.*

### 3.2.7.1.13 Partial or holistic frameworks

20. Ichi-bu no hito wa demo ni hantai da  
 一部の人はデモに反対だ。  
*Some of the people are against the demonstration*
21. Subete no hito ga kono an ni sansei-shi-ta.  
 全ての人がこの案に賛成した。  
*Everyone approved of this suggestion. (Lit.: All the people have approved of this suggestion.)*

### 3.2.7.1.14 Purposives: a purpose

22. Sakusen no shiryō o tsuku-ta  
 作戦の資料を作った。  
*I prepared the materials for the strategy*

### 3.2.7.1.15 Syntactic objects

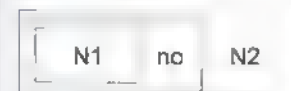
In the case of **suru**-compound verbs consisting of a noun and the verb **suru** (する/to do), such as, **senryō-suru** (占領する/to occupy), it can be separated into two entries (i.e. constituents/entities of a sentence), namely, the noun **senryō** (占領/occupation), which is marked with the object case marker PP **o** (を; see § 3.2.8.1), and the verb **suru** (する/to do), thus the sentence **senryō o suru** (占領をする/to occupy [Lit.: to do an occupation]) is built. In the following diagram N2 is the noun part, and the N1 is the syntactic object of such **suru**-verb-compounds. Therefore, the attributive PP **no** (の) designates the syntactic object



23. Kono kuni wa shima no senryō o shi-ta.  
 この国は島の占領をした。  
*The island was occupied by this country. (Lit.: This land occupied the island)*  
 (Cf.: Kono kuni wa shima o senryō-shita. この国は島を占領した。)
24. Kodomo no kyōiku wa muzukashii  
 子供の教育は難しい。  
*It is difficult to bring up children. (Lit.: Rearing children is difficult)*

### 3.2.7.1.16 Contents

N1 carries more detailed information about N2, and thereby describes the content of N2. A pseudo-noun can also be used for N1 or N2 (see § 3.2.7.1.16.2). The following two subsections (§§ 3.2.7.1.16.1 and 3.2.7.1.16.2) should clarify this semantic role of the PP **no** (の).



#### 3.2.7.1.16.1 < N1 no N2 >

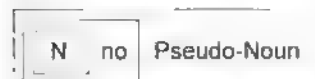
25. Minshu-shugi no hon o yomu.  
 民主主義の本を読む。  
*I read a book/some books on democracy.*
26. Tōitsu-Doitsu no mondai wa shinkoku da  
 統一ドイツの問題は深刻だ。  
*The problems of reunified Germany are serious.*



## 3.2.7.1.16.2 &lt; N no Pseudo-Noun &gt; or &lt; Pseudo-Noun no N &gt;

The pseudo-noun is a noun which has lost its original meaning, and now fulfils simply the syntactic function of a noun when forming particular sentences (Hayashi 1993: 416, Horiguchi 1989: 108; Suzuki 1988: 152; Nagara 1987). Using the pseudo-nouns, the speaker can express many different meanings. There are about thirty such pseudo-nouns in Japanese and they are usually written with *hiragana*. The two syntactic configurations for using pseudo-nouns are shown below.

## (1) &lt; N no Pseudo-Noun &gt;



We take the pseudo-nouns **tame** (為/for the benefit of; because of...), **toori** (通り/just in the same manner as...), **moto** (下/under...), **ue** (上/after...), **tokoro** (所/which; that) as examples below:

27. Sensou **no tame** Yūgosurabia o too-t-te Gīsha ni iku koto ga deki-na-ka-t-ta.  
戦争の為ユーゴスラビアを通してギリシャに行くことが出来なかった。  
*We couldn't go to Greece via Yugoslavia because of the war.*
28. Kono tegami **no toori** ni keikaku o susumeru  
この手紙の通りに計画を進める。  
*We will carry out our plan exactly as is written in this letter*
29. Ginkou-goutou wa houritsu **no moto** ni sabaka-re, juu-nen no kinkokei o ii-wata-sa-re-ta  
銀行強盗は法律の下に裁かれ、十年の禁固刑を言い渡された。  
*The bank robber went before the court and was then sentenced to ten years in prison. (Lit.: The bank robber was sentenced to ten years in prison under the law)*
30. Shachou to soudan **no ue** o-henji-itashi-masu.  
社長と相談の上お返事致します。  
*We will give you our answer after consulting our president.*

## (2) &lt; Pseudo-Noun no N &gt;

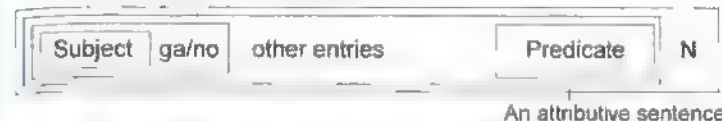


31. Saiban-sho ga motomete-iru **tokoro no** naiyou wa kore desu.  
裁判所が求めているところの内容はこれです。  
*This is the thing, which the court is demanding.*

## 3.2.7.2 Agents in attributive sentences

A noun can be specified by placing a sentence in front of it; thus creating an attributive sentence. The syntactic subject of this attributive sentence has to be marked using

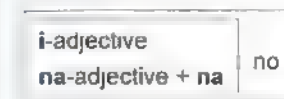
either the PP **ga** (が) or **no** (の).



32. Tomodachi **no** kuru hi ga machi-dooshi.  
友達に来る日が待ち遠しい。  
*I can hardly wait for the day when my friend comes to visit me.*

## 3.2.7.3 Noun-replacements

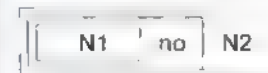
The PP **no** (の) is a prob word and can substitute for a noun, which is specified by an adjective (i-adjective or na-adjective) or by an attributive sentence, in order to avoid a repetition of words (when the context allows it). It corresponds to the English replaceive pronoun *one*.



33. Mottomo ooki **no** wa kore da  
最も大きいのはこれだ。  
*This is the biggest one. (Lit.: The thing which is the biggest is this.)*
34. Yasui **no** ga ii.  
安いのがいい。  
*The cheapest is the best (Lit.: Things which are cheap are good)/I prefer the cheaper/cheapest ones*
35. Kirei na **no** o kudasai  
綺麗なのを下さい。  
*Please give me the beautiful one. (Lit.: Please give me the thing which is beautiful)*
36. Sakana no shinsen na **no** ga tabe-tai  
魚の新鮮なのが食べたい。  
*I want to eat fresh fish. (Lit.: I want to eat fish which is fresh.)*

## 3.2.7.4 Possessives: &lt; ... no &gt;

When the noun (N2) is specified by the other noun (N1), and when the PP **no** (の) has a possessive function, the noun N2 can be omitted



37. Kore wa watashi **no** da  
これは私のだ。  
*This is mine*
38. Kono hon wa dare **no** desu ka?

この本は誰のですか。  
Whose book is this?

### 3.2.7.5 Nominalizations: < sentence + no >

One of the most frequent uses of the PP **no (の)** is for the nominalization of a sentence/clause. By nominalizing a sentence/clause, the sentence/clause with its agglutinated PP **no (の)** is handled as the noun in further sentence formation. Sentences 39 and 40 illustrate the nominalized sentence as the subject, and Sentence 41 illustrates it as the syntactic object.

Sentence/Clause	no	= a noun
-----------------	----	----------

39. Ashita isha ni ika-na-kere-ba nara-nai **no** wa watashi da.  
明日医者に行かなければならないのは私だ。  
*I'm the one who has to go to the doctor tomorrow.*

40. Yamada-san ttara, hanasu **no** no hayai koto!  
山田さんったら話すのの早いこと!  
*Wow! Mr/Ms Yamada speaks so quickly!*

41. Terebi o miru **no** o yame-ta.  
テレビを見るのを止めた。  
*I've decided not to watch TV any more.*

The second **no (の)** in Sentence 40 is a subject marker (see § 3.2.7.7)

### 3.2.7.6 Modality

The PP **no (の)** is used syntactically to form a nominalized sentence and its semantic role is to express the modality such as *doubt*, *assumption*, *certainty*, etc. We will see the following two syntactic constructions (see §§ 3.2.7.6.1 and 3.2.7.6.2).

#### 3.2.7.6.1 < ... no da/dearu/desu > or < ... n da/dearu/desu >

By using the following sentence configuration, the speaker can express many nuances or emotional implications: (1) his/her memory of something that occurred in the past, (2) his/her judgement about something, (3) an additional explanation to the statement he/she makes/has made, (4) his/her confidence in the statement, (5) his/her emotional emphasis on the statement, (6) the reason or basis of his/her opinion, etc. (Tanomura 1992, Maynard 1997: 181-191). The context determines the nuance or the meaning of the sentence using this sentence pattern.

Sentence	no/n	da/dearu/desu
----------	------	---------------

42. Ashita wa haisha ni iku **no** desu yo!  
明日は歯医者に行くのですよ。  
*Remember that you have to go to the dentist tomorrow!*

43. Yamada-san wa kaisha o yasu-n-da. Byouki na **no** da.

山田さんは会社を休んだ。病気なのだ。  
Mr/Ms Yamada wasn't at work. He/She is sick.

44. Sono hi wa ame ga fu-t-te-i-ta **no** da.  
その日は雨が降っていたのだ。  
*It was raining on that day.*

#### 3.2.7.6.2 Doubt or assumption with a firm ground: < ... no ka >

The speaker can use this sentence construction when he/she is very sure about his/her assumption. This is expressed as a nominalized sentence.

Sentence	no	ka
----------	----	----

45. Kimi mo konsaato ni iku **no** ka?  
君もコンサートに行くのか。  
*You're going to the concert, too, aren't you?*

#### 3.2.7.7 Syntactic subjects: < ...no no ... koto >

The PP **no (の)** marks the syntactic subject in the sentence structure < sentence **no** no predicate **koto** > which expresses astonishment, amazement and the like.

Sentence	no	no	predicate	koto	!
----------	----	----	-----------	------	---

46. Yamada-san ttara, hanasu **no** no hayai koto!  
山田さんったら話すのの早いこと!  
*Wow! Mr/Ms Yamada speaks so quickly!*

The first **no (の)** of Sentence 46 is a nominalizer (see § 3.2.7.5)

#### 3.2.7.8 Double/multiple case marking using the PP **no (の)**

Nouns can be specified with more than one PP (see Sentences 47-54). This use of multiple PPs is, however, limited to certain combinations of PPs and to a certain hierarchical order (Teramura 1991: 3-37). Sentence 54 is an example of such cases. A detailed elucidation of this theme would go beyond the scope of this book and has therefore not been included.

##### (1) A double agglutination of PPs

N	PP	no
---	----	----

47. Nihon ni iku to **no** naiyou no tegami ga tomodachi kara ki-ta.  
日本に行くとの内容の手紙が友達から来た。  
*I received a letter from my friend saying that he/she was going to Japan.*

48. Nihon e **no** ryokou o enki-suru  
日本への旅行を延期する。  
*I'm postponing/I'm going to postpone my trip to Japan.*
49. Nihon kara **no** gakusei ni a-t-ta  
日本からの学生に会った。  
*I met a student/some students from Japan*
50. Nihon made **no** hikouki no tabi wa mijikaku na-t-ta  
日本までの飛行機の旅は短くなった。  
*The flight time to Japan has been reduced*
51. Daigaku de **no** benkyou wa omoshiroi.  
大学での勉強は面白い。  
*The courses at the university are interesting*
52. Yamada-san to **no** giron wa omoshiro-kat-ta.  
山田さんとの議論は面白かった。  
*The discussion with Mr/Ms Yamada was interesting /I enjoyed the discussion with Mr/Ms Yamada*
53. Nihon ni tsui-te **no** hon o ka-t-ta.  
日本についての本を買った。  
*I bought a book/some books on Japan*

(2) A multiple agglutination of PPs

[ N1 gurai made ] no N2

54. Anata ni juu-man-en gurai made **no** o-kane wa kasu koto ga dekiru.  
あなたに十万円ぐらいまでのお金は貸すことが出来る。  
*I can lend you up to about 100,000 yen.*

In the last example (Sentence 54), the first PP **gurai** (ぐらい) expresses an approximation (see § 5.2.5.1), the second PP **made** (まで) a limit (see § 3.2.5.1), and the last PP **no** (の) is used as an attribute to modify the noun **o-kane** (money) through the noun **juu-man-en** (十万円/100,000 yen). This is an example of the three-place-juxtaposition (see §§ 3.2.7.1.16 and 5.1.3).

### 3.2.8 o (を)

The PP **o** (を) has six functions, each of which is handled separately in the following subsections.

#### 3.2.8.1 Syntactic objects

The syntactic relation of the object of a sentence is marked with the PP **o** (を)

1. Terebi o miru  
テレビを見る。  
*I watch television*
2. Hon o yomu  
本を読む。  
*I read a book/some books*

#### 3.2.8.2 Locatives: a leaving point (see § 3.1.2.5)

The place from which someone leaves is marked with the PP **o** (を)

3. Kuni o saru  
国を去る。  
*I leave the (mother) country.*
4. Onna no hito ga kuruma o ori-ta  
女の人が車を降りた。  
*A woman got out of the car*
5. Furusato o hanareru.  
故郷を離れる。  
*I leave the hometown*
6. Oyamoto o saru  
親元を去る。  
*I leave home. (I become independent)*
7. Otouto wa kyonen daigaku o sotsugyou-shi-ta.  
弟は去年大学を卒業した。  
*My (younger) brother graduated from university last year.*
8. Ressha wa eki o san-ji ni shuppatsu-shi-ta.  
列車は駅を三時に出発した。  
*The train left the station at three o'clock.*
9. Imouto wa kaisha o yame-ta  
妹は会社を辞めた。  
*My (younger) sister quit her job.*
10. Daitouryou wa daitouryou-shoku o jinin-shi-ta.  
大統領は大統領職を辞任した。  
*The president resigned from his post. (Lit., The president resigned from the presidency.)*

#### 3.2.8.3 Locatives: a place of an action or a happening in the case of verbs of motion

The place where an action takes place is, for the most part, marked with the PP **de** (で), however, when verbs of motion (see § 3.1.2.4) are used, the PP **o** (を) has to be



used instead (cf § 3.2.1.1)

11. Michi o aruku  
道を歩く。  
*I will walk in the street.*
12. Koto ga sora o to-n-de-iru.  
小鳥が空を飛んでいる。  
*Birds are flying in the sky*
13. Kaidan o noboru.  
階段を上る。  
*I will go up the stairs.*
14. Yōroppa o ryokou-suru  
ヨーロッパを旅行する。  
*I will travel around in Europe.*
15. Kouen o sanpo-suru.  
公園を散歩する。  
*I will take a walk in the park*
16. Kousoku o hashiru.  
高速を走る。  
*I will drive on the motorway.*
17. Aka-chan ga yuka o ha-t-te-iru  
赤ちゃんが床を這っている。  
*A baby is crawling on the floor.*
18. Sake wa kawa no nagare o sakanobo-t-te-iku  
鮭は川の流れを遡っていく。  
*Salmon swim against the stream.*

#### 3.2.8.4 Perlatives (a place of passing through) + Locatives (a place where something happens or takes place)

The PP o (を) can be used as a dual case marker; it is a syncretism of two semantic case functions incorporated into one PP. In the case of verbs, which have the meaning of *to pass through somewhere*, the point of passing through is marked with the PP o (を). It also indicates the place where this action takes place (see § 3.1.2.13)

19. Kawa wa machi no naka o nagare-te-iru.  
川は町の中を流れている。  
*The river runs through the town.*
20. Kyuukou ga eki o tsuka-shi-ta  
急行が駅を通過した。  
*An express train passed through the station.*

21. Oyo-i-de kawa o wata-t-ta  
泳いで川を渡った。  
*I swam across the river*
22. Kono kouen o too-t-te daigaku ni iku  
この公園を通って大学に行く。  
*I go to the university through this park*
23. Arasuka o he-te Doutsu ni kaeru.  
アラスカを経てドイツに帰る。  
*I am going back to Germany via Alaska*

#### 3.2.8.5 Temporatives: duration

Duration of time is marked with the PP o (を). Verbs, which have the meaning of *to spend* or *to pass*, require this PP

24. San-nen o keika-shi-ta.  
三年を経過した。  
*Three years have passed*
25. Rondon de i-s-shuu-kan o sugoshi-ta  
ロンドンで一週間を過ごした。  
*I spent a week in London*
26. Otoko wa kodoku na seikatsu o oku-t-ta  
男は孤独な生活を送った。  
*The man had a lonely life.*
27. Mai-nichi mai-nichi o nonbin kurasu  
毎日毎日をのんびり暮らす。  
*I'm relaxed every day. (Lit.: I spend every day relaxed)*
28. San-ka-getsu o he-ta.  
三か月を経た。  
*Three months have passed*

#### 3.2.8.6 Directionals: a direction

The direction of an action can be marked by the PP o (を). As has been explained in other subsections, the PPs e (へ; see § 3.2.2.1) and ni (に; see § 3.2.6.7) are also used as direction markers. The PPs e (へ) and ni (に) can, in most cases, be used interchangeably. The selection of the correct PP between o (を) and e (へ)/ni (に) for marking a direction depends on the verb employed. The following verbs take the PP o (を) as a direction marker: muk-u (向く *to look to/towards ...; to turn to/towards ...; to face to/towards ...*), mezas-u (目指す *to aim for ...; to strive for ...; to strain for ...*), megake-ru (目掛ける *to aim at ...*), etc.

29. Migi o muku.

右を向く。  
I look to the right

30. Gôru o mezasu  
ゴールを目指す。  
I aim for the goal.

### 3.2.9 to (と)

The PP to (と) has six distinct case functions: comitative, comparative, resultative, marking content of something, indicating manner, and quantitative. The PP to (と) is also used in many idiomatic expressions. Eight such expressions are introduced in this subsection (see §§ 3.2.9.7.1 — 3.2.9.7.8).

#### 3.2.9.1 Comitatives (a partner): with somebody

An animate partner (an animal or a human) with whom the speaker does something is marked with the PP to (と).

1. Kodomo wa inu to tawamure-te-iru.  
子供は犬と戯れている。  
My child is playing with a dog.
2. Tomodachi to pûru ni iku.  
友達とプールに行く。  
I am going to the swimming pool with my friend/friends.

Certain Japanese verbs whose English equivalents employ a direct object, an accusative, require the use of the partner marker to (と) as is shown in Sentence 3 below. In Japanese, getting married is expressed as a mutual conduct. Therefore, the person one is marrying, is seen as a partner in the act of getting married.

3. Ane wa Ishihara-san to kekkon-shi-ta.  
姉は石原さんと結婚した。  
My (elder) sister married Mr Ishihara.

Note that inanimate objects, which are being carried or taken along, cannot be marked with the PP to (と). In such cases, the TE-form of the verb is used (see § 0.6.1.2), the conjunctive PP te (て) which has then a function of marking manner how an action was/is/will be performed (see § 6.2.2.1.6).

4. Kasa o mo-t-te machi ni iku.  
傘を持って町に行く。  
I am taking an umbrella with me to town. (Lit.: I go to the town with an umbrella.)

#### 3.2.9.2 Comparatives: the object or person in a comparison

The object in a comparison is marked with the PP to (と).

5. Ano hito wa daigaku-sotsu to doutou no shikaku ga aru.

あの人は大学卒と同等の資格がある。  
He/She has a qualification that is equivalent to a university degree.

6. Anata to wa tachiba ga chigau.  
あなたとは立場が違う。  
I am in a different position to you.

#### 3.2.9.3 Resultatives: the result of an action or a happening

The result of a process or an action is marked with the PP to (と). The speaker can also use the PP ni (に) for this purpose (see § 3.2.6.9). Expressions with to (と) are more formal than those with ni (に), and, therefore, ni (に) is more frequently used in spoken Japanese.

7. Shiken ni fugoukaku to na-t-ta.  
試験に不合格となった。  
I failed the exam.
8. Ano hito wa isha to na-t-ta.  
あの人は医者となった。  
He/She became a doctor.
9. Kono chiketto wa ashita kara mukou to naru.  
このチケットは明日から無効となる。  
This ticket will be invalid from tomorrow onwards.

#### 3.2.9.4 Content marking

The content of both spoken or written thoughts, reports, requests, suggestions and such are marked with the PP to (と) (see also §§ 3.4.7.3 and 7.2.15.3). In other words, the content of an action that is expressed by the verb of the sentence, as shown below, is marked with the PP to (と).<sup>12</sup>

Content	to	verb
---------	----	------

10. Kimura-san wa "Kinou no shokuji wa oishi-ka-t-ta" to i-t-ta.  
木村さんは「昨日の食事は美味しかった」と言った。  
Mr/Ms Kimura said, "the meal I ate yesterday tasted good."
11. "Tonkatsu" to iu ryôin o shi-t-te-i-masu ka to kika-re-ta.  
「とんかつ」という料理を知っていますかと聞かれた。  
I was asked if I knew of a meal called "tonkatsu".

Note that the verb used in this sentence structure, to which the content refers, is sometimes omitted (see Sentence 12).

<sup>12</sup> Morphosyntactically, there is no clear distinction between the indirect and direct speech in Japanese so that the context determines the difference of speech. The only overt way of marking an indirect speech is to use Japanese quotation marks 「」.

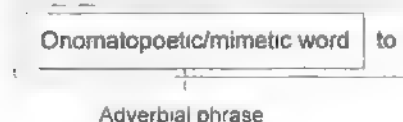
12. Kono tegami o sensei ni watashi-te-kudasai to tomodachi kara mora-t-ta  
この手紙を先生に渡してくださいと友達からもらった。  
My friend gave me this letter to give to our teacher  
(Lit. : I received this letter from my friend. He asked me to give it to our teacher.)

Compare this sentence with Sentence 13 below. In the Sentence 12 the verb **tanomu** (頼む/to ask [to do somebody a favour]), the giver and the syntactic object have all been omitted. The sentence, with its missing components, is presented for clarification below

13. Kono tegami o sensei ni watashi-te-kudasai to (tanoma-re-ta. Watashi wa)  
tomodachi kara (kono tegami o) mora-t-ta.  
この手紙を先生に渡して下さいと(頼まれた。私は)友達から(この手紙を)もらった。  
I was asked to give this letter to our teacher. I received it from my friend

### 3.2.9.5 Manner

The manner in which things move, how things are, or how one acts are encoded using the PP **to (と)**. An onomatopoeic or mimetic word used with the PP **to (と)** builds an adverbial phrase (Ono 1984: xiii; Tamori et al. 1993; Hamano 1998), syntactically speaking, it is an independent entry (constituent/entity) within the sentence



14. Bôru wa korokoro to koroga-t-ta  
ボールはころころと転がった。  
The ball rolled.
15. Usagi ga pyon-pyon to to-n-de-iru  
ウサギ(兎)がぴょんぴょんと跳んでいる。  
A rabbit is jumping around
16. Choushuu wa pachi-pachi to te o tata-i-ta.  
聴衆はぱちぱちと手を叩いた。  
The audience applauded
17. Ano hito wa itsumo yukkuri to hanasu  
あの人はいつもゆっくりと話す。  
He/She always speaks slowly
18. Kinou wa nonbiri to sugoshi-ta  
昨日はのんびりと過ごした。  
I spent yesterday relaxed.

### 3.2.9.6 Quantitatives: <a frequency/duration/amount + to> (see § 5.2.12 2)

This use of the PP **to (と)** marks not only the quantity but also the modality expression:

the sense of *not even* is encoded. In this case, the predicate has to be in the negative form

19. Jitaku kara kaisha made ju-p-pun to kakara-nai  
自宅から会社まで十分とかからない。  
It doesn't even take ten minutes to get from my house to the company
20. Konna hidoi kutsu wa mi-k-ka to mota-nai daro-u  
こんなひどい靴は三日もたないだろう。  
I doubt that such bad pair of shoes would even last three days.
21. Ni-do to ano hoteiru ni wa tomara-nai  
二度とあのホテルには泊まらない。  
I will never stay at that hotel again

### 3.2.9.7 Idiomatic expressions

There are many idiomatic expressions within which the PP **to (と)** is used

#### 3.2.9.7.1 Roles: <... to shite> in the sense of *as ...*

The expression '*... to shite*' meaning *as ...* comprises of the PP **to (と)** and the TE-form of the verb **suru (する)**.

22. Ningen to shi-te umare-ta kara ni wa, ningen rashiku iki-tai mono da.  
人間として生まれたからには、人間らしく生きたいものだ。  
As I was born a human, I want to live like one
23. Unten-shu to shi-te kono kaisha de hatara-i-te-iru.  
運転手としてこの会社で働いている。  
I work as a driver for this company.

#### 3.2.9.7.2 The judge of a judgement: <... to shite wa>: *as for/for ... /in someone's view*

With the adverbial phrase '*... to shite*', the speaker can mark the person who makes a judgement of something. It means *in the view of ...*, *as far as ... is concerned*, *in the opinion of ...*, etc. This adverbial phrase is frequently employed as the topic of the sentence so that the PP **wa (は)** is attached to it: '*... to shite wa*'.

24. Watashi to shi-te wa kochira no an no hou ga ii to omou  
私としてはこちらの方がいいと思う。  
For me, this plan is better./I think this plan is better./In my opinion, this plan is better

#### 3.2.9.7.3 Emphatic negation: <1 + counter unit + to shite>: *not a single ...*

The compound <1 (ichi/hito, etc.) + counter unit + **to shite**> is used to strengthen a negation

25. Yamada-san ga shi-n-da toki, dare hito-ri to shi-te naku mono wa i-na-kat-ta  
山田さんが死んだ時、誰一人として泣く者はいなかった。



*Not a single person cried when Mr/Ms Yamada died*

26. Uchi no inu ga i naku na-t-ta toki, ichi-nichi to shite nemu-reru hi wa na-kat ta  
家の犬がいなくなった時、一日として眠れる日はなかった。  
*When our dog went missing, I didn't get a single night's sleep.*

#### 3.2.9.7.4 Concessives: < --- to shite mo > in the sense of even if ...

When the PP **mo** (も) is attached to '... to shite', the phrase can make a concession depending upon the situation in which it is used.

27. Uso o tsu-i-ta koto wa yurushi-te-ageru koto ga dekiru to shi-te mo, o-kane o nusu-n-da koto wa zettai ni yurusa-nai  
嘘をついたことは許して上げることが出来るとしても、お金を盗んだことは絶対に許さない。  
*I can forgive you for lying, but absolutely not for stealing money (Lit.: Even if I can forgive you for telling me a lie, I can never forgive you for stealing money.)*

#### 3.2.9.7.5 Expressions of an opinion

The expression < ... to suru > can be used in the sense of *to consider ...*, *to think ...*, etc.

28. Seijika wa shitsugyou-taisaku ga sai-yuusen-jikou da to shi-te-iru.  
政治家は失業対策が最優先事項だとしている。  
*Politicians consider it most important to take political measures against unemployment*

#### 3.2.9.7.6 Conditionals: a condition

The next expression '... to shite' means *if one considers ...*; it derives from the TE-form of '... to suru' which expresses an opinion (see § 3.2.9.7.5).

29. I-p-pon ni-hyaku-en to shi-te, ichi-dâsu de ni-sen-yon-hyaku-en ni naru.  
一本二百円として、一ダースで二千四百円になる。  
*One bottle is 200 yen, so a dozen would be 2400 yen./ Considering that one bottle is 200 yen, a dozen would cost 2400 yen.*

#### 3.2.9.7.7 Appearance

The unreality of something with the meaning of *as if ... or like a ...* can be expressed with the PP **to** (と). This usage is particularly used in idiomatic expressions

30. Hana to chiru  
花と散る。  
*Someone dies courageously. (Lit.: Someone falls down just like the petals of a flower.)*
31. Hon o yama to tsumu.  
本を山と積む。  
*I pile books up as high as a mountain.*

#### 3.2.9.7.8 Holistic properties: < ari to arayuru > in the sense of all or every

The expression **ari to arayuru** (ありとあらゆる) is used as a noun modifier and denotes the holistic quantity of something

32. ari to arayuru tokoro  
ありとあらゆる所  
*everywhere/every single place/all over*
33. ari to arayuru hito  
ありとあらゆる人  
*everybody/every single person*

#### 3.2.10 yori (より)

The PP **yori** (より) has three main semantic functions: comparative, exclusiveness and ablative. The first function is further subdivided into four roles (see §§ 3.2.10.1.1–3.2.10.1.4)

##### 3.2.10.1 Comparatives: the object or person of comparison

There are several possible sentence structures using the PP **yori** (より) to mark the object of a comparison. The syntactic word order of a comparative marker differs between Japanese **yori** and the English *than*; Japanese has a 'head-marker' word order, whereas English has a 'marker-head' order (see the examples below). In particular, arrows have been used to highlight this difference in order in Sentence 1.

##### 3.2.10.1.1 Comparatives (a comparison): < A wa B yori ... >



1. Kono tatemono wa Toukyou-daigaku yori furui  
この建物は東京大学より古い。  
*This building is older than the University of Tôkyô.*

2. Watashi wa anata yori wa hanashi-zuki desu ga, Takayama-san hodo de wa ari-mase-n  
私はあなたよりは話し好きですが、高山さん程ではありません。  
*I like chatting more than you do, but not as much as Mr/Ms Takayama does*

##### 3.2.10.1.2 Comparatives (a comparison): < A yori B (no hou) ga ... >



In this sentence, the PP **no** (の) and the pseudo-noun **hou** (方) can be omitted (see Sentence 3).

3. Nihonshu yori biru ga ii.  
日本酒よりビールがいい。  
*I prefer beer to sake (Lit.: Beer is better than sake.)*
4. Ei-go yori Raten-go no hou ga muzukashii.  
英語よりラテン語の方が難しい。  
*Latin is more difficult than English.*

### 3.2.10.1.3 Comparatives (a comparison): < A yori ... >

5. Anata yori mae ni Nihon de kono uirusu o hakken-shi-ta hito ga i-masu ka?  
あなたより前に日本でこのウイルスを発見した人がいますか。  
*Did anyone in Japan discover this virus before you?*

It is worth noting that **yori** (より) belongs not only to PPs category, but also to that of adverbs. The speaker can also construct a comparative sentence using the adverb **yori** (より). In this case, **yori** (より) refers to the word that follows, and this adverb **yori** (より) then makes up an independent entry (constituent/entity) in the sentence structure. An adjective, an adverb or a verb can be modified by the adverb **yori** (より). Sentence 6 illustrates **yori** (より) in this role.

yori	adjectives/adverbs/verbs
------	--------------------------

6. Yori ii repôto o ka-i-ta.  
よりいいレポートを書いた。  
*I wrote a better report.*

### 3.2.10.1.4 Inclination: < A to iu yori (wa) B > in the sense of It is not A rather B

The meaning of *rather* is expressed with the following sentence structure

A	to	iu	yori	(wa)	predicate
---	----	----	------	------	-----------

7. Ano hito wa kono mondai ni mukanshin to iu yori wa, amari ni mo isogashi-kute kono koto ni tsu-i-te kangaeru hima ga nai no desu.  
あの人はこの問題に無関心というよりは、余りにも忙しくてこの事について考える暇がないのです。  
*He/She is not indifferent to this problem. He/She is, rather, so busy that he/she doesn't have any time to think about it.*
8. Tanaka-san wa kodomo ga kirai to iu yori wa, kodomo ni dou ses-shi-te yoi no ka wakara-nai no desu.

田中さんは子供が嫌いというよりは、子供にどう接して良いのか分からないのです。

*It is not that Mr/Ms Tanaka does not like children. He/She rather more or less doesn't know how to cope with them.*

### 3.2.10.2 Exclusiveness: < ... yori shikata ga nai > in the sense of there is no other way other than ...

The exclusive meaning of *there is no other way other than ...* is expressed with the following sentence structure:

Sentence	yori	shikata	ga	nai
----------	------	---------	----	-----

9. Sou suru yori shikata ga nai.  
そうするより仕方がない。  
*I don't have any other choice.*
10. Ano hito ni ayamaru yori shikata ga nai.  
あの人に謝るより仕方がない。  
*There is no way other than to apologize to him/her / I simply have to apologize to him/her*
11. Mou basu wa hashi-t-te-i-nai kara, aru-i-te kaeru yori shikata ga nai.  
もうバスは走っていないから、歩いて帰るより仕方がない。  
*I'll have to walk home because I missed the last bus (Lit.: There is no other way other than to go back home on foot because there are no busses running any more)*

### 3.2.10.3 Ablatives: a temporal or local starting point

The starting place, or the time at which an action begins can be marked with the PP **yori** (より). The PP **yori** (より) conveys more formal nuance than the PP **kara** (から) which has the same function (see § 3.2.4.1).

12. Sen-ri no michi mo i-p-po yori hajimaru.  
千里の道も一歩より始まる。  
*A journey of a thousand miles starts with the first step*
13. Kaigi wa gogo ichi-ji yori okonau.  
会議は午後一時より行う。  
*The conference begins at one o'clock in the afternoon. (Lit.: We begin the conference at one o'clock in the afternoon.)*
14. Ni-sen-ni-nen yori kono daigaku de benkyou-shi-te-iru.  
二〇〇二年よりこの大学で勉強している。  
*I've been studying at this university since 2002*
15. Jeni to watashi wa kodomo no koro yori shi-t-te-iru.  
ジェニーと私は子供の頃より知っている。  
*Jenny and I have known each other since we were children*

### 3.3 The Type B case marking PPs (syntactic-semantic and modality type)

Not only have the following eight PPs the syntactic case function of topic raising or the additional function meaning *too*, but also a modality expressing function; they mark sentient features of statements. Thus, their function is threefold: a syntactic-semantic case marker and a modality marker.

#### 3.3.1 Functions

As is shown in Tabel 16 below, there are eight PPs that belong to this category. All of them have the common syntactic function of topic marking except the PP **mo** (も), which encompasses an additive syntactic role. The PP **ttara** (ったら) is a phonological variation of the PP **tara** (たら), the glottal stop [ʔ] has been inserted at the beginning: [ʔtara]. When suprasegmental elements of the language, such as intonation, prominence, etc., are not taken into consideration, statements made with the PP **wa** (は) convey the most neutral meaning. The other PPs, however, also convey undertones such as emotion or attitude of the speaker towards his statement, e.g., astonishment, anger, underestimation, humbleness, emphasis, scorn, etc.

### 3.4 Usage of case marking PPs: syntactic-semantic and modality expressing type (Type B)

Except for the PPs **wa** (は) and **mo** (も), the Type B PPs are rather colloquial. They all share the same syntactic function of raising topic. Expressions of surprise, arrogance and scorn are their main interjectional features. The PPs **datta** (だって [daʔte]: see §§ 5.2.3.1 and 5.2.3.2), **demo** (でも: see § 5.2.4.1) and **mo** (も: see § 5.2.11.1) are dealt with in Chapter 5, since they all have adverbial functions as well, i.e. three distinct properties are incorporated in these PPs: syntactic topic raising functions, modality components and adverbial functions

Table 16: Type B case marking PPs (syntactic-semantic and modality marker)

Syntactic function	PP	Semantic and modality function
Addition: <i>too</i>	<b>mo</b> (も)	surprise
Topic raising	<b>nado</b> (など)	example: <i>such as ...; for example</i>
	<b>nanka</b> (なんか)	arrogance, surprise; contempt example: <i>such as ...; for example</i>
	<b>nante</b> (なんて)	arrogance; surprise, contempt example: <i>such as ...; for example</i>
	<b>nanzo</b> (なんぞ)/ <b>nazo</b> (なぞ)	arrogance; contempt, scorn
	<b>nanzo</b> (なんぞ)	example: <i>such as ...; for example</i>
	<b>tara</b> (たら)/ <b>ttara</b> (ったら [ʔtara])	scorn, contempt
	<b>tte</b> (って [ʔte])	intimacy
	<b>wa</b> (は)	neutral

#### 3.4.1 **mo** (も) (see § 5.2.11.1)

Owing to its multi-functionality, an explanation of the PP **mo** (も) in its syntactic-semantic functions with modality components is found in Chapter 5 under adverbial PPs (see § 5.2.11.1).

#### 3.4.2 **nado/nanzo/nazo/nanka** (など/なんぞ/なぞ/なんか)

This group of PPs shares the six functions listed below (see §§ 3.4.2.1—3.4.2.6). There are, however, minor differences in nuance. The PP **nado** (など) conveys the most formal impression among these expressions; using the PPs **nazo** (なぞ), **nanzo** (なんぞ) and **nanka** (なんか) are more colloquial and they are therefore much stronger designators of the speaker's emotions. The context determines the nuance of the statement in which these PPs are used. Note that other case marking PPs, such as **wa** (は), **ni** (に), **to** (と) and **o** (を) cannot be attached to the PP **nante** (なんて). This is one of the syntactic distinctions between the PP **nante** (なんて) and the PPs **nado** (など)/**nanzo** (なんぞ)/**nazo** (なぞ); their distribution rules are different (compare Sentences 1, 2, 3, 4, 8, 9 and 10 of this Subsection 3.4.2 with Sentences 1, 2 and 4 of Subsection 3.4.4)

##### 3.4.2.1 Taking something as an example

The meanings, such as *for example* or *for instance*, are expressed using the PPs **nado** (など), **nanzo** (なんぞ) and **nanka** (なんか). The nuances being expressed when using these PPs are written in parentheses.

1. **Yasai nado wa suki desu ga, niku wa kirai da.**  
野菜などは好きですが、肉は嫌いだ。  
*I like (for example) vegetables, but I don't like meat*
2. **Depâto de sukâto ya burâusu nado o ka-t-te-ki-ta**  
デパートでスカートやブラウスなどを買ってきた。  
*I bought a skirt and some blouses. (I am now at home. I bought other things, too.)*
3. **Ano hito wa kinou atama ga itai nado to i-t-te kaisha o yasu-n-da.**  
あの人は昨日頭が痛いなどと言って会社を休んだ。  
*He said he had a headache and therefore did not come to work yesterday. (His headache was just one reason for his absence.)*

##### 3.4.2.2 Contempt/scorn/underestimation

Contempt or scorn as well as the underestimation of the speaker that, in his opinion, somebody/something is not so proficient, can be designated by using the PPs **nado** (など), **nanzo** (なんぞ), **nazo** (なぞ) and **nanka** (なんか).

4. **O-mae nado/nanka/nanzo/nazo ni dekiru mon ka!**  
おまえなど(／なんか／なんぞ／なぞ)に出来るもんか!  
*You wouldn't be able to do that! (Look! It's beyond your capacity! / Don't you dare think that you can do it! / It's too difficult for you!)*

##### 3.4.2.3 Topic raising + Humbleness

Humble expressions are often used to simply express one's politeness towards the



addressee (Kokubungaku-henshūbu 1980; Tsujimura 1996: 363, Shibatani 1999: 374-380). The PPs **nado** (など), **nanka** (なんか), **nanzo** (なんぞ) and **nazo** (なぞ) can be used for this purpose.

5. Watashi **nado** jinsei to wa nani ka, mada nani mo waka-t-te-i-nai n desu.  
私など人生とは何か。まだ何も分かっていないんです。  
*I don't know anything about life. (I'm still immature.)*
6. Watashi **nanka** tada no gakusei desu.  
私なんかただの学生です。  
*I am simply a student.*

### 3.4.2.4 Emphasis

The speaker can emphasize a noun or an entry (constituent/entity) comprising of a noun and a PP by marking it with the PPs **nado** (など), **nanka** (なんか), **nanzo** (なんぞ) or **nazo** (なぞ). In the case of double case marking by using the PPs **to** (と) and **nado/nanka/nanzo/nazo** (など/なんか/なんぞ/なぞ), their word order is twofold as can be seen in Sentence 8

7. Uso **nado/nanka/nanzo/nazo** tsui-te-i-nai!  
嘘など(/なんか/なんぞ/なぞ)ついていない。  
*I'm not lying!*
8. Ano hito **nado/nanka** to kekkon-shi-nai!  
あの人など(/なんか)と結婚しない。  
*I would never marry him!*

Or. Ano hito **to nado/nanka** kekkon-shi-nai!  
あの人となど(/なんか)結婚しない。  
*I would never marry him!*

### 3.4.2.5 Euphemism

In order to designate the speaker's politeness towards the addressee, euphemistic expressions are often used in Japanese. In other words, direct statements are mostly avoided.<sup>13</sup> For this purpose, the PPs **nado** (など), **nanzo** (なんぞ), **nazo** (なぞ) and **nanka** (なんか) can be used.

<sup>13</sup> By using the terms BECOME-language and DO-language, Ikegami (1991) compares Japanese and English in relation to the ways of thinking, behaviour, philosophy, religion and political or social organization. In this context, he points out the Japanese liking for semantically blurred and non-explicit expressions. Maynard also discusses linguistic features of Japanese and English regarding their communication patterns. Japanese contains devices and strategies that reflect and express the society-relational tendency towards objects and persons, whereas English has persuasive strategies that are conventionalized as part of the communication style (Maynard 1997: 20). The speaker's ambiguous expressions make the interlocutor possible to make a joint-decision, and thus expresses his/her politeness to the listener

9. O-sake **nado** wa o-kirai desu ka?  
お酒などはお嫌いですか。  
*Would you like some sake? (Lit.: Don't you like a thing such as sake?)*

### 3.4.2.6 Ambiguous citations

When the speaker cites a statement from somebody without knowing exactly what was stated, the vague colloquial citation is marked with the PP **nado** (など)/**nanzo** (なんぞ)/**nazo** (なぞ). The PP **nanka** (なんか) cannot be used for this purpose

10. Tanaka-san wa "konsāto ni iku" **nado/nanzo/nazo** to i-t-te-i-ta.  
田中さんは「コンサートに行く」など(/なんぞ/なぞ)と言っていた。  
*Mr/Ms Tanaka said that he/she would go to the concert. (But I don't know exactly what he/she said.)*

### 3.4.3 nanka (なんか) (see § 3.4.2)

The PP **nanka** (なんか) is elaborated in § 3.4.2, because it shares the same functions as the PPs **nado** (など)/**nanzo** (なんぞ)/**nazo** (なぞ) and **nanka** (なんか).

### 3.4.4 nante (なんて)

Expressions with the PP **nante** (なんて) are always colloquial. It has three semantic roles: giving something as an example with the nuance of underestimation, teasing somebody, and marking something as a surprise due to an unexpected matter. The first function overlaps those of the PPs **nado** (など)/**nanzo** (なんぞ)/**nazo** (なぞ), but there is a distinction in the syntax (see §§ 3.4.2) in that other case marking PPs cannot be attached to the PP **nante** (なんて), although PPs of other categories can be agglutinated to it (see Sentence 3 of this subsection: < nante + modality PP ne >).

#### 3.4.4.1 Topic raising + Taking something as an example + Modality (scorn/mockery/disdain/derision)

The PP **nante** (なんて) is a multiple case marker in that it encodes two syntactic roles and a modality expressing function: raising a topic, displaying something as an example and expressing a feeling of scorn, mockery, disdain or derision.

1. Benkyou **nante** kirai da.  
勉強なんて嫌いだ。  
*I don't like studying. (Lit.: I don't like such things as studies)*
2. Ano hito no ka-i-ta hon **nante** tsumaranai yo.  
あの人の書いた本なんてつまらないよ。  
*The book he/she wrote isn't interesting. (It's nothing special.)*

#### 3.4.4.2 Teasing somebody

By placing the PP **nante** (なんて) after a statement, the speaker reveals his/her true intention that his/her statement is not to be taken seriously. In this case, the modality expressing PP **ne** (ね), designating a mild warning, is often attached to it (see § 7.2.12.3). **nante ne** (なんてね). Also the expression **nan-chat-te** (なんちゃって), which is a shortened form of **nante i-t-te-shima-t-te** (なんて言ってしまったて), meaning *I regret having said that* is used instead of the PP **nante** (なんて). This expression is, however, very colloquial.

3. Sonna koto o shi-tara ato ga kowai zo, nante ne.  
 そんなことをしたら後が怖いぞ、なんてね。  
*Would you really do such a thing? I'm going to take revenge on you! (I didn't really mean it. I was just making fun of you.)*

### 3.4.4.3 Surprise

The speaker can express the fact that something is a surprise owing to unexpected matters by employing the PP **nante** (なんて).

4. Ano hito ga koutsuu-jiko de shi-n-da nante shira-na-ka-t-ta.  
 あの人が交通事故で死んだなんて知らなかった。  
*I didn't have the slightest inkling that he/she had been killed in a traffic accident.*

### 3.4.5 nanzo/nazo (なんぞ/なぞ) (see § 3.4.2)

The PP **nanzo** (なんぞ) derives from the expression **nani zo** (なにぞ) consisting of an interrogative pronoun **nani** (何) and the syntactic case marker **zo** (ぞ) of Classical Japanese (Kindaichi 1999: 711). Accordingly, the use of the PPs **nanzo** (なんぞ) and **nazo** (なぞ) is becoming scarce in Modern Japanese. The PP **nazo** (なぞ) is a form resulting from a phonological process; the velar nasal [ŋ] of the PP **nanzo** (なんぞ [nagzo]) is deleted to form an ellipsis.

### 3.4.6 tara/ttara (たら/ったら)

The both PPs **tara** (たら) and **ttara** (ったら) have two functions (see §§ 3.4.6.1 and 3.4.6.2) and they can be used interchangeably. By using the PP **ttara** (ったら [ʔtara]) with a glottal stop [ʔ] at the beginning of the word, intensified emotions are expressed than by the use of the PP **tara** (たら).

#### 3.4.6.1 Topic raising + Modality (the expression of anger/disgust/criticism)

The speaker refers to the topic of the sentence, which is something that has already been mentioned in a previous discourse, and expresses, at the same time, his/her anger/disgust about it or his/her criticism.

1. Ano hito ttara, mai-ban guden-guden ni yo-t-te kae-t-te-kuru n da kara!  
 あの人がったら、毎晩ぐでぐでに酔って帰ってくるんだから。  
*He comes home completely drunk every night! (I'm fed up with it! / I can't stand it any more! / He is worthless!) (♀)*

#### 3.4.6.2 Topic raising + Modality (the expression of surprise/astonishment)

The speaker marks the topic as having already been mentioned in the conversational discourse in addition to a nuance that something is unusual or uncommon

2. Yamada-san tara, watashi ga age-ta purezento mo-t-te-kaeru no wasure-te-ru!  
 山田さんたら、私が上げたプレゼント持って帰るの忘れてる。  
*Mr/Ms Yamada has forgotten to take my present with him! (How could he/she!)*
3. Tanaka-san tara, mata, o-saifu nusuma-re-ta n da-t-te.  
 田中さんたら、また、お財布盗まれたんだって。  
*I've heard that Mr/Ms Tanaka's wallet was stolen again (It's incredible!)*

4. Asoko no kēki-ya no kēki ttara, saikou!  
 あそこのケーキ屋のケーキったら、最高!  
*The shop's cakes are the best!*

### 3.4.7 tte (って)

The PP **tte** (って [ʔte]) has three functions, topic raising, topic raising as an answer to a question, and marking the content of a statement.

#### 3.4.7.1 Topic raising

A topic, which was already mentioned in the discourse, can be marked with the PP **tte** (って). The speaker refers to the topic in order to give his/her opinion on it or make remarks about it

1. Tanaka-san tte dare?  
 田中さんって誰?  
*Who is Mr/Ms Tanaka?*
2. Tensai tte, kou iu hito no koto na n da  
 天才って、こういう人のことなんだ。  
*This is him/her then, the genius!*

#### 3.4.7.2 Topic raising + An answer to the question

The speaker repeats the question, which was posed, and then gives his/her comment on it or answer to it

3. Itsu made tte, ashita made da yo!  
 いつまでって、明日までだよ。  
*Are you asking me when this has got to be done by? Tomorrow!*
4. Dou suru tte, kou suru hoka shikata ga nai daro-u!  
 どうするって、こうするほか仕方ないだろう。  
*Are you asking me what I'm going to do? I have to handle it like this. I don't have any other choice.*

#### 3.4.7.3 Contents/citations

The PP **tte** (って) marks a statement, which has been made (cf. §§ 3.2.9.4 and 7.2.15.3)

5. Kono hon omoshiroi tte Yo-n-de-miru?  
 この本面白いって。読んでみる?  
*Someone told me that this book was interesting. Do you want to read it?*

Depending upon the situation in which a statement is made, the speaker can also express associated emotions such as anger or frustration.

6. Watashi ni wa wakara-nai tte nan-do mo i-t-ta desho-u!  
 私には分からないって何度も言ったでしょう!  
*I have told you lots of times that I don't understand it! (How many times do I have to tell you that!)*

The PP **tte** (って) is also used as an alternative to the normal expression < A to iu B (B which is called A) >

7. Ningen **tte** mono wa yuushi-irai mattaku kawa-t-te-i-nai  
人間ってものは有史以来全く変わっていない。  
*Human beings haven't changed in the slightest ever since human history began.*
8. Tanaka-san **tte** hito wa hontou ni omoiyari no aru hito na n da ne.  
田中さんって人は本当に思いやりのある人なんだね。  
*Mr/Ms Tanaka is really a thoughtful man/woman*

### 3.4.8 tote (とて)

The PP **tote** (とて) has multiple functions, such as case marking, adverbial (see § 5.2.18) roles, or conjunctive tasks (see § 6.2.27). A detailed explanation of its syntactic use, namely topic raising, follows in Subsection 5.2.18.3.

### 3.4.9 wa (は)

The PP **wa** (は) has both syntactic and semantic functions. Its syntactic function of topic raising is predominant; it also marks semantic properties such as contrast (see § 3.4.9.2) and emphasis (see § 3.4.9.3).

#### 3.4.9.1 Topic raising

The topic of a statement is marked with the PP **wa** (は). It can be almost any syntactic entry (constituent/entity) in a sentence, such as syntactic object, temporal or local entries

##### 3.4.9.1.1 Raising subjects, objects, local or temporal entries as topics

In the following example sentences (Sentences 1 to 5), the semantic function of each **wa**-entry is shown in parentheses.

Topic/subject/object/temporal, local or modal specification	wa
	PP case marker (topic)

1. Zou **wa** hana ga nagai. (Topic: zou [象/elephant])  
象は鼻が長い。  
*An elephant has a long nose. (Lit.: As far as an elephant is concerned, its nose is long)*
2. Ashita **wa** uchi ni iru. (Topic: a temporal entry ashita [明日/tomorrow])  
明日は家にいる。  
*I will stay at home tomorrow.*
3. Kono heya ni **wa** dare mo i-nai. (Topic: a local entry kono heya ni [この部屋に/in this room])  
この部屋には誰もいない。  
*There is nobody in this room.*
4. Watashi no musuko **wa** shougaku-sei desu. (Topic: a syntactic subject watashi

no musuko [私の息子/my son])

私の息子は小学生です。

*My son is a pupil of an elementary school*

5. Kono hon **wa** mou yo-n-da. (Topic: a syntactic object kono hon [この本/this book])  
この本はもう読んだ。  
*I've already read this book*

#### 3.4.9.1.2 Raising adverbs as topics

Adverbs can be marked with the PP **wa** (は) in its function as a topic raiser. The difference between adverbs with the PP **wa** (は) and without it is very minor; by placing the PP **wa** (は) after the adverb, the adverb is slightly emphasized. The following adverbs are frequently used with the PP **wa** (は): **yagate** (やがて/later on), **kekkyoku** (結局/at the end; finally), **toki ni** (時に/sometimes), **ima goro** (今頃/around this time; now), **kondo** (今度/next time), **motomoto** (元々/originally), **honrai** (本来/originally), **kantan ni** (簡単に/easily), **honshitsu-teki ni** (本質的に/basically; fundamentally), etc.

adverb	wa
--------	----

6. Kondo **wa** Afunka ni ik-o-u to omou.  
今度ではアフリカに行こうと思う。  
*I'm thinking of going to Africa next time.*
7. Honshitsu-teki ni **wa** anata no i-t-te-iru koto wa tadashi.  
本質的にはあなたの言っている事は正しい。  
*Basically, what you are saying is correct.*

#### 3.4.9.1.3 Raising adverbial entries as topics

Specific verbal derivations, consisting of the PP **ni** (に) and the TE-form of verbs (see § 0.6.1.2), used as adverbial entries (constituents/entities) in the sentence, can also be marked with the PP **wa** (は) in order to raise them as the topic of the sentence (see also Table 25 in § 6.2.21.8). Generally, the marked entries then have the meaning of *concerning ...*, *as for ...*, *as far as ... is concerned*, for example, **ni kanshite** (～に関して), **ni tsuite** (～について [～に就て]), **ni taishite** (～に対して), **ni oite** (～において [～に於いて]), **ni atatte** (～に当たって), **ni totte** (～にとって), etc. In this case, the topic marker PP **wa** (は) slightly emphasizes these adverbial entries when suprasegmental features are not taken into consideration

Adverbial entry	wa
-----------------	----

8. Kono mondai ni kanshi-te **wa** tsugi no kaigi de hanashi-ai-masho-u.  
この問題に関しては次の会議で話し合ひましょう。  
*Concerning this problem, let's talk about it at our next meeting*
9. Watashi ni totte **wa** juudai na mondai da.  
私にとっては重大な問題だ。



*As far as I am concerned, this is a serious problem. / This is a serious problem for me*

### 3.4.9.2 Contrasts

The second function of the PP **wa** (は) is to contrast two different topics. The speaker can take any two syntactic entries of a sentence as the contrasting objects. Sentence 10 below shows two syntactic subjects as the contrasting items (see § 3.2.3.1.2); Sentence 11, on the other hand, contrasts two local restrictions (see § 3.2.1.8.2); Sentence 12 draws attention to two different benefactees (see § 3.2.6.12)

A	wa	predicate	B	wa	predicate
---	----	-----------	---	----	-----------

A and B, contrasting items

10. *Watashi wa suugaku wa nigate da ga, ongaku wa tokui da.*  
 私は数学は苦手だが、音楽は得意だ。  
*I am not good at math, but good at music.*

In Sentence 10, the first PP **wa** (は) is used to mark a neutral topic in the sentence: **watashi** (私/I). The second and the third PP **wa** (は) are used to collate two distinct disciplines, **suugaku** (数学/math) and **ongaku** (音楽/music)

11. *Ano hito wa kaisha de wa yoku hanasu ga, uchi de wa mukuchi da.*  
 あの人は会社ではよく話すが、家では無口だ。  
*He/She speaks a lot at work, but is very quiet at home*
12. *Musuko ni wa kamera, musume ni wa nekkuresu o ka-t-te-age-ta.*  
 息子にはカメラ、娘にはネックレスを買って上げた。  
*I bought a camera for my son, and a necklace for my daughter.*

### 3.4.9.3 Emphasis

The PP **wa** (は) also has the function of placing emphasis on an entry in a sentence. In addition, in a conversational discourse, the speaker often uses an accent or prominence to further emphasize the entry (constituent/entity) marked with the PP **wa** (は). The PP **wa** (は), in this case, has a merger property: two functions are syncretized in one PP: topic raising and placing emphasis. The difference between the functions described in Subsection 3.4.9.1 and in this subsection 3.4.9.3 is that more weight is placed on one or the other of the two roles. In Subsection 3.4.9.1, the topic raising function has the greater weight, whereas the employment of the PP **wa** (は) in this subsection 3.4.9.3 has emphasis as the predominant feature

13. *Ano roba ni wa kori-ta. I-p-po mo mae ni susuma-na-kat-ta.*  
 あのロバには懲りた。一歩も前に進まなかった。  
*That donkey troubled me! He didn't take a single step forward!*
14. *Ano roba wa mou mita-ku-nai.*  
 あのロバはもう見たくない。  
*I don't want to see that donkey again!*

## Chapter 4 Copulative PPs

There are twelve copulative PPs (cf § 2.2; see Table 17-1). In addition to its copulative function, the PP **shi** (し) also has a conjunctive function, the usage of which is described in detail in Chapter 6 (see § 6.2.19).

Table 17-1: The number of functions of each copulative PP

No	PP	Number of functions	No	PP	Number of functions
1.	dano	1	7.	shi	1
2.	ka	1	8.	tari/dari	1
3.	mo	1	9.	to	1
4.	nari	1	10.	toka	2
5.	ni	2	11.	ya	1
6.	no	1	12.	yara	1

### 4.1 Functions

As has been explained in Section 2.2, there are three main syntactic-semantic types of coordinating items, complete, incomplete and disjunctive types. In the case of the first category, all the existing items are listed: **A, B and C (and nothing more)**. The second group of PPs marks the existing items as typical examples of an otherwise incomplete list: **A, B, C, etc.** The last type designates a choice between two items: **A or B**. Table 17-2 illustrates clearly that most of the copulative PPs belong to the second type "incomplete listings". Semantically speaking, complete and disjunctive copulative PPs are characteristically neutral, whereas incomplete listing PPs generally have modality functions as well, i.e. they also express the emotions of the speaker (see § 4.1.1).

Table 17-2: An inventory of the copulative PPs

Complete listing	Incomplete listing		Disjunctive listing
to	dano	shi	ka
	mo	tari/dari	
	nari	toka	
	ni	ya	
	no	yara	

#### 4.1.1 Semantics of copulative PPs with modality functions

As has been mentioned above, the emotions of the speaker such as scorn, criticism, contempt, surprise, astonishment, disgust, anger, resignation, uncertainty, etc., can also be expressed as encapsulated nuances of specific incomplete listing PPs (see Table 18). These emotional components depend on the discourse of speech, and therefore are not necessarily automatically expressed simply by their use. When we exclude suprasegmental features, such as intonation and accentuation, the PPs **tari/dari** (たり/だり), **to** (と), **toka** (とか) and **ya** (や) contain less modality components, whereas the PPs **dano** (だの), **nari** (なり), **ni** (に), **shi** (し) and **yara** (やら) depict much stronger emotional connotations. Table 18 serves to illustrate this point.

## 4.2 Usage of copulative PPs

The practical usage of each copulative PP is described below.

### 4.2.1 dano (だの)

#### 4.2.1.1 Incomplete listings

Nouns, adjectives or sentences (subordinate clauses) can be marked by the PP **dano** (だの) in order to cite them as representative examples taken from a group of things. In this case the emotions of the speaker, such as scorn, criticism, contempt, surprise, astonishment, etc. are also expressed. The situation determines the content of emotions expressed. In the example sentences below (Sentences 1 to 3), the underlying emotions being expressed are indicated in brackets.

N/Adj./S	dano	N/Adj./S	dano	N/Adj./S	dano
----------	------	----------	------	----------	------

N. a noun, Adj. both i- and na-adjectives, S. a sentence (a subordinate clause)

1. Tanaka-san wa sensou **dano**, hanza-zouka **dano** kurai koto bakan kangae-te-i-ru  
田中さんは戦争だの、犯罪増加など暗いことばかり考えている。  
*Mr/Ms Tanaka is thinking solely about negative things, such as wars, the increase in criminality and so on. (It's depressing!)*
2. Musuko wa atama ga itai **dano**, ashi ga itai **dano** to i-t-te, shukudai o shi-nai.  
息子は頭が痛いだの、足が痛いだのと言って、宿題をしない。  
*Our son avoids doing his homework by saying that he has a headache, or sore legs, or the like. (This makes me mad!)*
3. Shigoto ga konnan **dano**, fukuzatsu **dano** to monku bakari i-t-te-i-ru.  
仕事が困難だの、複雑だのと文句ばかり言っている。  
*She/He is complaining the whole time, saying that her/his job is either too difficult, or too complicated, or the like. (I'm fed up with her/his complaints!)*

### 4.2.2 ka (か)

#### 4.2.2.1 Disjunctive listings

By using the PP **ka** (か) two choices or alternatives are given: A or B. Syntactically speaking, the **ka**-entries can be treated as nouns (see Sentences 3 and 4) or adverbial sentences/clauses (see Sentences 1, 2, 5 and 6).

A: N/S	ka	B: N/S	ka
Entry 1		Entry 2	

1. Konban no shokujī wa sutēki ni suru **ka** sushi ni suru **ka** mada kime-te-i-mase-n.  
今晚の食事はステーキにするか鮓にするかまだ決めていません。  
*I haven't decided yet whether I am cooking steaks or sushi for dinner this evening.*
2. Kono puran ni sansei **ka** hantai **ka** hakkiri-shi-te-kudasai.

Table 18: Modality components of copulative PPs

	Resignation	Anger	Scorn Criticism Contempt	Frustration	Surprise Astonishment	Disgust	Unsuresness
dano	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
ka	-	-	-	-	-	-	+
mo	-	-	-	-	+	-	-
nan	-	+	+	+	-	+	-
ni	-	+	+	+	+	+	-
no	-	+	+	+	+	+	-
shi	-	+	+	+	+	+	-
tan/dan	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
to	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
toka	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
ya	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
yara	+	+	+	+	+	+	-

このプランに賛成か反対かはっきりして下さい。

*Please make up your mind whether you are for or against this plan.*

When the choices A and B are nouns and are used as the syntactic subject or object of the sentence, the second PP **ka** (か) is often omitted as illustrated below.

3. Ringo **ka** orenji (**ka**) o kudasai.  
リンゴかオレンジ (か) を下さい。  
*Please give me an apple or an orange.*
4. Ashita wa watashi **ka** anata (**ka**) ga heya o souji-suru ban da.  
明日は私かあなた (か) が部屋を掃除する番だ。  
*Either it's my turn or your turn to clean up the room tomorrow.*

The following Sentences 5 and 6 are so-called **ka-dou-ka** sentences (〜かどうか) expressing the meaning of *whether or not*. In this sentence construction the interrogative adverb **dou** (どう: how) is placed in the second entry position.

N/S	ka	dou	ka
Entry 1		Entry 2	

5. Konsāto ni ik-eru **ka** dou **ka** mada wakara-nai.  
コンサートに行けるかどうかまだ分からない。  
*I still don't know whether I can go to the concert or not.*

6. Kono hanashi ga houtou ka dou ka shi-t-te-i-masu ka?  
この話が本当かどうか知っていますか。  
*Do you know whether or not this story is true?*

#### 4.2.3 mo (も)

The PP **mo** (も) is categorized into three different types of PPs, namely Type B case marking PPs (see § 3.4.1), adverbial (see § 5.2.11) and copulative PPs. As an adverbial PP, it also has a function of expressing modality (see § 5.2.11.9), and is therefore multifunctional. As a copulative PP, it has, however, only one role, which is described below.

##### 4.2.3.1 Incomplete listings (cf §§ 5.2.11.1 and 5.2.11.2)

With the PP **mo** (も) the speaker can list nouns, postpositional phrases or nominalized sentences. The meaning of *both A and B* is expressed when there are only two **mo**-entries (see Sentences 1, 2 and 3 below). Should there be more than two, the meaning of *every item A, B, C, etc.* is expressed (see Sentence 4). This does not mean, however, that a complete list of items is presented. In other words, listing either complete or incomplete lists is a syntactic function of the PP **mo** (も), and its semantic function is to express an addition, in the sense of *too*, *also* or *as well*. Therefore the context determines whether it is a complete or incomplete list (see § 5.2.11.2). The PP **mo** (も) is categorized into the second type, *incomplete listing*, in this chapter, because it does not explicitly contain the semantic feature of *completeness*.

A	mo	B	mo	C	mo
---	----	---	----	---	----

- Jon **mo** Meari **mo** Kanada-jin da  
ジョンもメアリーもカナダ人だ。  
*Both John and Mary are Canadians*
- Watashi wa Furansu-go o hanasu no **mo** kaku no **mo** heta da  
私はフランス語を話すのも書くのも下手だ。  
*I am neither good at speaking nor writing French.*
- Oya kara **mo** sensei kara **mo** home-rare-ta  
親からも先生からも褒められた。  
*I was praised both by my parents and my teacher.*
- Reizouko ni wa pan **mo** miruku **mo** batā **mo** nai.  
冷蔵庫にはパンもミルクもバターもない。  
*There is no bread, milk nor butter in the fridge*

#### 4.2.4 nari (なり)

The PP **nari** (なり) belongs to the category of copulative and conjunctive PPs (see § 6.2.15). As a copulative PP it has just one syntactic function: an incomplete listing of items

##### 4.2.4.1 Incomplete listings: citing examples

The PP **nari** (なり) marks examples. Theoretically speaking, the **nari**-entry can be used many times in a sentence, however, it is most commonly occurs with just two entries. Morphosyntactically speaking, the PP **nari** (なり) can be attached to nouns (see Sentences 1 and 2), adverbials (see Sentence 3), or sentences (subordinate clauses) (see Sentence 4).

N/adverbial/sentence	nari	N/adverbial/sentence	nari	...
----------------------	------	----------------------	------	-----

- Denwa **nari** denshi-mēru **nari** de kaigi no hajimaru jikan o shirase-te-kudasai  
電話なり電子メールなりで会議の始まる時間を知らせて下さい。  
*Please let me know by telephone or by e-mail when the conference begins*
- Dai **nari** shou **nari** nan-ra ka no toraburu ga shoujiru daro-u.  
大なり小なり何らかのトラブルが生じるだろう。  
*Big or small, some problem is bound to occur*
- Gakkou o tsuji te **nari**, tomodachi o tsuji-te **nari**, Tanaka-san ni renraku shi-te-o-i-te-kudasai  
学校を通じてなり、友達を通じてなり、田中さんに連絡しておいて下さい。  
*It doesn't matter how you reach Mr/Ms Tanaka. Whether it's through the school or his/her friends, just get in touch with him/her.*
- Jisho o kau **nari**, dare ka ni jisho o kariru **nari**, kono hon'yaku wa jisho nashi de wa deki-nai  
辞書を買うなり、誰かに辞書を借りるなり、この翻訳は辞書なしでは出来ない。  
*I can't translate this without dictionaries. Whether I buy them or I borrow them from someone, I have to have dictionaries*

#### 4.2.5 ni (に)

The PP **ni** (に) is multifunctional both syntactically and semantically. It belongs to the case marking (see § 3.2.6), copulative (see § 4.2.5), conjunctive (see § 6.2.16) and modality expressing PPs (see § 7.2.13). The PP **ni** (に) in the coordinating function has the following two semantic roles: an addition (see § 4.2.5.1) or an increase with modality expressing components (see § 4.2.5.2).

##### 4.2.5.1 Complete listings: additions

The PP **ni** (に) marks an object or a fact to which something will be added. Although two items are present < N1 **ni** N2 >, the focus is on the first noun N1, and the second noun (N2) is an addition to the former. Both N1 and N2 comprise of one syntactic unit. This usage of the PP **ni** (に) is especially observed in idiomatic expressions.

N1	ni	N2
----	----	----



1. Oni ni kanabou  
鬼に金棒。  
*It's a double advantage. (Lit.: A [valorous] devil with a [hard] metal stick.)*
2. Take ni suzume  
竹に雀。  
*A good combination (Lit.: A bamboo stick with a sparrow on it)*
3. Ume ni uguisu.  
梅に鶯。  
*A good combination. (Lit.: An ume-plum tree with a Japanese nightingale in it.)*

Sentence 1 is a proverb, whereas Sentences 2 and 3 are idiomatic expressions derived from scenes commonly seen in the natural surroundings of Japan.

#### 4.2.5.2 Complete listings (an increase) + Modality

The items are listed in such a manner that, as the speaker's list grows, he/she is increasingly surprised, disgusted or shows other emotions. The PP *ni* (に) in this usage has, therefore, a syntactic function of listing items, and in addition, has a modality function of expressing certain emotions of the speaker. The types of emotions portrayed depend on the situation in which the statement is made.

1. Tanaka-san wa uchi ni ki-te, biru ni o-sake ni burandê made no-n-de kae-t-te-i-t-ta.  
田中さんは家に来て、ビールにお酒にブランデーまで飲んで帰っていった。  
*Mr/Ms Tanaka visited me. He/She drank not only beer but also rice wine. In addition, he/she drank brandy before going back home. (How could he/she drink so much! It's amazing/incredible/disgusting!)*
2. Tomodachi wa Raten-go ni kodai-Girisha-go ni Heburai-go ga dekiru.  
友達 は ラテン語に古代ギリシャ語にヘブライ語ができる。  
*Not only can my friend understand Latin, but also he/she even understands Old Greek and Hebrew. (It's amazing!)*
3. Jon wa Nihon-no koto o yoku shi-t-te-iru. Rekishi ni bungaku ni chiri ni seitsuu-shi-te-iru.  
ジョンは日本の事をよく知っている。歴史に文学に地理に精通している。  
*John knows a lot about Japan. He is not only well informed about Japanese history, he is also learned in Japanese literature and geography. (It's amazing!)*

#### 4.2.6 no (の)

##### 4.2.6.1 Incomplete listings (citing examples) + Modality

Sentences or adverbs can be cited as examples by using the PP *no* (の). The emotions of the speaker, such as anger, frustration or surprise, are expressed at the same time

Adverb/sentence	no	adverb/sentence	no	...
-----------------	----	-----------------	----	-----

1. Musuko wa atama ga itai no kibun ga warui no to nakanaka heya o katazuke-nai.  
息子は頭が痛いのが気分が悪いのとなかなか部屋を片づけない。  
*My son avoids cleaning his room by saying that he has a headache or that he feels sick (and so on). (I'm fed up with him! / He is driving me crazy!)*
2. Yasuda-san wa dou no kou no to i-t-te, itsumo yakusoku no jikan ni okure-te-kuru.  
安田さんはどうのこうのと言って、いつも約束の時間に遅れてくる。  
*Mr/Ms Yasuda always comes late with a different excuse each time. (He isn't reliable! / It frustrates me!)*

#### 4.2.7 shi (し)

##### 4.2.7.1 Incomplete listings: additions

Statements marked with the PP *shi* (し) are given as examples. The first statement forms the base statement to which subsequent statements are added (see the diagram below). From the viewpoint of syntax, the PP *shi* (し) also combines sentences, thus, it can be regarded as a conjunctive PP, in this case as a cause/reason marker (see § 6.2.19)

Sentence	shi	sentence	shi	sentence	shi	...
----------	-----	----------	-----	----------	-----	-----

1. Jibun ni wa ie mo aru shi, kuruma mo aru shi, nan demo aru.  
自分には家もあるし、車もあるし、何でもある。  
*I have everything: A house, a car and so on*
2. O-kane mo nai shi, hima mo nai shi, kotoshi wa doko ni mo ika-nai koto ni shi-ta.  
お金もないし、暇もないし、今年はどこにも行かないことにした。  
*Now that I have neither money nor time, I've decided not to go anywhere this year.*

#### 4.2.8 tari (たり)/dari (だり)

##### 4.2.8.1 Incomplete listings of actions

Actions or happenings are cited as examples by marking each sentence (subordinate clause) with the PP *tari/dari* (たり/だり). In this case, the actions taken are not necessarily listed in the sequential order of occurrence. *Dari* (だり) is a phonologically changed form of *tari* (たり) and is used after consonantal verbs with stem-endings *b*, *m* and *n*, such as *yob-u* (呼ぶ / to call; to name, to invite), *shizum-u* (沈む / to sink; to set; to drop; to go down, etc.) and *shin-u* (死ぬ / to die) (see § 0.6.1.2: TE-type inflection). It has to be noted that the verb *suru* (する) is always added after the last *tari/dari*-entry.

Sentence	tari/dari	sentence	tari/dari	...	sentence	tari/dari	suru
----------	-----------	----------	-----------	-----	----------	-----------	------

1. Kinou wa hon o yon-dari, tegami o kai-tari, sanpo o shi-tari shi-ta.  
昨日は本を読んだり、手紙を書いたり、散歩をしたりした。

(For example) I read books, wrote a letter and took a walk yesterday.

2. Terebi o mi-tari shi-nai de, benkyou-shi-nasai.  
テレビを見たりしないで、勉強なさい。  
Stop watching TV and the like! Do your studies instead!

#### 4.2.9 to (と)

##### 4.2.9.1 Complete listings

With the PP to (と) the speaker can list many objects or items. By using this PP, he/she generally indicates that every single item has been listed. The last PP to (と) is usually omitted when there are more than two to-entries (see the diagram below).



1. otoko to onna  
男と女  
a man and a woman
2. kami to pen to inku  
紙とペンとインク  
a piece of paper, a pen and ink
3. Watashi wa suu-gaku to on-gaku (to) ga senmon da  
私は数学と音楽(と)が専門だ。  
I'm majoring in math and music.

#### 4.2.10 toka (とか)

##### 4.2.10.1 Incomplete listings: citing examples

By placing the PP toka (とか) after nouns, postpositional phrases or sentences (subordinate clauses), the speaker can mark these as examples. When listing items with the PP toka (とか), he/she can omit the last occurrence (see Sentences 1 and 2 below). The use of the PP toka (とか) is more colloquial than the use of the PP ya (や) which also bears the same meaning (see § 4.2.11).



1. Raten-go toka kodai-Girsha-go (toka) o benkyou-suru hito ga he-t-te-iru.  
ラテン語とか古代ギリシャ語(とか)を勉強する人が減っている。  
The number of people learning Latin or Old Greek is decreasing.
2. Ichi-do wa Supein toka Porutogaru (toka) ni i-t-te-mi-tai.  
一度はスペインとかポルトガル(とか)に行ってみたい。  
I want to go at least once to Spain or to Portugal (Lit.: I want to go at least once to such countries as Spain or Portugal.)

#### 4.2.10.2 Uncertainty

When the speaker is not sure of/about something, the PP toka (とか) can be used to mark this unsureness

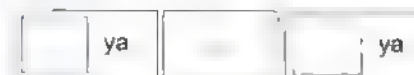
3. Nakayama-san toka iu hito kara denwa ga a-t-ta.  
中山さんとかいう人から電話があった。  
A certain Mr/Ms Nakayama called you.
4. Kinou doko toka no nan toka-san to iu hito ga ya-t-te-ki-ta kedo, namae ga omoi-das-e-nai  
昨日どことかの何とかさんという人がやってきたけど、名前が思い出せない。  
Somebody from a certain company visited me yesterday, but I can't remember his/her name

#### 4.2.11 ya (や)

The PP ya (や) functions to list items or actions in an incomplete list.

##### 4.2.11.1 Incomplete listings: citing examples

When citing examples, the last PP ya (や) in a sequence of listed items is omitted (see below).



1. Kono heya ni wa shidi-pureya ya, conpyuta ya dejitaru-kamera ga aru  
この部屋にはCDプレーヤーやコンピューターやデジタルカメラがある。  
There is a CD-player, a computer, a digital camera, and so forth in this room.
2. Kyuushuu ya Okinawa ni i-t-te-mi-tai.  
九州や沖縄に行ってみたい。  
I want to go to Kyūshū and Okinawa (I want to go to other places, too.)

#### 4.2.12 yara (やら)

The PP yara (やら) not only has a syntactic function of listing examples, but also a modality function so that emotions of the speaker are expressed at the same time

##### 4.2.12.1 Incomplete listings (citing examples) + Modality

By using the PP yara (やら) emotions of the speaker, such as despair, anger and the like, are indicated in the utterance. The situation determines which kind of emotion is expressed



1. Watashi wa piano yara tennis yara de isogashii.  
私はピアノやらテニスやらで忙しい。  
*I'm busy having lessons in playing the piano and tennis.*
2. Ureshii yara kanashii yara de dou shi-te ii no ka wakara-na-kat-ta  
嬉しいやら悲しいやらでどうしていいのかわからなかった。  
*On the one hand I was happy about it, but on the other hand I was sad. And I didn't know what I should have done*
3. Kodomo ga naku yara wameku yara de kyou wa taihen da-t-ta.  
子供が泣くやら喚くやらで今日は大変だった。  
*I sure had a hard day today. My child was crying or screaming the whole time.*

## Chapter 5 Adverbial PPs

Twenty adverbial PPs are dealt with in this book altogether (see Table 19). As has been mentioned in other chapters (see § 1.3 and Chapter 2), the actual number of PPs that belong to this category varies depending upon the particular interpretation of the typology of the word categories

As can be seen from Table 20, most of these adverbial PPs are multifunctional. In the following Section 5.1, first the main common functions are surveyed and then in Section 5.2 the detailed roles of each adverbial PPs are examined.

### 5.1 Common functions

The fundamental function of adverbial PPs is to modify the meaning of a predicate by placing them after nouns, postpositional phrases (noun + PP), adjectives, adverbs or verbs. There are six main types of semantic features which arise when using these PPs: exclusiveness (*only, solely, exclusively, alone, etc.*); extremeness (*even, in spite of*); approximations (*approximately, around, about, etc.*); expressions of modality such as criticism, contempt, scorn, anger and other emotions of the speaker (see §§ 3.4.2.2 — 3.4.2.6); taking something as an example with the aim of expressing uncertainty or ambiguity (*such as*) (see § 3.4.2.1); and finally the others which do not belong to any of afore mentioned five types. Of these functions, the forth and fifth ones have already been explained in Chapter 3 (Type B case marking PPs: PPs with combined syntax, semantic and modality). This section, therefore, deals solely with the first three of these semantic functions: exclusiveness, approximations and extremeness.

#### 5.1.1 Exclusiveness

The PPs **bakari** (ばかり), **dake** (だけ), **kiri** (きり), **nomi** (のみ) and **shika** (しか) belong to this group. With these PPs, the speaker can express meanings such as *only, solely, exclusively, etc.*, indicating a certain restriction on the choice of objects, activities or matters.

1. Jon wa biru bakari no-n-de-iru.  
ジョンはビールばかり飲んでいる。  
*John is drinking beer the whole time (He doesn't do anything else)*
2. Jon wa biru dake no-n-de-iru.  
ジョンはビールだけ飲んでいる。  
*John only drinks beer (There are other drinks, but he doesn't drink anything else)*
3. Jon wa biru nomi no-n-de-iru.  
ジョンはビールのみ飲んでいる。  
*John only drinks beer (He doesn't want to drink anything else. It's his preference.)*
4. Jon wa biru shika noma-nai.  
ジョンはビールしか飲まない。  
*John only drinks beer. (He doesn't want to drink anything else. It's his preference)*



Table 19: A list of adverbial PPs

	Adverbial PP	Functions
1.	bakari	6
2.	dake <sup>14</sup>	5
3.	datte [da'tte]	4
4.	demo	6
5.	hodo <sup>14</sup>	6
6.	ka	5
7.	kiri	2
8.	koso	4
9.	kurai/gurai <sup>14</sup>	4
10.	made	4
11.	mo	10
12.	nari	4
13.	nomi	1
14.	sae	3
15.	shika	1
16.	shimo	3
17.	sura	1
18.	tote	3
19.	yara	3
20.	zutsu	2

5. Tonari no roujin wa hitori kiri de su-n-de-iru.  
 隣の老人は独りきりで住んでいる。  
*Our neighbour, who is an old man/woman, lives all alone. (He/She doesn't live with anybody.)*

<sup>14</sup> The PPs *dake* (だけ), *hodo* (ほど) and *kurai/gurai* (くらい/ぐらい), can also be treated as pseudo-nouns *dake* (度), *hodo* (程) and *kurai/gurai* (位) respectively (Nagara et al. 1987: 21-25, 46-51 and 98-101). This handbook, however, categorizes them as PPs (see § 1.3; see Table 11 in Chapter 1)

Diagram 3: Syncretism of PPs (Case marking + Modality)

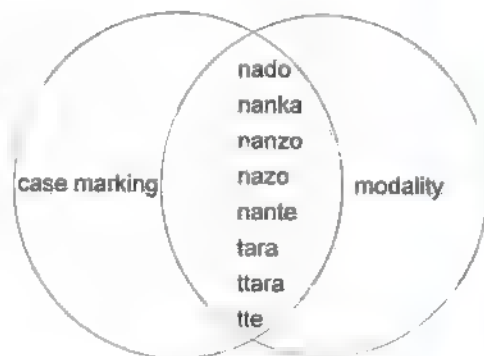
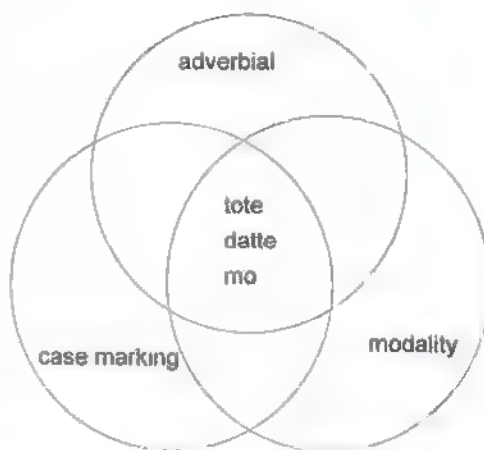


Diagram 4: Syncretism of PPs (Case marking + Modality + Adverbial)



All of these five PPs, exemplified in Sentences 1 to 5, have in common the semantic feature of restriction. There are, however, minor distinctions in nuances. The PP *bakari* (ばかり) indicates an act or an occurrence as a restriction. The PP *dake* (だけ) designates a restriction on a choice of things/matters based upon availability, whereas the PPs *nomi* (のみ) and *shika* (しか) restrict the choice based upon a preference. Note that when using the PP *shika* (しか), there is a syntactic concordance-restriction; the predicate of the sentence has to be negated.<sup>15</sup> The meaning, however, remains affirmative. The last adverbial PP of this functional type *kiri* (きり) indicates exclusiveness; it indicates that there is nothing/nobody else.

### 5.1.2 Approximations

By using the adverbial PPs *bakari* (ばかり), *hodo* (ほど) and *kurai* (くらい)/*gurai* (ぐらい), the speaker can express approximation with the meaning of *about*, *approximately*, etc.

6. San-nen bakari/hodo/kurai/gurai Amerika ni su-n-de-ita.  
 三年ばかり(ほど/くらい/ぐらい)アメリカに住んでいた。  
*I lived for about three years in America*

Of these adverbial PPs, the PPs *kurai* (くらい) or *gurai* (ぐらい) are the most colloquial and can be used interchangeably. The PP *gurai* (ぐらい) is a phonologically voiced form, the voiceless velar plosive [k] has changed to the voiced velar plosive [g]. The PP *hodo* (ほど) is used for rather formal statements and, as far as formal feature of the statements is concerned, the PP *bakari* (ばかり) lies somewhere in between the two.

### 5.1.3 Extremes

Many of adverbial PPs belong to this group (see Table 20): *datte* (だって), *demo* (でも), *made* (まで), *mo* (も), *sae* (さえ), *sura* (すら) and *tote* (とて). Each of these have many different functions (see Tables 19 and 20), but they all share one specific role: emphasis. The emphasized entry (constituent/entity) of the sentence, marked with one of these PPs, is further characterized as an extreme. The English equivalent is the adverb *even*. Normally a noun, an adverb, an adjective or even a sentence can be the recipient of this intensifier. However, from the viewpoint of syntax, any syntactic entry, such as subject, object, local or temporal entry, can be emphasized in this way.

7. Kodomo datte/demo/made/mo/sae/sura/tote wakaru.  
 子供だって(でも/まで/も/さえ/すら/とて)分かる。  
*Even a child can understand.*

All the variations of Sentence 7 above have more or less the same meaning but with slightly different nuances depending upon the PP employed. The PP *datte* (だって) is the most colloquial, whereas the PPs *sae* (さえ), *sura* (すら) and *tote* (とて) convey a formal nuance.

<sup>15</sup> Iwasaki (1993: 9) points out that the PP *shika* (しか) connotes the speaker's negative subjective evaluation by expressing disappointment, regret and so forth

Table 20: Semantic functions of adverbial PPs

	Function	Meaning	PP
1.	exclusiveness	<i>only; solely; exclusively</i>	bakari, dake, kiri, nomi, shika
2.	extreme	<i>even, in spite of</i>	datte [da?te], demo, kurai/gurai, made, mo, sae, shimo, sura, tote
3.	approximation	<i>approximately; around; about</i>	bakari, hodo, kurai/gurai
4.	modality	criticism, contempt, scorn, anger, regrets, a pity, being moved	nado, nanka, nante, nanzo, nazo, tara, ttara [?tara], tte [?te]
		taking something for granted	kurai/gurai
		an insecure feeling, uncertainty	ka, yara
		resignation	demo
		assumptions ( <i>probably, might</i> )	ka, mo, yara
		doubt	ka
		possibilities	ka
		a surprise	mo
		indecisive attitudes	yara
5.	aspective	the immediate past ( <i>just</i> )	bakari
		rapid procedures	ka
		unchanged state	kiri
		gradual changes	zutsu
		proportional changes ( <i>the ..., the ...</i> )	dake, hodo
6.	causal	<i>because; since; as</i>	dake
7.	concessive	<i>although, even if</i>	demo
8.	topic + examples	<i>... for example; ... for instance</i>	tote

9.	ambiguity/examples	<i>such as, for example</i>	nado, nanka, nari
10.	comparative	<i>as as, so that</i>	kurai/gurai
11.	superlative	<i>the - est</i>	hodo kurai/gurai
12.	holistic cases	total affirmation	datte [da?te], mo, nari, shimo
		total negation	datte [da?te], mo, tote
13.	minimum	<i>just; simply; only</i>	demo, kurai/gurai, nari, sae
14.	maximum	<i>a maximum of, at most</i>	mo
15.	quantitative	proportions ( <i>respectively; each</i> )	zutsu
16.	extent	<i>as, as, to the extent</i>	dake, hodo, made
17.	emphasis	<i>just, only</i>	bakari, koso, mo
18.	addition	<i>even, as well, too</i>	made, mo, sae
19.	others	double affirmation ( <i>both</i> )	mo
		indications of variety	mo
		indications of choice	demo, nari
		idiosyncrasy	nari
		negation of categorical	shimo
		negation ( <i>not necessarily</i> )	
		appearance ( <i>as if</i> )	bakari
		merits/rewards	dake

It is also interesting to survey their syntactic properties in that multiple PPs are applicable, i.e., the speaker can use multiple PPs from this group by juxtaposing them one after another (cf. § 3.2.7.8). There is, however, a strict hierarchical word order that determines which PP comes first. The end result is an intensification of the emphasis placed on the marked entry

(1) 2-place-juxtaposition:

8. Kodomo **sura mo//sae mo//made mo** wakaru.  
 子供すらも(//さえも/までも)分かる。  
*Even a child can understand*

(2) 3-place-juxtaposition:

- 9 Kodomo **sura sae mo** wakaru  
 子供すらさえも分かる。  
*Even a child can understand*

#### 5.1.4 Others

Table 20 serves to illustrate the wide range of further functions attributable to the adverbial PPs. These functions are examined under the individual adverbial PPs in the following section (§ 5.2). Diagrams 3 and 4 of this chapter illustrate an interesting characteristic of the Japanese PPs, namely the fact that more than one linguistic roles can be incorporated within the use of one PP: syncretism/the merger of two or more postpositional functions

## 5.2 Usage of adverbial PPs

Each individual adverbial PP and its functions are described in the following subsections

### 5.2.1 bakari (ばかり)

The adverbial PP **bakari** (ばかり) has six functions (see Tables 19 and 20): exclusiveness, approximations, emphasis, two idiomatic expressions and the temporal expressions of the immediate past

#### 5.2.1.1 Exclusiveness

Habitual acts, which are carried out exclusive of all other acts, can be expressed by using the PP **bakari** (ばかり). Note that there is an intensified form of the PP **bakari** (ばかり), namely **bakkari** (ばっかり [baʔkari]), the glottal stop [ʔ] is inserted in front of the consonant [k]. **Bakka** (ばっか [baʔka]) and **bakashi** (ばかりし) are also used in colloquial speech. Syntactically speaking, the PP **bakari** (ばかり) can be placed after nouns, after the V3-form or the TA-form of verbs (see §§ 0.6 1.1 and 0.6.1.2), or after adjectives. These possibilities have three related sentence structures dealt with individually in the following text

#### (1) < N bakari ... >



The first syntactic construction shown above can be used as the syntactic subject (see Sentence 2) or object of a sentence (see Sentence 1). As an object of the sentence, the object case marker **o** (を) is omissible (see Sentence 1)

1. Yamada-san wa hon **bakari** (o) yo-n-de-iru.  
 山田さんは本ばかり(を)読んでいる。  
*Mr/Ms Yamada is constantly reading books. (Either he/she doesn't do anything else, or he/she doesn't read anything else.)*

The use of the PP **bakari** (ばかり) in Sentence 1 is ambiguous. The PP **bakari** (ばかり) refers to the noun **hon** (本: book) and therefore marks its exclusiveness, either the act of reading books, or the type of material read, has been restricted

2. Anata **bakari** ga warui wake de wa nai.  
 あなたばかりが悪いわけではない。  
*It's not only your fault. (Somebody else is also responsible)*

#### (2) < TE bakari ... >



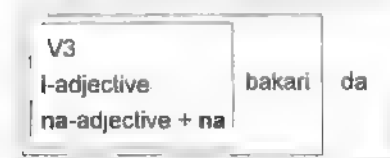
In the second sentence construction, using the verb-compound **TE-iru** (illustrated above), the PP **bakari** (ばかり) is placed in the middle of the verb-compound **TE-iru**,



normally seen as a single unit. Owing to this construction, in that the PP **bakari** (ばかり) refers to the TE-form of the verb, there is only one interpretation of the sentence excluding possible pragmatic features (see Sentence 3).

3. Yamada-san wa hon o yon-de **bakari** iru.  
山田さんは本を読んでばかりいる。  
*Mr/Ms Yamada is constantly reading books. (He/She doesn't do anything else.)*

(3) <... **bakari da** >



In the final sentence construction, illustrated above, the PP **bakari** (ばかり) is placed after a verb, an i-adjective or a na-adjective, and followed by the auxiliary verb **da** (だ), thus expressing a definitive statement. Sentences 4 and 5 illustrate this construction with the auxiliary verb **da** (だ) inflected into the conjunctive form **de** (で) resulting in the meaning of *and*.

4. Ano hito wa itsumo monku o iu **bakari de**, nani mo shi-nai.  
あの人はいつも文句を言うばかりで、何もしない。  
*He/She doesn't do anything else but complains about things the whole time.*
5. Kono hon wa yasui **bakari de**, naiyou ga nai.  
この本は安いばかりで、内容がない。  
*The only merit of this book is its cheap price — it doesn't have any content. (This book might be cheap, but it doesn't have any content.)*

### 5.2.1.2 Idiomatic expressions using exclusion

This subsection introduces two idiomatic expressions using the PP **bakari** (ばかり) in its exclusive function

(1) <TA **bakari ni**... >

In this case, the PP **bakari** (ばかり), which signals exclusiveness, is placed after the TA-form of the verb (see § 0.6.1.2). The PP **ni** (に) that follows is a case marker indicating causes or reasons (see § 3.2.6.13). The diagram below serves to illustrate this sentence construction



6. Shiken touroku no shime kiri bi o mamora-na-kat-ta **bakari ni**, shiken o ukeru koto ga deki-na-kat-ta.  
試験登録の締切日を守らなかったばかりに、試験を受けることが出来なかった。  
*Just because I was late in registering for the exam, I couldn't take it.*

7. Shounen wa o-kane ga na-kat-ta **bakari ni**, hanzai o okashi-te-shima-t-ta.  
少年はお金がなかったばかりに、犯罪を犯してしまった。  
*Just because this boy didn't have any money, he committed a crime*

(2) <... **bakari + ka** > / <... **bakari + de + wa + naku**... >

With the second sentence structure shown below, the speaker can express the meaning of *not only A but also B*. The predicate placed before the PP **bakari** (ばかり) can also be negated. This depends upon the statement the speaker wishes to express



8. Ano hito wa kao ga ii **bakari ka**, atama mo ii.  
あの人は顔がいいばかりか、頭もいい。  
*He/She is not only handsome/beautiful, but also smart*
9. Ano hito wa takara-kuji ni ata-t-ta **bakari ka**, shiken ni mo goukaku-shi-ta.  
あの人は宝くじに当たったばかりか、試験にも合格した。  
*He/She not only won the lottery, but also passed the exam.*

### 5.2.1.3 Approximations

As has been already discussed in Section 5.1.2, the PP **bakari** (ばかり) can indicate an approximate figure, sum, amount or quantity of something

10. O-kane o ni-sen-en **bakari** kashi-te-kure-mase-n ka?  
お金を二千円ばかり貸してくれませんか。  
*Can you lend me two thousand yen? (I need more or less this sum of money.)*

### 5.2.1.4 Emphasis

In this use, a noun marked by the PP **bakari** (ばかり) is emphasized

11. Kaji no toki, ima da to **bakari ni** mado kara tobi-on-te tasuka-t-ta.  
火事の時、今だとばかりに窓から飛び降りて助かった。  
*When fire broke out, I jumped out of the window as it struck me to be just the right time to do so.*

### 5.2.1.5 Idiomatic expressions: <V1 + n + bakari + no/ni >

The proximative aspectual meaning *just about to do something* is expressed using the following sentence structure. The sentence construction <V1 + n + bakari > can be used either nominally or adverbially, thus forming the structures <V1 + n + bakari no >



or < V1 + n + **bakari** + ni > respectively. In this case, the final PP **ni** (に), when present, is used as a case marker of manner (see § 3.2.6.15).

12. Ano hito ni naka-n **bakari** no kao de tanoma-re, kotowa-re-na-kat-ta.  
あの人の泣かんばかりの顔で頼まれ、断われなかった。  
*As he/she asked me to do this, he/she looked as if he/she were about to burst into tears. Therefore I couldn't reject his/her request.*
13. Ano hito wa naka-n **bakari** ni watashi no tokoro ni tasuke o motome-te-ki-ta  
あの人は泣かんばかりに私の所に助けを求めてきた。  
*He/She came to me for help as if he/she were about to burst into tears.*

### 5.2.1.6 Aspectives: the immediate past

The following diagram shows the sentence structure used to signal the aspectual feature of the immediate past, i. e. *something has just happened*. The TA-form of the verb is followed by the PP **bakari** (ばかり) and the auxiliary verb **da** (だ).



14. Ima shigoto kara kae-t-te-ki-ta **bakari** da.  
今仕事から帰ってきたばかりだ。  
*I have just come back from work.*
15. Kansai-kokusai-kuukou ni tsu-i-ta **bakari** da.  
関西国際空港に着いたばかりだ。  
*I've just arrived at the Kansai International Airport.*

### 5.2.2 **dake** (だけ)

The PP **dake** (だけ) has three main uses: the indication of extent (see § 5.2.2.1), marking of a restriction (see § 5.2.2.2) and in idiomatic expressions, which use the previous two functions (see § 5.2.2.3).

#### 5.2.2.1 Extent: as ... as ...

Meanings, such as *as much as/as far as/inasmuch as*, etc. can be expressed by using the PP **dake** (だけ).

1. Dekiru **dake** ganbaru tsumori da.  
出来るだけ頑張るつもりだ。  
*I will do my best (as much as I can)*
2. Hashir-eru **dake** hashire!  
走れるだけ走れ!  
*Run as long as you can!*
3. Dekiru **dake** hayaku kono shigoto o shi-te-kudasai.

出来るだけ早くこの仕事をして下さい。  
*Please finish this work as soon as you can.*

4. Kangaeru **dake** muda da.  
考えるだけ無駄だ。  
*You can think about it as much as you want, but it won't help. (It's a waste of time.)*

#### 5.2.2.2 Exclusiveness (see § 5.1.1)

As was previously explained in Subsection 5.1.1, the PP **dake** (だけ) can mark the exclusiveness of something with the meaning of *only, exclusively*, etc. When using the PPs **ni** (に: see § 3.2.6.8) and **dake** (だけ), their hierarchical order is twofold (see Sentences 5 and 6): **ni>dake**, or **dake>ni**.

5. Anata ni **dake** jijitsu o iu /Anata **dake** ni jijitsu o iu  
あなたにだけ事実を言う。/あなただけに事実を言う。  
*I'll tell the truth, but only to you*
6. Anata ni **dake** jijitsu o iwa-nai./Anata **dake** ni jijitsu o iwa-nai.  
あなたにだけ事実を言わない。/あなただけに事実を言わない。  
*I'll tell the truth to everyone but you.*
7. Kore **dake** wa hoshii  
これだけは欲しい。  
*I don't want anything else, but this.*

#### 5.2.2.3 Idiomatic expressions

There are some idiomatic expressions in which the PP **dake** (だけ) is incorporated.

##### 5.2.2.3.1 Proportional changes: < V4 ba V3 **dake** >

Using the following sentence structure, it is possible to express a change that takes place proportionally in two different things.



The first entry (constituent/entity) is in the conditional form using the verbal inflection form V4 (see § 0.6.1.1) and the conjunctive PP **ba** (ば: see § 6.2.1.1). The second entry of the sentence uses the PP **dake** (だけ) to express the extent of an act described by the V3-form of the verb (see § 0.6.1.1). The last entry is the predicate containing the core of the statement. The PP **hodo** (ほど) can replace the PP **dake** (だけ) in this structure (see § 5.2.5.4).

8. Nihon-go wa renshuu-sure ba suru **dake** jouzu ni naru  
日本語は練習すればするだけ上手になる。  
*The more you practice your Japanese, the better you will become*
9. Kangaere ba kangaeru **dake** wakara-na-ku naru.

考えれば考えるだけ分からなくなる。

*The more I think about it, the less I understand./The more I think about it, the more I get confused*

### 5.2.2.3.2 Merits/rewards: < ... dake aru >

With the sentence structure below, the speaker can express the meaning that someone deserves something, or has obtained a merit or a reward by doing something. The PP **dake** (だけ) is used here in its function as a marker of extent.

V3/TA	dake	aru
-------	------	-----

- Maria wa yoku kanji no renshuu o shi-te-iru **dake** a-t-te, kanji ga yoku kak-eru.  
マリアはよく漢字の練習をしているだけあって、漢字がよく書ける。  
*Mana's amazing ability to write kanjis so well comes because she's been practicing writing them so hard. (It's the fruit of her efforts.)*
- Tomu wa ganba-t-ta **dake** a-t-te, supichi-kontesuto de ichi-i ni na-t-ta  
トムは頑張っただけあって、スピーチコンテストで一位になった。  
*Tom won the first prize in a speech contest. He deserves it because he worked very hard for it.*

### 5.2.2.3.3 Causals: causes/reasons: < ... dake ni >

Using the sentence structure given below, the speaker can emphasize a reason or a cause for something. The PP **ni** (に) used here is a causal case marker designating the reason or cause (see § 3.2.8.13). When the predicate of the sentence (see § 0.5) marked with the PP **dake** (だけ) is < N + da/dearu/desu >, only the copula **dearu** (である) can be used. In this case, it can be deleted (see Sentence 12): ... N (dearu) **dake ni**

Sentence	dake	ni	predicate
----------	------	----	-----------

- Kono saiban wa hajime-te no kēsu (dearu) **dake ni** chuumoku-sa-re-ta  
この裁判は初めてのケースであるだけに注目された。  
*Now that this lawsuit was unprecedented, it was widely observed with great interest.*
- Takara-kuji ni ataru to wa yume ni mo omo-t-te i-na-kat-ta **dake ni**, shirase o ki-i-ta toki wa, totemo ureshi-kat-ta  
宝くじに当たるとは夢にも思っていなかっただけに、知らせを聞いた時は、とても嬉しかった。  
*I've never thought I'd win in the lottery. That's why I was so happy when I was informed that I'd won.*

### 5.2.3 datte (だって)

As explained in Subsection 5.1.3, the speaker can mark a noun with the PP **datte** (だって) in order to express the extreme nature of things or a state of affairs.

### 5.2.3.1 Extremes (see § 5.1.3)

One use of the PP **datte** (だって) is to cite something as an extreme example. The English adverb *even* corresponds closely to this meaning. The PPs **demo** (でも: see § 5.2.4.1), **mo** (も: see §§ 5.2.11.5 and 5.2.11.6), **sae** (さえ: see § 5.2.14.1), **sura** (すら: see § 5.2.17.1), and **tote** (とて: see § 5.2.18.1) also express this meaning such that they can be used interchangeably. However, there are differences in nuance: the PP **datte** (だって) is colloquial; the PP **demo** (でも) is neutral; the PP **sura** (すら) is rather formal; and **tote** (とて) conveys a strong formal nuance.

- Ima **datte** ano toki no kowasa ga wasure-rare-nai  
今だってあの時の怖さが忘れられない。  
*Even now, I can't forget how scared I was at the time.*
- Doubutsu **datte**, konna koto wa shi-nai daro-u  
動物だって、こんな事はしないだろう。  
*Even animals wouldn't do such a thing*
- Sonna koto wa oya ni **datte** i-e-nai  
そんな事は親にだって言えない。  
*I can't tell such a thing to anybody, not even my parents.*

### 5.2.3.2 Citing examples when expressing totality

By using the PP **datte** (だって), the speaker can express the holistic features of things simply by citing some examples as parts of the whole. Theoretically speaking, he/she can cite many examples, but two items are the norm. The PP **mo** (も) can also be used for this purpose (see § 5.2.11.2).

- Shihon-shugi **datte** kyousan-shugi **datte** minna onaji da. Ningen wa tomi to kenryoku o motomeru.  
資本主義だって共産主義だってみんな同じだ。人間は富と権力を求める。  
*It doesn't make any difference whether it is capitalism or communism. Human beings strive for wealth and power. (It's the same in any system.)*
- Chichi **datte** haha **datte**, sonna koto wa yurushi-te-kure-nai daro-u.  
父だって母だって、そんな事は許してくれないだろう。  
*Nobody will forgive me for that, not even my father or my mother.*
- Ryoushin wa Pari ni **datte** Rondon ni **datte** ika-se-te-kure-ta  
両親はパリにだってロンドンにだって行かせてくれた。  
*My parents let me go everywhere, Paris, London, anywhere.*

### 5.2.3.3 Total affirmation

With the sentence structure given below, the speaker can express total affirmation of a statement. Note that the PP **demo** (でも) can also be used for this purpose (see § 5.2.4.4).

Interrogative pronoun	(PP)	datte	affirmative predicate
-----------------------	------	-------	-----------------------



7. Dare **datte**, sonna koto wa shi-t-te-iru.  
誰だって、そんな事は知っている。  
*Anyone knows that. / Everybody knows that.*
8. Jonson-san wa kodomo ni nan **datte** ka-t-te-ya-t-te-iru  
ジョンソンさんは子供に何だって買ってもらっている。  
*Mr/Ms Johnson buys his children their hearts desire.*
9. Sonna mono wa doko ni **datte** aru.  
そんな物はどこにだってある。  
*You can find that everywhere. (Lit.: Such a thing exists everywhere)*
10. Itsu **datte** ano hito wa jibun no koto shika kangae-nai.  
いつだってあの人は自分の事しか考えない。  
*He/She always thinks about only himself/herself*

#### 5.2.3.4 Total negation

In the same manner as the sentence structure explained in Section 5.2.3.3, the speaker can express the nature of total negation simply by negating the predicate. The PPs **mo** (も) and **tote** (とて) can also be used for this function (see §§ 5.2.11.4 and 5.2.18.2).

Interrogative pronoun	(PP)	<b>datte</b>	negative predicate
-----------------------	------	--------------	--------------------

11. Dare **datte** sonna koto wa shi-tagara-nai yo  
誰だってそんな事はしたがないよ。  
*Nobody wants to do such a thing.*
12. Ano hito wa itsu **datte** uchi ni i-nai kara denwa-shi-temo renraku ga tor-e-nai.  
あの人はいつだって家にいないから、電話しても連絡が取れない。  
*He/She isn't at home at all. That's why I can't contact him/her at all*
13. Doko ni **datte** sonna hidoi oya wa i-nai daro-u  
どこにだってそんなひどい親はいないだろう。  
*Such terrible parents are not to be found anywhere! / One wouldn't be able to find such terrible parents anywhere*

The following sentence structure can also be used to express the total negation of something.

1 + counter word	<b>datte</b>	negative predicate
------------------	--------------	--------------------

14. Ano hito wa ichi-do **datte** shinbun o yo-n-da koto ga nai  
あの人は一度だって新聞を読んだことがない。  
*He/She hasn't read a single newspaper. (Lit.: Not once has he/she read a newspaper)*

15. Anata ni wa hito-koto **datte** monku o i-t-ta koto wa nai  
あなたには一言だって文句を言ったことはない。  
*Not once have I complained to you about it*

#### 5.2.4 demo (でも)

The adverbial PP **demo** (でも) has six functions: denoting extremes, concessions, choices, total affirmation, minimums and resignation

##### 5.2.4.1 Extremes (see § 5.1.3)

A noun or a postpositional phrase can be marked by the adverbial PP **demo** (でも) in order to express it emphatically. The PPs **datte** (だって: see § 5.2.3.1), **sae** (さえ: see § 5.2.14.1), **sura** (すら: see § 5.2.17.1) and **tote** (とて: see § 5.2.18.1) have the same function such that they can be used interchangeably. The PP **datte** (だって) is colloquial, whereas the PP **sura** (すら) conveys a rather formal nuance, and the PP **tote** (とて) is very formal. In Sentences 1 and 2, the agent marker PP **ni** (に: see § 3.2.6.11.4) is optional

1. Sûpu nara watashi (ni) **demo** dekiru  
スープなら私にでも出来る。  
*Even I can cook soup.*
2. Konna koto wa kodomo (ni) **demo** wakaru.  
こんな事は子供にでも分かる。  
*Even children can understand that*

##### 5.2.4.2 Concessives

Meaning like *even if* or *even though* can be expressed using the PP **demo** (でも). It can also be placed after case marking PPs exclusive of the PPs **ga** (が) and **yori** (より) (see Table 13 in Chapter 3), other adverbial PPs (see Table 19 of this chapter), or a part of conjunctive PPs such as **kara** (から: see § 6.2.5) and **nagara** (ながら: see § 6.2.14) (see Table 21 in Chapter 6). Sentence 4, below, is an example of the last case

3. Anata ni to-t-te kantan na shigoto **demo**, watashi ni wa muzukashii.  
あなたにとって簡単な仕事でも、私には難しい。  
*Even if it's easy work for you, it's difficult for me*
4. Shiken ga owa-t-te kara **demo** ii kara, kono shigoto o sumase-te-kudasai.  
試験が終わってからでもいいから、この仕事を済ませて下さい。  
*Please finish this job. It'll do even after you've taken your exam.*

##### 5.2.4.3 Indication of choice

A noun or a postpositional phrase can be marked with the PP **demo** (でも) in order to designate one choice out of many possibilities.<sup>16</sup> The nuance of eventuality is thereby accentuated

<sup>16</sup> Ikegami (1991: 291-293) points out the vagueness of nouns in that there are no distinctions between singular/plural or definite/indefinite forms and further discusses that Japanese speakers have a propensity to express things vaguer than is actually the case

5. Densha ga kuru made, mada jikan ga aru kara, kôhi demo noma-nai?  
電車が来るまで、まだ時間があるから、コーヒーでも飲まない。  
*Now that we still have some time until the train arrives, why don't we drink something? How about a cup of coffee?*
6. Eigo-kyoushi ni demo naru-u ka to omo-t-te-iru.  
英語教師にでもなろうかと思っている。  
*I'm thinking of becoming an English teacher. (I may, of course, change my mind)*
7. Moshi ashita hima da-t-tara, eiga ni demo ika-nai?  
もし明日暇だったら、映画にでも行かない?  
*If you are free tomorrow, why don't we do something together, such as, going to the cinema?*

#### 5.2.4.4 Total affirmation

Using the following sentence structure with interrogative pronouns/adverbs, the speaker can express the holistic nature of things or matters. The same meaning can be expressed using the PPs **datte** (だって: see § 5.2.3.3) and **shimo** (しも: see § 5.2.16.1). The PP **datte** (だって) is colloquial, whereas the PP **shimo** (しも) conveys a more formal nuance; the PP **demo** (でも) lies somewhere in-between.

Interrogative pronoun/adverb	demo	affirmative predicate
------------------------------	------	-----------------------

8. Anata ga kono shigoto o hiki-uke-te-kureru made, nan-nen demo matsu  
あなたがこの仕事を引き受けてくれるまで、何年でも待つ。  
*No matter how long it takes, I'll wait until you accept this job.*
9. Anata no iu koto nara, nan demo suru.  
あなたの言う事なら、何でもする。  
*I'll do everything you say*
10. Anata no iku tokoro nara, doko e demo iku  
あなたの行く所ならどこへでも行く。  
*Wherever you go I'll go with you*
11. Itsu demo ii kara, Tanaka-san ni denwa-shi-te-kudasai.  
いつでもいいから、田中さんに電話して下さい。  
*It doesn't matter exactly when, but please call Mr/Ms Tanaka, sometime.*

#### 5.2.4.5 Minimums

Minimums can be encoded by the PP **demo** (でも). The adverb **semete** (せめて), meaning *at least*, is frequently used in concordance with this PP.

12. Semete oya demo iki-te-i-te-kure tara, konna ni kurou-shina-ku-temo su-n-da daro-u.  
せめて親でも生きていてくれたら、こんなに苦労しなくても済んだだろう。  
*I wouldn't have had so many difficulties, if only my parents were still alive*

13. Honno sukoshi dake demo ii kara, sono oishii kôki o wake-te-kure-nai?  
ほんの少しだけでもいいから、その美味しいケーキを分けてくれない  
*Can you give me a little bit of your tasty cake? Just a tiny little bit?*
14. Ichi-man en dake demo ii kara, mo-t-te-iki-nasai!  
一万円だけでもいいから、持って行きなさい。  
*Even if it's only 10,000 yen, take some money with you.*

#### 5.2.4.6 Idiomatic expressions: resignation: < ... demo aru mai > / < ... demo nakarou >

The following sentence structure allows the speaker to express feelings of resignation. In English this corresponds meanings, such as *anyway, anyhow, in any case, at any rate, etc.*

Sentence/Noun	demo	aru-mai na-karo-u
---------------	------	----------------------

The predicate **aru-mai** consists of the verb **aru** (ある/to be) and the auxiliary verb **mai** (まい) used to express a negative assumption: *Something won't be something*. Similarly, the predicate **nakarou** (なかりう), made up of the auxiliary verb **nai** (ない) for negation and the auxiliary verb **u** (う) for expressing an assumption, expresses the same meaning as **aru-mai** (あるまい): a negative assumption.

15. Ima sara ayamaru demo aru-mai/na-karo-u.  
今さら謝るでもあるまい。/今さら謝るでもなかりう。  
*It's too late to apologize to him/her anyway.*
16. Yakusoku-shi-ta no da kara, ima sara kouen o shi-nai demo aru-mai/na-karo-u.  
約束したのだから、今さら講演をしないでもあるまい/なかりう。  
*I promised them that I'd give a lecture. In any case, I can't just say that I can't do it any more.*

#### 5.2.5 hodo (ほど)

The adverbial PP **hodo** (ほど) has four functions: marking approximations (see § 5.2.5.1), an extent (see § 5.2.5.2), superlatives (see § 5.2.5.3) and parallel changes (see § 5.2.5.4). It is worth mentioning that some textbooks (Katsuki 1994: 228, Nagara 1987: 98) categorize **hodo** (ほど) as a 'pseudo-noun', which are used syntactically solely for forming sentences and whose meanings have become oblique (Ogawa 1989: 108). This book, however, treats **hodo** (ほど) as a PP, since its semantic and syntactic roles coincide closely with some of the adverbial PPs, such as **bakari** (ばかり: see §§ 5.1.2 and 5.2.1.3). There is indeed a general tendency in the Japanese syntax that some nouns are changing to pseudo-nouns and further to PPs. These phenomena of grammaticalization (Heine & Kuteva 2002; Momiyama 2002: 91-94) can be observed with **dake** (丈: § 5.2.2), **dokoroka** (所か: § 6.2.2), **hodo** (程: § 5.2.5), **koto** (事: § 7.2.8), **kototote** (事とて: § 6.2.7), **kurai/gurai** (位: § 5.2.9), **kusen** (癖に: § 6.2.8), **made** (迄: §§ 3.2.5 and 5.2.10), **mono** (物: § 7.2.9), **monode** (物で: § 6.2.10), **mononara** (物なら: § 6.2.11), **monono** (物の: § 6.2.12), **monoo** (物を: § 6.2.13), **tokorode** (所で: § 6.2.24) and **tokoroga** (所が: § 6.2.25).

## 5.2.5.1 Approximations

In the same manner as the PPs **bakari** (ばかり) and **kurai** (くらい)/**gurai** (ぐらい), the PP **hodo** (ほど) indicates that a noun is an approximation (see §§ 5.1.2, 5.2.1.3 and 5.2.9.1). The PP **hodo** (ほど) is therefore used to avoid direct statements. From the viewpoint of pragmatics, vague or euphemistic expressions are used in order to designate speaker's politeness towards the addressee/the hearer. Therefore, Sentence 2 below, for instance, can also be understood as that the speaker received exactly 30,000 yen from his father, and not about 30,000 yen

Noun	hodo
------	------

1. Ato ni-shuu-kan **hodo** de natsu-yasumi da.  
あと二週間ほどで夏休みだ。  
*Our summer holiday begins in about two weeks time*
2. Kinou chichi kara san-man-en **hodo** mora-t-ta  
昨日父から三万円ほどもらった。  
*I got about 30,000 yen from my father yesterday. / I got 30,000 yen from my father yesterday.*

## 5.2.5.2 Extent

For a description of an extent of intensity, quality, quantity and the like, the speaker can use the PP **hodo** (ほど). Depending on the situation in which the statement is/was made, the emotional feelings of the speaker can also be referred to synchronously. The PP **hodo** (ほど) can accordingly have a modality function (see Sentence 5 of this subsection). The following sentence structure is usually used when expressing an extent

Description of extent	hodo	predicate
-----------------------	------	-----------

3. Kyou wa oba o kiru **hodo** samuku wa nai  
今日はオーバーを着るほど寒くはない。  
*It's not so cold today that I have to put on an overcoat.*
4. Tanaka-san no tomo-dachi wa mi-ageru **hodo** se no takai hito da-t-ta.  
田中さんの友達は見上げるほど背の高い人だった。  
*A friend of Mr/Ms Tanaka was so tall that I had to look up at him/her.*
5. Sakkā no wārudo-kappu no chiketto o kau no ni san-ji-kan mo narabu **hodo** da-t-ta  
サッカーのワールドカップのチケットをを買うのに三時間も並ぶほどだった。  
*I had to stand in a queue for three hours to buy an entrance ticket for the world cup football games. (Can you imagine?)*

## 5.2.5.3 Superlatives

As shown below, the superlative can be formed in concordance with a negated

predicate. In this case, the PP **kurai**/gurai (くらい/ぐらい: see § 5.2.9.5) can be used in place of **hodo** (ほど)

Sentence/Noun	hodo	negative predicate
---------------	------	--------------------

6. Kore **hodo** omoshiroi hon wa yo-n-da koto ga nai  
これほど面白い本は読んだことがない。  
*I've never read such an interesting book before. / This is the most interesting book that I've ever read*
7. Anata **hodo** shoujiki na hito wa i-nai  
あなたほど正直な人はいない。  
*There isn't a more honest person than you. / You are the most honest man I've ever known*

## 5.2.5.4 Proportional changes

With the following sentence structure the speaker can express a proportional change.

<b>V4</b> stem of i-adj. + kere N/na-adj. + de are N/na-adj. + nara	ba	<b>V3</b> i-adj. (N/na-adj. + de) aru N/na-adj. + na	hodo	predicate
Sentence A		Sentence B		Sentence C

8. Oo-kere ba ooi **hodo** ii  
多ければ多いほどいい。  
*The more I have, the better it is*
9. Nihon-go o benkyou-sure ba (benkyou-)suru **hodo** omoshiro-ku naru.  
日本語を勉強すれば(勉強)するほど面白くなる。  
*The more I learn Japanese, the more interesting it becomes.*

As we can see in Sentence 9 above, the verb compound **benkyou-suru** (勉強する/learn) is used in the 'Sentence A'. The verb compound comprises of a noun and the verb **suru** (する/learn to do): <noun + **suru**>. In this case, the verb **suru** (する) can be placed alone in the position of 'Sentence B' without the compound-noun, i.e. the speaker uses just the verb **suru** (する) instead of the complete verb compound **benkyou-suru** (勉強する)

10. Kenkou de are ba (kenkou de) aru **hodo** ii.  
健康あれば(健康で)あるほどいい。  
*The healthier one is, the better it is.*
11. Kenkou nara kenkou na **hodo** ii.  
健康なら健康なほどいい。  
*The healthier one is, the better it is.*



The example Sentence 10 above has *kenkou de aru* (健康である/*to be healthy*) as the predicate for 'Sentence A'. When the speaker uses the predicate < *na*-adjective + *de aru* >, he/she can simply use the verb *aru* (ある) in 'Sentence B': < (*na*-adjective + *de aru*) >. When using the predicate < *na*-adjective + *da* >, the 'Sentence A' requires the conditional form of the auxiliary verb *da* (だ), which is *nara* (なら) (see Sentence 11).

### 5.2.6 ka (か)

The basic semantic role of the PP *ka* (か) is to express doubt or uncertainty. The PP *ka* (か) is therefore also to be found categorized under the modality PPs (see § 7.2.4). This subsection elucidates its adverbial features.

#### 5.2.6.1 Uncertain statements

When the speaker does not have a concrete idea about something, the PP *ka* (か) is used to mark this uncertainty. The PP *ka* (か), in this case, is juxtaposed after interrogative pronouns/adverbs (see the diagram below), and the complete entry (constituent/entity) can be used syntactically as a subject, an object, or as an adverbial of time, places, means, manner, etc. When the PP *ka* (か) is placed after the syntactic subject case marker *ga* (が) or the object case marker *o* (を), the markers *ga* (が) and *o* (を) are omitted. Syntactically speaking, the entry with the PP *ka* (か) can be treated as an adverbial (Sentences 4 and 6) or a noun (Sentences 2 and 5) within the sentence structure

Interrogative noun/Postpositional phrase/Adverb	ka
---	----

1. *Dare ka* (ga) *ki-ta*.  
誰か(が)来た。  
*Somebody came*
2. *Dare ka no hon ga koko ni aru.*  
誰かの本がここにある。  
*Somebody's book is here.*
3. *Tanaka-san to ka iu hito kara denwa ga a-t-ta*.  
田中さんとかいう人から電話があった。  
*A certain Mr/Ms Tanaka called you.*
4. *Nani ka tsumetai mono ga nomi-tai.*  
何か冷たい物が飲みたい。  
*I want to drink something cold*
5. *Doko ka de a-t-ta otoko o machi de mi-kake-ta.*  
どこかで会った男を町で見かけた。  
*I saw a man in town today, whom I met somewhere before.*
6. *Naze ka ureshii.*  
なぜか嬉しい。  
*I don't know why, but I'm happy./Somehow I just seem to be happy*

7. *Yamada-san wa nan-nen ka mae no yakusoku o wasure-te-shima-t-ta.*  
山田さんは何年か前の約束を忘れてしまった。  
*Mr/Ms Yamada forgot his/her promise, which he/she'd made some years ago*

#### 5.2.6.2 Assumptions

The fact that the speaker is not sure about something can materialize as an assumption.

8. *Tanaka-san wa byouki no sei ka kao-iro ga warui*.  
田中さんは病気のせいか顔色が悪い。  
*Mr/Ms Tanaka looks pale. It might be because he/she is sick*
9. *Kaze o hi-i-ta no ka samuke ga suru.*  
風邪を引いたのか寒気がする。  
*I've probably caught a cold. I'm shivering.*
10. *Ki no sei ka kono hou ga yoku mieru.*  
気のせいかこの方がよく見える。  
*It might be wrong, but this looks better (Lit.: It might be due to my feelings, but this looks better)*

#### 5.2.6.3 Doubt

When the predicate of the sentence bears a question whether something is true or not, the PP *ka* (か) can also be used to express doubt. The sentence structure used for this expression is outlined below. Note that *dou ka* (どうか: adverb *dou* + PP *ka*) can be omitted

sentence	ka (dou ka)	predicate
----------	-------------	-----------

11. *Kono teian wa jitsugen-sei ga aru ka* (dou ka), *sukoshi gimon da*.  
この提案は実現性があるか(どうか)、少し疑問だ。  
*I doubt if this plan can be realized / I'm not sure whether we can realize this plan.*
12. *Kondo no kaigi ga seikou ni owaru ka* (dou ka) *gimon ni omou.*  
今後の会議が成功に終わるかどうか疑問に思う。  
*I doubt whether the up-and-coming conference is going to be successful.*

#### 5.2.6.4 Idiomatic expressions

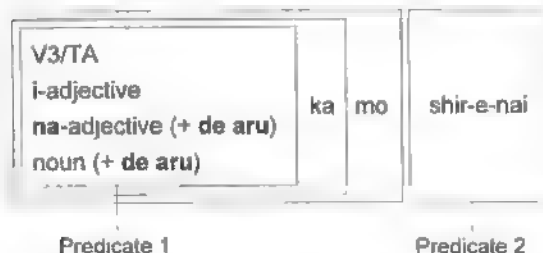
There are some idiomatic expressions using the PP *ka* (か)

##### 5.2.6.4.1 Possibility: < ... *ka mo*<sup>17</sup>*shire-nai* >

With the following sentence structure the speaker can express a possibility that

<sup>17</sup> *Kamo* (かも) is morphologically analysed as being a multiple use of case markers comprising of the PP *ka* (か) and the PP *mo* (も) in this book (see § 1.4.2). It is, however, possible to see *kamo* (かも) as one morpheme designating uncertainty (Shinmura 1974: 458)

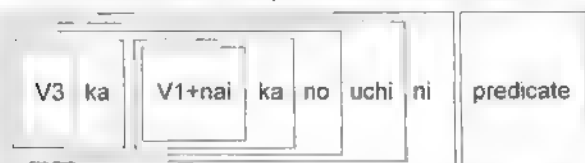
something might happen, or that something might be the case. As illustrated in Sentences 14 and 15 respectively, one can, of course, change the preceding 'predicate 1 (see outline below)' to the past tense, or negate it. The predicate **shir-e-nai** (知れない) is composed of the consonantal verb **shir-u** (知る/*to know*), the ability expressing auxiliary **eru** (える/*can*) and the auxiliary **nai** (ない/*not*) for negation, and is usually written in *hiragana*.



13. Ashita wa ame ga furu ka mo shir-e-nai.  
 明日は雨が降るかもしれない。  
*It may/might rain tomorrow.*
14. Shiken ni uka-t-ta ka mo shir-e-nai.  
 試験に受かったかもしれない。  
*It could be that I passed the exam. / I might have passed the exam.*
15. Rainen wa Furansu ni ika-nai ka mo shir-e-nai  
 来年はフランスに行かないかもしれない。  
*It is possible that I'm not going to France next year*
16. Ano hito wa shinsetsu ka mo shir-e-nai  
 あの人は親切かもしれない。  
*He/she may be a nice person*
17. Ano hito wa sensei ka mo shir-e-nai  
 あの人は先生かもしれない。  
*He/She could be a teacher.*

#### 5.2.6.4.2 Rapid procedures: < V3 ka V1-nai ka no uchi ni >

With the following sentence construction, the speaker can express a very rapid process — one, which he/she hardly notices, has happened.



18. Hajimaru ka hajimara-nai ka no uchi ni kaigi ga owa-t-te-shima-t-ta.  
 始まるか始まらないかのうちに会議が終わってしまった。

*The conference had no sooner started than it ended*

#### 5.2.7 kiri (きり)

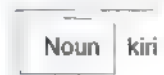
The PP **kiri** (きり) can be used to mark exclusiveness. In this role it is employed as shown in the sentence configurations given in Subsection 5.2.7.1. It can also be employed as an aspectual marker (see § 5.2.7.2).

##### 5.2.7.1 Exclusiveness (see § 5.1.1)

The PP **kiri** (きり) can be used to express the exclusive nature of a noun or statement. The following three sentence structures are used for this purpose

##### (1) < N + kiri >

The first sentence configuration makes a single noun as exclusive



1. Anata to futa-ri kiri de i-tai  
 あなたと二人きりでいたい。  
*I want to be alone with you. (I don't want to have anyone else with us)*
2. Haha wa hito-ri kiri de su-n-de-iru.  
 母は独りきりで住んでいる。  
*My mother lives all alone.*

##### (2) < Sentence + kiri + da >

The predicative usage of the postpositional phrase < noun + kiri > can also be given an exclusive nature as shown in the second configuration



3. Kono heya ni wa tsukue ga hito-tsu aru kiri da  
 この部屋には机が一つあるきりだ。  
*There is nothing else but a desk in this room. / There is only a desk in this room.*
4. Zankin wa koko ni aru kiri da  
 残金はこちらにあるきりだ。  
*This is all the money I have.*

##### (3) < N + kiri + negative predicate >

As illustrated in the third configuration below, sometimes the PP **kiri** (きり) is used in concordance with the negative predicate in order to express the meaning of *only* or



*solely* However, this use has become rare in Modern Japanese; the PP **shika** (しか) is normally used instead (see § 5.2.15.1)

5. Mou ichi-man-en **kiri** noko-t-te-i-nai  
もう一万円きり残っていない。  
*There is only 10,000 yen left*

### 5.2.7.2 Aspectives: an unchanged state

The PP **kiri** (きり) can mark an aspectual feature, i.e., a situation that *is/was* brought about through an invariable act or situation. As can be seen in the following sentence structure, the predicate of the sentence is placed before the PP **kiri** (きり) and requires the TA-form of the verb (see § 0.6.1.2)

TA	<b>kiri</b>	da
----	-------------	----

6. Musuko wa asa no roku-ji ni dekake-ta **kiri** kae-t-te-ko-nai.  
息子は朝の六時に出かけたきり帰って来ない。  
*My son left home at six o'clock in the morning. He's not come back home yet.*
7. Musume wa Itana ni i-t-ta **kiri** mukou ni su-n-de-iru  
娘はイタリアに行ったきり向こうに住んでいる。  
*My daughter has gone to live in Italy. She has been living there ever since.*
8. Jakuson-san to wa kyonen Nyūjirando de a-t-ta **kiri** da.  
ジャクソンさんとは去年ニュージーランドで会ったきりだ。  
*I last saw Mr/Ms Jackson in New Zealand last year. I haven't seen him/her since*
9. Sobo wa ne-ta (k)**kiri** da.  
祖母は寝たきりだ。/祖母は寝たつきりだ。  
*My grandmother is bedridden. (She has to be taken care of the whole time.)*

In colloquial language, we observe the phonological assimilation of the PP **kiri** (きり); a glottal stop [ʔ] is placed between the voiceless alveolar plosive [t] of the temporal auxiliary verb **ta** (た) and the voiceless velar plosive [k] of the PP **kiri** (きり) as is illustrated in Sentence 9. **ta k kiri** [taʔkiri]

### 5.2.8 koso (こそ)

The PP **koso** (こそ) is used for placing emphasis on something. Different ways of marking an emphasis using the PP **koso** (こそ) are described below

#### 5.2.8.1 Emphasis of nouns

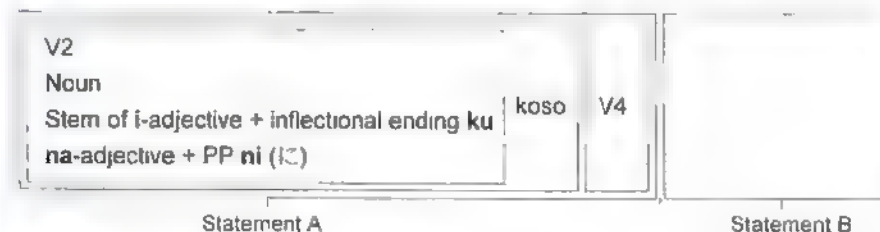
Emphasis can be placed on a noun, a postpositional phrase, or a sentence, by using the PP **koso** (こそ)

Noun/Postpositional phrase/Sentence	<b>koso</b>
-------------------------------------	-------------

1. Anata **koso** machiga-t-te-iru.  
あなたこそ間違っている。  
*You're the one who is wrong. (And not me!)*
2. Oya no tokoro ni **koso** iku beki da.  
親の所こそ行くべきだ。  
*You should go nowhere else but to your parents*
3. Ima da kara **koso** sonna koto ga i-eru.  
今だからこそそんな事が言える。  
*Now you can say that. (You couldn't have said that before.)*
4. Ai-sure ba **koso** kodomo o shikaru  
愛すればこそ子供を叱る  
*I scold my children because I love them. (And not because of any malicious reasons!)*
5. Jibun de keiken-shi-te **koso** hajimete wakaruru koto da  
自分で経験してこそ初めて分かることだ。  
*You can only understand it once you've experienced it yourself*

#### 5.2.8.2 Emphasis through contrast — 1

The PP **koso** (こそ) can be used to contrast two statements (see the diagram below). In this configuration the PP **koso** (こそ) is used in the first statement (Statement A), and the predicate of the second statement (Statement 2) is negated. This sentence structure signals the meaning *It is not B. On the contrary, it's A*. When the verb of 'Statement A' is a **suru**-compound comprising of a noun and the verb **suru** <noun + suru>, the PP **koso** (こそ) is placed in the middle of the compound: <noun + **koso** + suru> (see Sentence 8). When an *i*-adjective or a *na*-adjective is used as a predicate preceding the PP **koso** (こそ), they are first changed into their adverbial forms: <stem of *i*-adjective + inflectional ending **ku**> (see Sentence 9) and <*na*-adjective + PP **ni**> (see Sentence 10) respectively



6. Yorokobi **koso** sure, okoru wake ga nai.  
喜びこそすれ、怒るわけがない。  
*You'd think he/she would be angry about it. However, he/she'll be happy about it.*
7. Youshou-jidai wa kurushimi **koso** are, kesshite tanoshi-ku wa na-kat-ta  
幼少時代は苦しみこそあれ、決して楽しくはなかった。



*My childhood wasn't nice at all. On the contrary, it was a time of pure suffering / I did nothing but suffer the whole time.*

8. Kansha koso sure, okoru koto wa nai daro-u.

感謝こそすれ、怒ることはないだろう。

*He/She won't get angry with you at all! On the contrary, he/she will thank you for it.*

9. Nihon-go no benkyou wa yasashi-ku koso nare, muzukashi-ku wa nara-nai to omou

日本語の勉強は易しくこそなれ、難しくはならないと思う。

*I don't think that learning Japanese will get more difficult. On the contrary, I think it'll get easier.*

10. Nihon-go no benkyou wa kantan ni koso nare, muzukashi-ku wa nara-nai to omou.

日本語の勉強は簡単にこそなれ、難しくはならないと思う。

*I don't think that learning Japanese will get more difficult. On the contrary, I think it'll get easier.*

### 5.2.8.3 Emphasis through contrast — 2

The semantic role introduced here is basically the same as the one already described in the preceding Subsection 5.2.8.2, however, the syntactic structures differ. Statements A and B are combined with the conjunctive PP *ga* (が; see §§ 6.1.3.1 and 6.2.4.2) with the adversative function of presenting two opposites; the content of 'Statement A' and 'B' are therefore to be contrasted with one another. In most cases, this sentence structure is used to express a temporal contrast.



11. Ima de koso byouki bakari shi-te-iru ga, wakai toki wa supôtsu bakari shi-te-i-ta  
今でこそ病気ばかりしているが、若い時はスポーツばかりしていた。  
*I'm now sick all the time, but when I was young, I did nothing else other than sports*

12. Ima de koso o-kane ga aru ga, sensou-chuu wa taberu mono mo na-kat-ta.  
今でこそお金があるが、戦争中は食べる物もなかった。  
*Now we have got money, but during the war we didn't even have enough to buy food to eat.*

### 5.2.8.4 Idiomatic expressions: an emphasis

The following idiomatic expression is used colloquially. A noun/pronoun marked with the PP *koso* (こそ) is stressed.

13. A. Dou mo sumi-mase-n-deshi-ta  
どうすみませんでした。  
*I'm sorry!*

B: Iya, kochira koso

いや、こちらこそ。

*On the contrary, it's my fault*

### 5.2.9 kurai/gurai (くらい/ぐらい)

The PP *gurai* (ぐらい) is a phonologically changed form of the PP *kurai* (くらい); the voiceless velar plosive [k] is changed to voiced velar plosive [g]. They are interchangeable and have six semantic roles: marking of approximations (see § 5.2.9.1), comparatives (see § 5.2.9.2), minimum marking (see § 5.2.9.3), marking extreme cases (see § 5.2.9.4), superlatives (see § 5.2.9.5) and a modality role (see § 5.2.9.6)

#### 5.2.9.1 Approximations (see § 5.1.2)

As has been explained in Subsection 5.1.2, the PP *kurai/gurai* (くらい/ぐらい) can mark a noun as an approximate figure/amount/sum, etc.

- Asoko no kôhi wa i-p-pai 400-yen gurai da  
あそこのコーヒーは一杯四百円ぐら이다。  
*In that coffee shop, a cup of coffee costs about 400 yen.*
- Koko kara eki made wa aru-i-te san-ju-p-pun gurai da  
ここから駅までは歩いて三十分ぐら이다。  
*It takes about 30 minutes on foot from here to the station.*

#### 5.2.9.2 Comparatives

A noun or a sentence marked by the PP *kurai/gurai* (くらい/ぐらい) denotes the basis of a comparison

- Neko gurai no ooki-sa no nezumi o mi-ta.  
猫ぐらいの大きさの鼠を見た。  
*I saw a rat, which was as big as a cat.*
- Watashi ni demo dekiru gurai no kantan na ryouri da  
私にでも出来るぐらいの簡単な料理だ。  
*This meal is easy to cook. Even I can do it.*
- Kinou wa hiru-gohan o taberu hima ga nai gurai isogashi-kat-ta  
昨日は昼ご飯を食べる暇がないぐらい忙しかった。  
*I was so busy yesterday that I didn't even have any time for my lunch*

#### 5.2.9.3 Minimums

The smallest possible quantity can be marked with the PP *kurai* (くらい)/*gurai* (ぐらい). In this usage, the speaker can also use the PP *demo* (でも; see § 5.2.4.5). The adverb *semete* (せめて) (see Sentence 6) or the adverbial phrase *sukunaku tomo* (少なくとも), both meaning *at least*, can be incorporated into the sentence.

6. Semete ichi-nichi san-ju-p-pun **gurai** wa sanpo-shi-ta hou ga ii.  
せめて一日三十分ぐらいは散歩した方がいい。  
*You'd better take a walk for at least a half an hour every day.*
7. Kodomo to issho ni aso-n-de-ageru **gurai** no jikan wa mochi-tai.  
子供と一緒に遊んで上げるぐらいの時間は持たい。  
*I want to have at least enough time to play with my children*

#### 5.2.9.4 Extremes

Extreme situations or content of statements are expressed with the PP **kurai/gurai** (くらい/くらい). Sentence 8 below makes use of a double PP: two PPs, **kurai** (くらい) and **demo** (でも), are juxtaposed, both bearing the same function of expressing extremes. Sentence 9 also makes use of this double configuration of PPs. However, in this case the first PP **gurai** (くらい) is used to express an extreme, and the following PP **de** (で) is used as a causal case marker.

8. Ano hito wa chotto shika-t-ta **kurai** demo naki-dasu hito da.  
あの人はちょっと叱ったくらいでも泣き出す人だ。  
*Even if you scold him/her just a little bit, he/her bursts out crying*
9. Ano hito wa o-sake o honno sukoshi no-n-da **gurai** de sugu ni yo-t-te-shimau.  
あの人はお酒をほんの少し飲んだぐらいですぐに酔ってしまう。  
*Even if he/she drinks just a little bit of alcohol, she/he gets drunk quickly.*

The following conditional sentence using **nara** (なら), which is the conditional inflection form of the auxiliary verb **da** (だ), uses the PP **kurai/gurai** (くらい/くらい) to encode an extreme.

Sentence/Noun	<b>gurai</b>	<b>nara</b>	predicate
---------------	--------------	-------------	-----------

10. Kare ni ayamaru **gurai** nara, shi-n-da hou ga mashi da.  
彼に謝るくらいなら、死んだ方がましだ。  
*I would even prefer to die rather than to have to apologize to him.  
Should I have to apologize to him, I would prefer to die.*
11. Konna kantan na koto ga wakara-nai **gurai** nara, ikura setsumei-shi-temo muda da.  
こんな簡単なことが分からないくらいなら、いくら説明しても無駄だ。  
*When you don't even understand the most rudimentary elements, there is no way to explain it to you. It's a waste of time.*

#### 5.2.9.5 Superlatives

The PP **kurai/gurai** (くらい/くらい) gives a superlative meaning to a noun or sentence when it is used with a negative predicate. The PP **hodo** (ほど) can also be used in this function (see § 5.2.5.3).

Sentence/Noun	<b>kurai/gurai</b>	negative predicate
---------------	--------------------	--------------------

12. Tanaka-san **gurai** kioku-ryoku no ii hito wa i-nai.  
田中さんくらい記憶力のいい人はいない。  
*There's no one who can match Mr/Ms Tanaka, when it comes to having a good memory.*
13. Kotoshi no natsu **gurai** atsu-kat-ta natsu wa nai.  
今年の夏ぐらいつかた夏はない。  
*This year's summer was the hottest we've ever had*
14. Shiken o ukeru koto **gurai** iya na koto wa nai.  
試験を受ける事くらい嫌な事はない。  
*The thing I hate most is taking exams. (Lit.: There is no other thing I hate as much as taking exams.)*

#### 5.2.9.6 Modality: taking something for granted

Using the PP **kurai/gurai** (くらい/くらい), the speaker can express the meaning that something is quite normal and nothing special.

15. Ei-go ga hanas-eru **gurai** atarimae da.  
英語が話せるくらい当たり前だ。  
*It's nothing special that one can speak English.*
16. Kono kikai o ugokasu **gurai** kantan na koto da.  
この機械を動かすくらい簡単な事だ。  
*Driving this machine is such an easy thing.*

#### 5.2.10 made (まで)

The PP **made** (まで) has already been explained in its role as a case marking PP in Subsection 3.2.5. This subsection introduces its adverbial characteristics, of which there are three predominant roles: as an extent marker (see §§ 5.2.10.1—5.2.10.4); as an additive function (see § 5.2.10.5), and as a marker denoting the extreme nature of something (see § 5.2.10.6).

##### 5.2.10.1 Extent 1: < ... made >

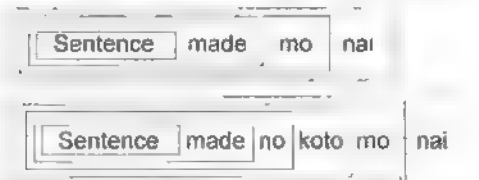
An extent, in the sense of, *so far, that much, or to this extent*, can be indicated by the PP **made** (まで).

1. Konna ni byouki ni naru **made** naze watashi ni nani mo iwa-na-kat-ta no desu ka!  
こんなに病気になるまでなぜ私に何も言わなかったのですか。  
*Why didn't you tell me anything until you got so sick!  
Why did you wait until you got so sick, before you told me anything?*
2. Ano ko wa mou otoma da kara, sonna koto **made** iu hitsuyou wa nai.  
あのこはもう大人だから、そんな事まで言う必要はない。  
*Now that he/she has grown up, you don't need to say such a thing to him/her any more. (Lit.: Now that he/she has grown up, you don't have to take care of him/her to such an extent that you say such a thing to him/her.)*

3. Anata wa naze sonna ni **made** watashi no koto ga kirai na n desu ka?  
 あなたはなぜそんなにまで私の事が嫌いなんですか。  
*Why do you hate me so much? (Lit. Why do you hate me to this extent?)*

#### 5.2.10.2 Extent 2: < ... made mo nai > / < ... made no koto mo nai >

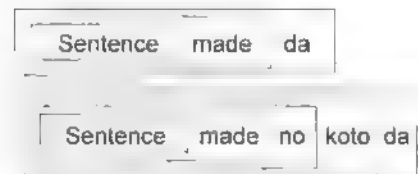
These two sentence structures with a negated predicate convey the meaning that something does not necessarily need to be done. In the following second sentence construction < ... made no koto mo nai >, the PP **demo** (でも: see § 5.2.4.1) can replace the PP **mo** (も: see § 5.2.11.6), as both have the same function of designating an extreme: < ... made no koto demo nai >.



4. Yamada-san wa ima byouki de taihen da sou da ga, wazawaza kanbyou ni iku **made** (no koto) mo nai sou da.  
 山田さんは今病気で大変だそうだが、わざわざ看病に行くまで(の事)もないそうだ。  
*I've heard that Mr/Ms Yamada is very sick now, but I was also told that he/she wasn't that sick that we would have to visit him/her to help him/her.*
5. Sonna koto wa kantan da kara, shiraberu **made** mo nai to omou.  
 そんな事は簡単だから、調べるまでもないと思う。  
*Because it's so easy, I don't think it's necessary to check it*

#### 5.2.10.3 Extent 3: < ... made da > or < ... made no koto da >

Meanings, such as, *simply, merely, only, just*, etc. can be expressed using the following sentence structures



6. Machigai o okashi-ta toki wa, ayamaru **made** da  
 間違いを犯した時は、謝るまでだ。  
*All you need to do is simply apologize when you make a mistake*
7. Shippai-shi-ta toki wa, mou ichi-do yari-naosu **made** no koto da  
 失敗した時は、もう一度やり直すまでの事だ。  
*If at first you don't succeed, you simply have to try it again.*
8. Ima no shigoto ga ki ni ira-nai no nara, yameru **made** da  
 今の仕事が気に入らないのなら、辞めるまでだ。

*If you don't like your present job, all you need to do is quit*

#### 5.2.10.4 Extent 4: < V1 + nai + made mo ... >

By using the sentence structure below, the speaker can indicate the minimal nature of something. Sentence A (see the diagram below), which is the introductory part of the whole statement, is the negation of something in its entirety. This is followed by a main clause (Sentence B), which states something about a selection of certain things out of the entirety (indicated in the first introductory statement).



9. Genkou o zenbu to wa iwa-nai **made** mo, saisho no bubun dake demo yo-n-de-mi-te-kudasai  
 原稿を全部とは言わないまでも、最初の部分だけでも読んでみてください。  
*I wouldn't say that you have to read the whole manuscript, but I would like to ask you to read at least the first part of it.*
10. Zenbu to wa ika-nai **made** mo, sukoshi wa watashi no iu koto ga rikai-deki-masu ka?  
 全部とはいかないまでも、少しは私の言う事が理解できますか。  
*I wouldn't expect you to understand everything I'm saying, but do you understand at least part of it?*

#### 5.2.10.5 Additions

An additional nuance, namely *not only ... but also ...*, can be expressed with the PP **made** (まで). The PP **sae** (さえ) can also be used for this purpose (see § 5.2.14.2)

11. Kodomo ga byouki no tokoro ni, watashi **made** ga kaze o hi-i-te-shima-t-ta.  
 子供が病気のところに、私までが風邪を引いてしまった。  
*My child was sick. (That was hard enough) But then I got sick too./Not only did my child fall ill, but I did as well.*
12. Kinou wa sutsu-kêsu o nakushi-te-shima-t-ta ga, kyou wa suri ni saifu **made** nusu-ma-re-te-shimai, tonda me ni a-t-ta  
 昨日はスーツケースをなくしてしまったが、今日はさらに財布まで盗まれてしまい、とんだ目に遭った。  
*Yesterday, I lost my suitcase. (That really upset me.) And today, I had my wallet stolen by a pickpocket. What bad luck I've had!*

#### 5.2.10.6 Extremes

An extreme nature of something can be marked with the PP **made** (まで). The PP **made** (まで) is placed after nouns or postpositional phrases that possess this extreme nature

13. Kinou wa totemo samu-kat-ta ga, kuruma no doa **made** koo-t-te-i-ta.  
 昨日はとても寒かったが、車のドアまで凍っていた。



*It was very cold yesterday. Even my car door was frozen.*

14. Yume ni **made** mi-ta anata ni a-e-te totemo shiawase da.  
夢にまで見たあなたに会えてとても幸せだ。  
*I'm so happy to see you. I even dreamed about you!*

#### 5.2.10.7 Idiomatic expressions

There are some idiomatic expressions using the PP **made** (まで) in its function as an extent marker. Expressions of this kind are often used in letters in order to express the fact that the writer of the letter aims to convey a specific brief message, such as appreciation, thanks, a short report on something etc. Therefore, the content of such letters is usually very short and not detailed

15. Migi<sup>18</sup> o-henji **made**.  
右お返事まで。  
*I just wanted to give you a brief answer. (Lit.: This won't be enough as an answer, but I just wanted to give you my abbreviated answer [to your question] which is written on the right hand side of this sentence.)*
16. Toriae-zu, on-rei **made**  
取り敢えず、御礼まで。  
*I would like to express my appreciation. (Lit.: This isn't enough to express you my gratitude, but I just wanted to let you know that I thank you)*

#### 5.2.11 mo (も)

The semantic roles of the PP **mo** (も) are multifarious owing to the fact that it belongs to three different categories of Japanese PPs: case marking (see § 3.4.1), copulative (see § 4.2.3) and adverbial PPs with modality components (see § 5.2.11). This section discusses two of these functions excluding its roles as a copulative PP so that the entire properties of the PP **mo** (も) are summarized in one subsection.

##### 5.2.11.1 Additions: ... too (see §§ 3.3 and 3.4.1)

The English meaning of *too*, in the sense of *as well*, *also*, *in addition to*, is expressed by the PP **mo** (も). It is placed after nouns or postpositional phrases to modify them adverbially

Noun/Postpositional phrase	mo
----------------------------	----

1. Watashi **mo** Nihon-go o hanasu.  
私も日本語を話す。  
*I also speak Japanese. (Also modifies I.)*

<sup>18</sup> Japanese characters can be written from the top to the bottom and the lines from the right to the left. Therefore, Sentence 15 designates that the answer of the writer is written on the right hand side (**migi** / 右) of the sentence **Migi o-henji made**

2. Watashi wa Nihon-go **mo** hanasu.  
私は日本語も話す。  
*I also speak Japanese. (Also modifies Japanese.)*
3. Otouto wa rainen Ōsutorana ni **mo** iku.  
弟は来年オーストラリアにも行く。  
*Next year my (younger) brother is also going to Australia. (Also modifies to Australia.)*

##### 5.2.11.2 Correlative coordination: both ... (also see § 4.2.3.1)

When two nouns/postpositional phrases are modified by the PP **mo** (も) respectively, it expresses the meaning of *both A and B*.

Noun/Postpositional phrase	mo	Noun/Postpositional phrase	mo
----------------------------	----	----------------------------	----

4. Iki **mo** kaeri **mo** takushī ni shi-ta.  
行きも帰りもタクシーにした。  
*I took a taxi both on the way to my destination and on the way back home*
5. Sukottorando ni **mo** Wēruzu ni **mo** i-t-ta koto ga aru.  
スコットランドにもウェールズにも行ったことがある。  
*I've been to both Scotland and Wales.*
6. Anata **mo** watashi **mo** Nihon-go o benkyou-shi-te-iru.  
あなたも私も日本語を勉強している。  
*You and I are both learning Japanese.*

##### 5.2.11.3 Total affirmation

A holistic nature of things can be expressed with the following sentence structure

Interrogative pronoun/Adverb	mo	affirmative predicate
------------------------------	----	-----------------------

7. Tomu wa itsu **mo** okure-te jugyou ni kuru.  
トムはいつも遅れて授業に来る。  
*Tom always comes late to the lecture/class.*
8. Doko **mo** hito de ippai da-t-ta.  
どこも人で一杯だった。  
*There were people all over the place*
9. Dare **mo** ga shi-t-te-iru koto da.  
誰もが知っている事だ。  
*That's something everybody knows. / Everybody knows that.*

##### 5.2.11.4 Total negation (see §§ 5.2.3.4 and 5.2.18.2)

In the same manner as in Subsection 5.2.11.3 above, total negation can be expressed in concordance with a negated predicate

Interrogative pronoun Interrogative adverb	mo	negative predicate
---	----	--------------------

10. Heya ni wa dare mo ina-kat-ta  
部屋には誰もいなかった。  
*Nobody was in the room*
11. Anata to wa nan no kankai mo nai.  
あなたとは何の関係もない。  
*This has nothing to do with you.*
12. Reizouko no naka ni wa nani mo hai-t-te-i-nai  
冷蔵庫の中には何も入っていない。  
*There is nothing in the refrigerator.*

#### 5.2.11.5 Extremes 1: even ... — < 1 + counter unit + mo + predicate in the negation >

The noun or the counter < ichi + counter unit > can be modified by the PP mo (も) in conjunction with the negative predicate. Its semantic roles are twofold: total negation and the expression of an extreme nature of things. Thus, depending upon the situation, sentient features, such as astonishment, anger, or other emotions, can be also expressed. The PP tote (とて: see § 5.2.18 1) can also be used for this purpose.

ichi + counter unit Noun	mo	negative predicate
-----------------------------	----	--------------------

13. Machi de kodomo o hito-ni mo mikake-na-kat-ta  
町で子供を一人も見かけなかった。  
*I didn't see a single child in the town. (It's strange.)*
14. Shékusupia no hon o i-s-satu mo yo-n-da koto ga nai.  
シェークスピアの本を一冊も読んだことがない。  
*I've not even read a single book by Shakespeare.*
15. Tonari no hito wa aisatsu mo shi-nai.  
隣の人は挨拶もしない。  
*Our neighbour doesn't even greet me (How can he/she be like that?)*

#### 5.2.11.6 Extremes 2: even ... — < ... mo + predicate in the affirmative >

The same semantic roles mentioned in Subsection 5.2.11.5 above can also be expressed in concordance with an affirmative predicate, in this case, a noun/noun equivalent (see Sentences 16 and 18) or a postpositional phrase (see Sentence 17) is placed in front of the PP mo (も).

Noun/Postpositional phrase	mo	affirmative predicate
----------------------------	----	-----------------------

16. Kinou no kaigi wa roku-ji-kan mo tsuzu-i-ta  
昨日の会議は六時間も続いた。  
*Yesterday's conference lasted six hours! (I was fed up!)*
17. Ano hito wa kondo wa Hokkyoku ni made mo iku.  
あの人は今度は北極にまでも行く。  
*Next time he/she is travelling as far as the North Pole! (I can't believe it!)*
18. Yuki ga ichi-ya no uchi ni ni-mētoru mo tsumo-t-ta  
雪が一夜のうちに二メートルも積もった。  
*We had two meters of snow overnight! (It's incredible!)*

#### 5.2.11.7 Estimations; assumptions

Using the PP mo (も), the speaker can express an estimation of quantity or an assumption.

19. Ano biru wa hyaku mētoru mo aro-u ka, tonikaku takai.  
あのビルは百メートルもあろうか、とにかく高い。  
*The building over there is approximately hundred meters high. It is really tall*
20. San-ju-p-pun mo shi-te kara, tomo-dachi ga kissaten ni ya-t-te-ki-ta  
三十分もしてから、友達が喫茶店にやってきた。  
*After about half an hour, my friend came to the coffee shop.*
21. Kono riron wa machiga-t-te-iru to mo kangae-rareru  
この理論は間違っているとも考えられる。  
*We can perhaps say that this theory is wrong.*

#### 5.2.11.8 Restrictives: maximal limits (cf §§ 6.2.9.2 and 6.2.26 2)

The PP mo (も) can mark a maximal quantity. In this case, the quantity indicating nouns (see Sentences 22 and 23), or adverbial form of i-adjective in conjunction with the PP te (て), namely < stem of i-adj. + ku + te >, as is shown in Sentence 24, are marked with the PP mo (も). The PP te (て) is sometimes omitted (see Sentence 25). In the latter case, the PP tomo (とも: see § 6.2.26 2), which also has the same restrictive function, is frequently used in Modern Japanese

< Noun (quantity) > or < Stem of i-adj. + ku + te >	mo
---	----

22. Yoshiko ni wa ichi-man-en mo agere ba ii.  
良子には一万円もあげればいい。  
*If you want to give some money to Yoshiko, 10,000 yen would be sufficient.*
23. Kono shigoto wa mi-k-ka mo are ba juubun da  
この仕事は三日もあれば十分だ。  
*This work shouldn't take more than a maximum of three days to complete. / I need a maximum of three days to finish this work.*
24. Kono hon wa taka-ku-te mo ni-hyaku yūro shi-nai daro-u.

この本は高くても二百ユーロしないだろう。  
*This book costs at most 200 euros*

25. Sukunaku **mo** kari-ta o-kane dake wa ano hito ni kaesa-na-kere-ba nara-nai.  
 少なくとも借りたお金だけはあの人に返さなければならない。  
*At the very least I have to give him/her back the money I borrowed.*

#### 5.2.11.9 Modality

Emotions such as sadness, disappointment, anger, sentimental feelings, astonishment and so forth, can be indicated by using the PP **mo** (も). The situation determines, what kind of emotions the speaker is implicating in the statement he/she is making/has made. This subsection introduces five different sentence constructions using the PP **mo** (も) in this function. The first syntactic structure is illustrated in the framework shown in phrase structure (1) below

##### (1) < Stem of i-adjective + ku **mo** ... >

Stem of i-adjective + ku	<b>mo</b>
--------------------------	-----------

26. Oshiku **mo** shiai ni yabure-ta.  
 借しくも試合に敗れた。  
*Unfortunately, we've lost the game by only a few points*
27. Un-waruku **mo**, ka-t-ta bakari no tokei o nakushi-te-shima-t-ta.  
 運悪くも、買ったばかりの時計をなくしてしまった。  
*Unfortunately, I lost my watch, which I'd only just recently bought.*

##### (2) < **amari** ni **mo** ... >

The next syntactic structure, illustrated in phrase structure (2) below, consists of the adverb **amari** (余り), the PP **ni** (に) and the PP **mo** (も). It is used to express an extreme nature of something, and thus synchronously signalling associated emotions of the speaker.

<b>amari</b>	<b>ni</b>	<b>mo</b>
--------------	-----------	-----------

28. Kinou no koutsuu-jiko de oya o ushina-t-ta kodomo ga **amari** ni **mo** kawai-sou da.  
 昨日の交通事故で親を失った子供が余りにも可哀想だ。  
*I feel very sorry for the child who lost his/her parents in a car accident yesterday.*
29. **Amari** ni **mo** o-naka ga su-i-te-i-ta node, tomodachi no sandotchi o zenbu tabe-te-shima-t-ta  
 余りにもお腹が空いていたので、友達の手サンドイッチを全部食べてしまった。  
*I was so hungry that I also ate all my friend's sandwiches.*

The following sentence structures (3), (4) and (5) are also used to express an extreme nature of something

##### (3) < V3 **mo** + predicate >

V3	<b>mo</b>	predicate
----	-----------	-----------

30. Jijitsu ni hansuru **mo** hanahadashii.  
 事実にも反するも甚だしい。  
*What nonsense! That's a ridiculous exaggeration. (Lit.: This is absolutely contradictory to the facts!)*

##### (4) < V3 ni **mo** + predicate >

V3	ni	<b>mo</b>	predicate
----	----	-----------	-----------

31. Hito o bujoku-suru ni **mo** gendo ga aru.  
 人を侮辱するにも限度がある。  
*There is a limit on how far you can insult me! (You've gone too far!)*

##### (5) < Noun + **mo** >

Noun	<b>mo</b>
------	-----------

32. Aki **mo** fukama-t-te-ki-ta  
 秋も深まってきた。  
*It's really becoming autumn! / Autumn is finally here! (How nice/depressing it is!)*

#### 5.2.11.10 Emphasis

There are some sentence constructions that use the PP **mo** (も) to portray emphatic expressions. Three such sentence formations are shown in this subsection.

##### (1) < Noun 1 + **mo** + Noun 1 >

The sentence structure below illustrates the first construction of this type; in this syntactic unit a single noun (Noun 1) is repeated for the purpose of emphasis.

Noun 1	<b>mo</b>	Noun 1
--------	-----------	--------

33. Nihon no kita **mo** kita Hokkaidou no Wakkanai made i-t-te-ki-ta.  
 日本の北も北、北海道の稚内まで行ってきた。  
*I went as far as the northern most part of Japan: Wakkanai in Hokkaidō.*
34. Kodomo to honki de kenka-suru nante, anata **mo** anata da  
 子供と本気で喧嘩するなんて、あなたもあなただ。  
*What! You fought seriously with (your) children? How could you do that!*

##### (2) < Noun 1 + **mo** + Noun 2 >

The syntactic unit has two different nouns ('Noun 1' and 'Noun 2'), and both of them are



emphasized 'Noun 2' is, however, a further specification of 'Noun 1' and is more strongly stressed than 'Noun 1'.



35. Watashi wa Amerika **mo** Nyūyōku no umare da

私はアメリカもニューヨークの生まれだ。

(You might be surprised, but) I was born in Amerika. And not only that, in New York!

(3) < V2 **mo** ... TARI >

This sentence structure is used to emphasize motions, acts, or actions. The emphasis is expressed by the fact that the motion/act/action is mentioned twice in the sentence structure: first in the V2-form (see § 0.6.1.1) and then in the TARI-form (see § 0.6.1.2) of the verb. In contemporary usage, this expression is becoming very seldom. In its stead, the sentence construction < V2 ni V2 > is often used (see Sentence 37).



36. Kinou wa kaki **mo** kai tan, san-byaku-pēji mo ronbun o ka-i-ta

昨日は書きも書いたり、二百ページも論文を書いた。

I wrote a lot for my thesis yesterday. Indeed, three hundred pages!

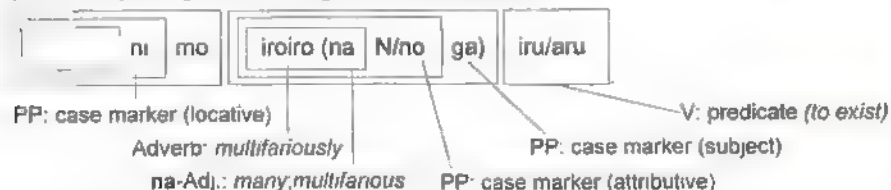
37. Cf. Kinou wa kaki **mo** kaki, san-byaku-pēji mo ronbun o ka-i-ta

昨日は書きも書き、三百ページも論文を書いた。

I wrote a lot for my thesis yesterday. Indeed, three hundred pages!

5.2.11.11 Indications of variety

The speaker can express a meaning that there are many different types of things/persons by using the following sentence structure.



38. Seiji-ka ni **mo** iroiro na hito ga iru./Seiji-ka ni **mo** iroiro na no ga iru

政治家にもいろいろな人がいる。/政治家にもいろいろなのがいる。

There are (in fact) many different kinds of politicians.

39. Daigaku ni **mo** totemo ii no yara totemo warui no yara iroiro aru.

大学にもとてもいいのやるととても悪いのや、いろいろある。

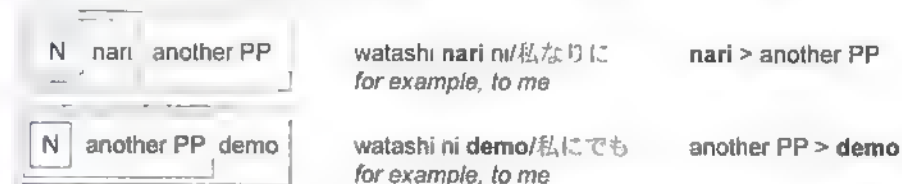
There are (in fact) many different kinds of universities, ranging from very good ones to very bad ones.

5.2.12 nari (なり)

The PP **nari** (なり) belongs to three different categories of PPs: copulative (see § 4.2.4), adverbial (see § 5.2.12) and conjunctive PPs (see § 6.2.15). This subsection describes its adverbial features.

5.2.12.1 Indications of choice

Nouns, postpositional phrases or sentences can be cited as examples by marking them with the PP **nari** (なり). The implication is that there might be a better choice than the ones marked by the PP **nari** (なり). The PP **demo** (でも, see § 5.2.4.3) has the same function, but its syntactic structure is, from the viewpoint of the hierarchy of PPs, different. This is illustrated below.



1. Moshi o-kane ga hitsuyou nara, watashi **nari** ni i-t-te-kudasai

もしお金が必要なら私なりに言ってください。

Should you need some money, by all means let me know about it. (Lit.: Should you need some money, please let it be known to someone, for example, me.)

2. Kono mondai ni tsuite wa oya **nari** ni soudan-shi-you.

この問題については親なりに相談しよう。

I'm going to consult my parents about this problem. (Lit.: I'm going to consult someone about this problem, maybe, my parents.)

5.2.12.2 Minimums

The meaning of *only* can be expressed by using the PP **nari** (なり). The case marker PP **to** (と, see § 3.2.9.6), indicating a quantity, is also often used after the PP **nari** (なり), but its use is optional.

3. Mai-nichi juu-go-fun **nari** to Nihon-go no benkyou o suru dake demo, Nihon-go ga joutatsu-suru daro-u

毎日十五分なりと日本語の勉強をするだけでも日本語が上達するだろう。

You will make progress learning Japanese even if you only work at it for fifteen minutes a day. / By learning Japanese for simply fifteen minutes a day, you can probably make progress.

5.2.12.3 Total affirmation

In conjunction with interrogative pronouns or adverbs, the speaker can express total affirmation by using the PP **nari** (なり). The PP **demo** (でも) is also used for this purpose (see § 5.2.4.4). Either the PP **to** (と, see § 3.2.9.4) or the PP **tomo** (とも; § 6.2.26.1) is attached to the **nari**-entry; the PP **to** (と) is, however, the more frequently used PP.

Interrogative pronoun/adverb	nari	to/tomo
------------------------------	------	---------

4. Doko nari to o-tomo itashi-masu  
どこなりとお供いたします。  
*Wherever you go, I will go with you.*
5. Itsu nari to o-tachi-yori-kudasai  
いつなりとお立ち寄り下さい。  
*Please drop in whenever you like.*
6. Nan nari to ki-i-te-kudasai  
何なりと聞いて下さい。  
*Don't hesitate to ask, if you have any questions. (Lit.: Please ask me whatever you want to know.)*

#### 5.2.12.4 Idiosyncrasy

The meaning of *own*, in a sense that something is peculiar or individual to something/somebody, can be expressed with the PP **nari** (なり).

7. Watashi ni wa watashi nari no kangae ga aru.  
私には私なりの考えがある。  
*I have my own ideas about it.*
8. Tanaka-san nari no yari-kata de kono shigoto o sure ba ii.  
田中さんなりのやり方でこの仕事をすればいい。  
*Mr/Ms Tanaka should do this work in his/her own way*  
*Mr/Ms Tanaka should do this work in whatever way he/she thinks is appropriate*
9. Kono hon ni wa kono hon nari no yosa ga aru.  
この本にはこの本なりの良さがある。  
*This book has its own positive qualities*

#### 5.2.13 nomi (のみ)

The PP **nomi** (のみ) marks a restriction. Its use is very formal (see § 5.1.1).

##### 5.2.13.1 Exclusiveness

The meaning of *only* can be expressed by marking a noun/postpositional phrase or a sentence with the PP **nomi** (のみ).

1. Ningen wa pan nomi ni yo-t-te iki-te-iru no de wa nai.  
人間はパンのみによって生きているのではない。  
*Man cannot live on bread alone*
2. Haru wa na nomi de, kaze wa mada tsumetai  
春は名のみで、風はまだ冷たい。

*Spring is just a name. The wind is still cold. (The calendar says it's spring but we've still got winter weather)*

3. Ashita wa mise wa gozen-chuu nomi a-i-te-iru.  
明日は店は午前中のみ開いている。  
*Tomorrow shops are only open in the morning*
4. Ato wa henji o matsu nomi da.  
あとは返事を待つのみだ。  
*We'll just have to wait for an answer. (We can't do anything at the moment.)*

#### 5.2.14 sae (さえ)

The PP **sae** (さえ) has three different semantic roles: marking extremes (see § 5.2.14.1), additions (see § 5.2.14.2) and minimal conditions (see § 5.2.14.3). Syntactically speaking, nouns, postpositional phrases or sentences can be marked with the PP **sae** (さえ)

##### 5.2.14.1 Extremes (see §§ 5.1.3 and 5.2.3.1)

The PP **sae** (さえ) calls attention to the extreme nature of something. When the syntactic subject or object of the sentence is to be marked with the PP **sae** (さえ), the subject marker PP **ga** (が) or the object marker PP **o** (を) is omitted respectively (see Sentences 1 and 2 below). Also, in the case of compound verbs consisting of a noun and the verb **suru** <N + suru>, the PP **sae** (さえ) can be placed in the middle of the constituents of the composition (N + sae + suru). This has been illustrated in Sentence 3 below. The PPs **datte** (だって: see § 5.2.3.1), **demo** (でも: see § 5.2.4.1), **mo** (も: see §§ 5.2.11.5 and 5.2.11.6), **sura** (すら: see § 5.2.17.1) and **tote** (とて: see § 5.2.18.1) share this functionality and are interchangeable.

1. Kono koto wa senmon-ka sae shira-na-kat-ta.  
この事は専門家さえ知らなかった。  
*Not even experts knew this fact*
2. Kono koto sae senmon-ka wa shira-na-kat-ta.  
この事さえ専門家は知らなかった。  
*The expert knew not even this fact.*
3. Isogashi-ku te shokuji sae suru jikan ga na-kat-ta.  
忙しくて食事さえする時間がなかった。  
*I was so busy that I didn't even have time to eat.*

##### 5.2.14.2 Additions

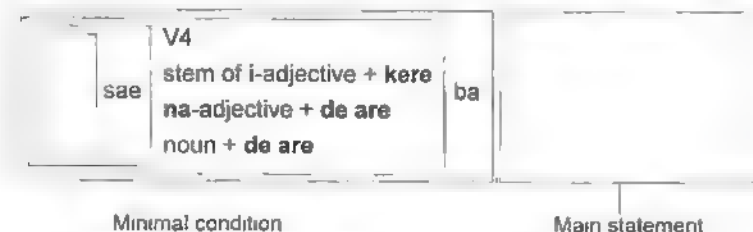
The following sentence structure can be used to convey the meaning of *not only A but also B*. The speaker can also use the PP **made** (まで) for this purpose (see § 5.2.10.5)

A	bakari	de wa	naku	B	sae	predicate
---	--------	-------	------	---	-----	-----------

4. Ame bakari de wa naku, kaze sae fuki-hajime-ta.  
雨ばかりではなく、風さえ吹き始めた。  
*It's not only raining, but also the wind has started to blow.*
5. Kodomo bakari de wa na-ku, sono haha-oya sae naki-hajime-ta.  
子供ばかりではなく、その母親さえ泣き始めた。  
*Not only has the child begun to cry, but also his/her mother has started to cry.*

### 5.2.14.3 Minimal conditions

The following sentence structure expresses a minimal condition of something



6. Nihon-go wa mai-nichi benkyou sae sure ba jouzu ni naru.  
日本語は毎日勉強さえすれば上手になる。  
*You can make progress in Japanese, simply by learning every day*
7. Hoteru wa taka-ku sae na-kere ba, dore demo ii  
ホテルは高くさえなければ、どれでもいい。  
*Any hotel will do as long as it's not expensive*
8. O-kane sae are ba, nan demo dekiru to iu mono de wa nai  
お金さえあれば、何でも出来るというものではない。  
*It isn't always the case that you can do everything with money.*

### 5.2.15 shika (しか) (see also § 5.1.1)

The exclusiveness of things/states can be marked with the PP **shika** (しか). Syntactically, the PP **shika** (しか) marks a noun, a postpositional phrase or a sentence. English lexical equivalents would be adverbs like *only*, *simply*, *merely* or *exclusively*. Note that the PP **shika** (しか) always requires a negated predicate, and yet, the statement made is not a negative one as can be seen in the English translations. Exclusiveness can also be expressed by the PP **dake** (だけ: § 5.2.2.2). The difference lies in the fact that the PP **dake** (だけ) can take both the affirmative and the negative predicate depending upon the statement the speaker wants to make, whereas the PP **shika** (しか) only allows the negated predicate.

#### 5.2.15.1 Exclusiveness (see §§ 5.2.2.2 and 5.2.7.1)

The meaning of *only/solely/exclusively* is expressed here.

N	shika	negated predicate
---	-------	-------------------

1. Juu-doru shika mo-t-te-i-nai.  
十ドルしか持っていない。  
*I only have ten dollars.*
- Cf. Juu-doru dake mo-t-te-iru.  
十ドルだけ持っている。  
*I only have ten dollars*
2. Watashi wa Furansu-go to Ei-go shika hanasa-nai.  
私はフランス語と英語しか話さない。  
*I only speak French and English*
3. Watashi shika Furansu-go to Ei-go o hanasa-nai.  
私しかフランス語と英語を話さない。  
*Only I speak French and English. / I'm the only one who can speak French and English*
4. Kono koto wa shachou ni shika hanashi-te-i-nai.  
この事は社長にしか話していない。  
*I informed only the president of this (and nobody else)*
5. Kore wa tan-naru suisoku de shika nai.  
これは単なる推測でしかない。  
*This is merely an assumption (and nothing more).*
6. Shiken ni ukaru ni wa isshou-kenmei benkyou-suru shika nai.  
試験に受かるには一生懸命勉強するしかない。  
*If you want to pass the exam, you only have to learn hard. (There is no other way.)*

### 5.2.16 shimo (しも)

The PP **shimo** (しも) has the following three functions, expressing total affirmation, negating of a categorical negation, or marking extremes

#### 5.2.16.1 Total affirmation

The PP **shimo** (しも) can be employed in concordance with interrogatives. It can be replaced by the PPs **datte** (だって: § 5.2.3.3) or **demo** (でも: § 5.2.4.4) of the same function. Whereas **datte** (だって) is colloquial and **demo** (でも) has a neutral nuance, **shimo** (しも) conveys a more formal nuance and is also used in idiomatic expressions.

Interrogative pronoun	shimo	predicate
-----------------------	-------	-----------

1. Dare shimo heiwa o nagau  
誰も平和を願う。  
*Everybody wants peace.*

#### 5.2.16.2 Negation of categorical negations

The meaning *not necessarily* is expressed by the PP **shimo** (しも). This usage is idiomatic as is shown in example sentences below: **Kanarazu shimo** (必ずしも *not necessarily*) and **naki ni shimo arazu** (無きにしもあらず *there might be ...; it may be*)



possible that ...)

2. Terebi wa kanarazu **shimo** warui to wa i-e-nai.  
テレビは必ずしも悪いとは言えない  
*TV is not necessarily bad. (Lit.: You can not necessarily say that TV is all bad.)*
3. Kou iu kôsu wa naki ni **shimo** ara-zu  
こういうケースは無きにしもあらず。  
*We can not absolutely deny that there is no such case. / A case of this kind might exist.*

### 5.1.16.3 Extremes (see §§ 5.1.3 and 5.2.3.1)

The extreme properties of things/matter can be marked with the PP **shimo** (しも).

4. Ori **shimo** ame ga tsuyoku furi-hajime-ta  
折しも雨が強く降り始めた。  
*Just in that moment, it began to pour down*
5. Kono teian **shimo** mitome-rare-na-kat-ta  
この提案しも認められなかった。  
*Even this proposal was rejected.*

### 5.2.17 sura (すら)

The PP **sura** (すら) has only one semantic role: it can be used to express extremes.

#### 5.2.17.1 Extremes (see §§ 5.1.3 and 5.2.3.1)

The PPs **sae** (さえ: see § 5.2.14.1), **demo** (でも: see § 5.2.4.1) and **tote** (とて: § 5.2.18.1) can also be used for this purpose. The PP **tote** (とて: see § 5.2.18.1) is, however, very formal. The PP **sura** (すら) is attached to nouns or postpositional phrases as illustrated below:

N sura or [N PP] sura

1. Oya ni **sura** konna koto wa hanas-e-nai.  
親にすらこんな事は話せない。  
*I can't even tell it to my parents.*
2. Konna koto wa chiisai kodomo **sura** shi-t-te-iru  
こんなことは小さい子供すら知っている。  
*Even small children know that*
3. Kono koto wa watashi de **sura** shira-na-kat-ta  
このことは私ですら知らなかった。  
*Even I didn't know that.*

### 5.2.18 tote (とて)

The PP **tote** (とて) belongs to two distinct categories of Japanese PPs: adverbial and conjunctive PPs (see § 6.2.27). This subsection scrutinizes its three different adverbial roles: marking extremes, total negation and raising topics, when an example is being cited

#### 5.2.18.1 Extremes (see §§ 5.1.3, 5.2.3.1 and 5.2.11.5)

The meaning of even emphasizing a statement can be expressed using the PP **tote** (とて).

N tote

1. Sonna koto wa Yamada-san **tote** wa-nai da-ro-u  
そんな事は山田さんと言わないだろう。  
*Even Mr/Ms Yamada wouldn't say such a thing.*
2. Kodomo **tote** hanzai wa yurusa-reru hazu ga nai.  
子供とて犯罪は許されるはずがない  
*Not even children will be forgiven if they commit a crime*
3. Ano hito ni wa ninjou **tote** nai.  
あの人には人情とてない。  
*He/She doesn't possess a single human feeling*

#### 5.2.18.2 Total negation (see §§ 5.2.3.4 and 5.2.11.4)

In conjunction with interrogatives and negated predicates, a total negation of something can be expressed with the PP **tote** (とて)

Interrogative pronoun tote

4. Dare **tote** konna ookina jishin ga okoro-u to wa omoi mo shi-na-kat-ta.  
誰とてこんな大きな地震が起ろうとは思いませんでした。  
*Not even a single person had thought/dreamt that such a big earthquake would occur / Nobody had thought such a big earthquake would occur.*

#### 5.2.18.3 Topic raising + Citing an example

The PP **tote** (とて) can function as a topic marker. In this case, it indicates, at the same time, that the topic mentioned is also an example for the statement the speaker is making/has made. Therefore, by using this PP, a nuance of *such things as...* is raised. It could also have been expressed using ... **to iu mono wa** (～というものは) meaning *a thing such as...* (see Sentence 6)

5. Kono ko wa sensou-koji de, oya no aiyou **tote** toku ni shira-nai  
この子は戦争孤児で親の愛情とて特に知らない。  
*He/She is an orphan due to the war. Therefore, he/she doesn't know such a thing*

as love of parents.

6. Kono ko wa sensou-koji de, oya no aijou to iu mono wa toku ni shira-nai.  
この子は戦争孤児で親の愛情というものは特に知らない。  
He/She is an orphan due to the war. Therefore, he/she doesn't know such a thing as love of parents.

### 5.2.19 yara (やら)

The basic semantic role of the adverbial PP **yara** (やら) is to encode a sense of insecurity. This subsection introduces three syntactically different sentence structures using the PP **yara** (やら). The coordinating function of the PP **yara** (やら) is explained under the copulative PPs in Chapter 4 (see § 4.2.12).

#### 5.2.19.1 Assumptions: < interrogative + yara >

When the speaker is not sure about something, this can be marked with the PP **yara** (やら) using the following sentence construction:

Interrogative pronoun	yara
Interrogative adverb	

1. Nani **yara** himitsu-kaigi o hira-i-te-iru rashii.  
何やら秘密会議を開いているらしい。  
It looks like they are holding a secret conference.
2. Jon wa dou **yara** michi o machigae-ta rashi-ku, mada touchaku-shi-te-i-nai.  
ジョンはどうやら道を間違えたらしく、まだ到着していない。  
It's highly probable that John went the wrong way. He hasn't arrived here yet
3. Dou **yara** kyou wa hisashi-buri ni hare-sou da  
どうやら今日は久しぶりに晴れそうだ。  
It looks like it's going to be a fine day today. We haven't had such a fine day for such a long time.

#### 5.2.19.2 Uncertain statements

The following structure is used to express an uncertain statement:

Statement	to	yara
-----------	----	------

The PP **yara** (やら) is placed after the citation marker PP **to** (と; see § 3.2.9.4) in order to indicate that the speaker is not sure about the content of his/her statement. Syntactically speaking, in Sentences 5 and 6 below, the PP **yara** (やら) is situated between two PPs: the PPs **to** (と) and **no** (の) — < ... to yara no ... >, and also the PPs **to** (と) and **ni** (に) — < ... to yara ni ... >, respectively. In the same manner, the PP **yara**

(やら) can also be placed in the middle of a bound structure as shown in Sentence 4; < A to iu B (B which is called A) > is actually a bound construction unit, but the PP **yara** (やら) can be placed between the PP **to** (と) and the verb **i-u** (言う [ju:]); < A to yara iu B >

4. Washinton-san to **yara** iu hito kara denwa ga a-t-ta  
ワシントンさんとやらいう人から電話があった。  
There was a telephone call from a certain Mr/Ms Washington.
5. Shimada-san ga bungaku-shou o jushou-shi-ta to **yara** no hanashi o ki-i-ta.  
島田さんが文学賞を受賞したとやらの話を聞いた。  
I heard that Mr/Ms Shimada received a prize for literature. (I'm not sure if it's true.)
6. Moriyama-san wa Toukyou no Jinba-san to **yara** ni bessou o Tate-ta sou da.  
守山さんは東京の陣馬山とやらに別荘を建てたそうだ。  
According to the information I've obtained, Mr/Ms Moriyama had built a weekend house in a place called Jinba-san in Tokyo. (I'm not sure if Jinba-san is the correct name of this place)
7. Tomodachi to toranpu o shi-nagara densha ni no-t-te-i-tara, itsu no ma ni **yara** Yokohama ni tsu-i-te-shima-t-ta.  
友達とトランプをしながら電車に乗っていたら、いつの間にやら横浜に着いてしまった。  
I was playing card with my friend(s) in the train. All of a sudden I noticed that I was already in Yokohama (Lit. I didn't know in which moment it was, but I was in Yokohama.)

#### 5.2.19.3 Indecisive attitudes

The PP **yara** (やら), in this sentence structure, has a dual function. On the one hand, it conveys a nuance of insecurity about the content of the statements, which are expressed in Sentences A and B (see the diagram below). On the other hand, it marks a listing of different statements, A and B. Therefore in this role the PP **yara** (やら) fulfils both the adverbial and copulative functions

Sentence A	no	yara	Sentence B	no	yara
------------	----	------	------------	----	------

8. Ashita konsato ni iku no **yara** ika-nai no **yara**, Tanaka-san wa hakkiri-shi-nai  
明日コンサートに行くのやら行かないのやら、田中さんははっきりしない。  
Mr/Ms Tanaka hasn't said clearly whether he/she wants to go to the concert or not

### 5.2.20 zutsu (ずつ)

The PP **zutsu** (ずつ) has only one semantic role: quantitative

#### 5.2.20.1 Quantitative: proportional allocations

The PP **zutsu** (ずつ) can be placed after nouns pertaining to a quantity or after counter

nouns. It thus displays a proportional allocation of things. The English meaning of this use of the PP **zutsu** (ずつ) can be translated using such words as *each*.

Quantifier	zutsu
------------	-------

1. Kami wa ni-mai **zutsu** to-i-te-kudasai.  
紙は二枚ずつ取って下さい。  
*Please take two pieces of paper each.*
2. Akai bara to shiroi bara to kiroi bara o i-p-pon **zutsu** kudasai.  
赤いバラと白いバラと黄色いバラを一本ずつ下さい。  
*Please give me one red, white, and yellow roses each.*
3. Go-nin **zutsu** no gurûpu o itsu-tsu tsukuru.  
五人ずつのグループを五つ作る。  
*We will make five groups each consisting of five people.*

#### 5.2.20.2 Gradual changes

A gradual and proportional change of a state or of things can be marked with the adverbial PP **zutsu** (ずつ).

4. Sukoshi **zutsu** kanji o oboe-te-iru.  
少しずつ漢字を覚えている。  
*I'm learning kanjis little by little/step by step.*

## Chapter 6 Conjunctive PPs

Among the different types of PPs, with twenty-nine distinct PPs, the conjunctive PPs constitute the largest class (see Tables 21 and 22). This chapter explains the main features of each conjunctive PP. It is divided into two parts: Section 6.1 goes into the details of their main semantic roles (see Tables 23 and 24); and Section 6.2 introduces the usage of each conjunctive PP along with many concrete examples.

### 6.1 General characteristics

Conjunctive PPs display various characteristics ranging from their basic morpho-syntactic features (see § 6.1.1) to syntactic-semantic particularities (see § 6.1.2).

#### 6.1.1 Morphosyntactic features of conjunctive PPs

The fundamental function of conjunctive PPs is to coordinate sentences. When two sentences need to be combined, a conjunctive PP can be attached to the first sentence, called the subjunctive sentence/clause (Sentence A: see the diagram below), which is then followed by a second sentence, the main sentence/clause (Sentence B). From a morphosyntactic viewpoint, different inflectional forms of the predicate are employed to join the subjunctive sentence to the conjunctive PP: V2, V3, TA-form, TE-form, etc. (see § 0.6.1). The form used depends upon both the conjunctive PP being employed and the semantic meaning that the speaker wishes to express: a condition, a temporal relation, a cause, a contrast, etc.

Table 21: A list of conjunctive PPs (in an alphabetic order)

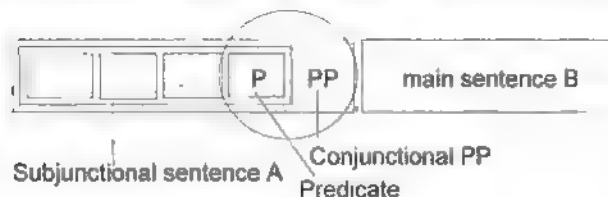
1. ba	16. nari
2. demo	17. ni
3. dokoroka	18. node
4. domo	19. noni
5. ga	20. shi
6. kara	21. tatte/datte
7. kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo	22. temo/demo
8. kototote	23. to
9. kuseni	24. tokorode
10. mo	25. tokoroga
11. monde/monode	26. tomo
12. mononara	27. tote
13. monono	28. tsutsu
14. monoo	29. ya
15. nagara	



Tabel 22: The number of PPs classified into each syntactic function

1.	Case marking PPs (Type A)	10
2.	Case marking PPs (Type B)	8
3.	Copulative PPs	12
4.	Adverbial PPs	20
5.	Conjunctional PPs	29/34 <sup>19</sup>
6.	Modality expressing PPs	26

The PP *nari* (なり) and the following diagram can be used to further illustrate the relationship between the morphological differences in the predicate (P) and the associated semantic differences of the statements made. When the predicate (P) of Sentence A ends with the V3-form of the verb, the PP *nari* (なり) is used in its temporal



-aspectual function expressing the fact that an action in Sentence B takes place at almost the same time as the first action mentioned in Sentence A comes to an end. In contrast, when the TA-form is used for the predicate in Sentence A, the PP *nari* (なり) is used in its aspectual function designating a state, namely, a stative situation in which something remains unchanged (see more concrete examples in §§ 6.2.15.1 and 6.2.15.2).

### 6.1.2 Syntactic-semantic features of conjunctional PPs

Conjunctional PPs also have some semantic characteristics. The PPs tend to be multi-functional (see Table 24), i.e. one conjunctional PP can be used for many distinct purposes. The PP *ba* (ば: see § 6.2.1), for example, can take on a total of six different roles: conditional in a narrow sense, an aspectual function in respect to expressing customary habits or phenomena, conditional in idiomatic expressions, aspective-temporative, copulative and finally modality expressing functions (see Tabel 24)

A further property of conjunctional PPs is their interchangeability of, in most cases, more than one PP, which could be used to fulfil the same semantic function. For example, in the case of a concessive expression (*although, even if, etc.*), Table 23 shows that there are sixteen PPs to choose from: *demo* (でも: see § 6.2.3.1), *ga* (が: see § 6.2.4.3), *kuseni* (くせに: see § 6.2.8.1), *mo* (も: see § 6.2.9.1), *monono* (ものの: see § 6.2.12.1), *nagara* (ながら: see § 6.2.14.3), *noni* (のに: see § 6.2.18.1), *tatte* [ta?te]/*datte* [da?te] (たって/だって: see § 6.2.20.1), *te/de* (て/で: see § 6.2.21.1), *temo/demo* (ても/でも: see § 6.2.22.1), *to* (と: see § 6.2.23.5), *tokorode* (ところで:

<sup>19</sup>When morphologically changed forms of *kedo* (けど), *tatte* (たって[ta?te]) and *temo* (ても) are also considered to be independent conjunctional PPs, their numbers amount to 34 (cf. Table 12 in Chapter 2).

Tabel 23: The semantic functions of the conjunctional PPs

1.	adversative (opposites)	ga, kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo
2.	aspective (progressive)	tsutsu
3.	aspective (an unchanged situation)	nagara, nari, te/de
4.	aspective (two synchronous actions)	nagara tsutsu
5.	aspective-temporative (a first action)	ba, to
6.	aspective-temporative (immediate-ness + an action in the present)	tsutsu, nagara
7.	aspective-temporative (immediate-ness + an action in the past)	nari, ya
8.	aspective-temporative (two synchronous actions) + perception	ba
9.	causal (causes/reasons)	kara, kototote, monode/monde, node, shi, te/de
10.	causal (causes/reasons) + an addition	shi
11.	concessive	domo, mo, monono, tatte [ta?te]/datte [da?te] temo/demo, tsutsu, to, tokorode, tokoroga, tomo, tote
12.	concessive + modality (criticism)	kuseni, nagara noni, tatte/datte, te/de
13.	concessive + modality (non-inference)	ga
14.	conditional (advice)	mononara
15.	conditional (conditions)	ba, to
16.	conditional-assumptive (supposition of not being able to do something)	mononara
17.	conditional-habitual (customary actions/happenings)	ba, to
18.	conditional-hypothetical (hypotheses)	monoo
19.	conditional-introductive (introductions)	ba, ni, to
20.	contrastive (contrasts)	te/de
21.	copulative (creating a list)	ba, te/de
22.	copulative (expansion; increase)	shi
23.	introductive (introductions)	ba, ga, kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo
24.	manner (ways)	te/de
25.	modality (astonishment, being impressed)	ga, kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo
26.	modality (estimation)	mo, tomo
27.	modality (firm decisions)	kara

28.	modality (reservation; indirectness; hesitation)	ga
29.	modality (suggestions)	ba
30.	modality (temporal or quantitative estimation)	tomo
31.	restrictive (restrictions + concession)	tatte/datte
32.	restrictive (specifications; restrictions + conditions)	kara
33.	temporative (consecutive: and)	te/de
34.	temporative (a time sequence)	tokoroga
35.	quantitative (holistic features: totality)	nagara, tomo
36.	others (kara: see § 6.2.5.4.5)	kara
37.	others (adverbials)	te/de
38.	others (te/de: see § 6.2.21.9)	te/de

see § 6.2.24.1), **tokoroga** (ところが: see § 6.2.25.1), **tomo** (とも: see § 6.2.26.1), **tote** (とて: see § 6.2.27.1) and **tsutsu** (つつ: see § 6.2.28.1). There are, however, differences in nuance.

The third characteristic is their semantic duality (cf. § 1.4.4), a single conjunctional PP can mark two semantic roles at the same time. For example, the PP **kuseni** (くせに: see § 6.2.8.1) can be used in order to make a concessive statement (*although, even though, etc.*) and synchronously to express emotions of the speaker, such as anger, frustration, etc.; the PP **kuseni** (くせに) thus conveys both concessive and sentient meanings.

### 6.1.3 Examples of the characteristics of conjunctional PPs

In order to clarify the main features of the conjunctional PPs explained so far in Subsections 6.1.1 and 6.1.2, their adversative, causal (causes/reasons) and introductive functions are briefly surveyed in the following subsections (§§ 6.1.3.1—6.1.3.3).

#### 6.1.3.1 Adversatives

Two contrary statements can be combined using the conjunctional PPs **ga** (が: see § 6.2.4.2) or **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo** (けど/けども/けれど/けれども: see § 6.2.6.1). In the sentence structure shown below, the contents of Sentence A and Sentence B have a contrary relationship.

Sentence A	ga kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo	sentence B
------------	-----------------------------------	------------

1. Kono hon wa takai **ga**, naiyou ga ii  
この本は高いが、内容がいい。  
*This book is expensive, but it's good. (Lit.: ... but its content is good.)*

2. Kono hon wa takai **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo**, naiyou ga ii  
この本は高いけど/けども/けれど/けれども、内容がいい。  
*This book is expensive, but it's good. (Lit.: ... but its content is good.)*

#### 6.1.3.1 Introductives

In cases where the speaker wishes to utter a sentence, which should function as an introduction to his/her main statement, the introductory part can be marked with conjunctional PPs, such as **ba** (ば: see § 6.2.1.3), **ga** (が: see § 6.2.4.1), **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo** (けど/けども/けれど/けれども: see § 6.2.6.2), **ni** (に: see § 6.2.16.1) and **to** (と: see § 6.2.23.3).

3. Kantan ni ie **ba**, kore de wa dame da to iu koto desu.  
簡単に言えば、これでは駄目だということです。  
*To sum up, this is not acceptable.*
4. Sumi-mase-n **ga**, mado o ake-te-mora-e-mase-n ka?  
済みませんが、窓を開けてもらえませんか。  
*Excuse me, but can you open the window?*
5. Sumi-mase-n **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo**, mado o ake-te-mora-e-mase-n ka?  
済みませんけど/けども/けれど/けれども、窓を開けてもらえませんか。  
*Excuse me, but can you open the window?*
6. You-suru **ni**, anata wa kono an ni hantai na no desu ne?  
要するに、あなたはこの案に反対なのですね。  
*In short, you are against this plan, aren't you?*
7. Kantan ni iu **to**, kore de wa dame da to iu koto desu.  
簡単に言うと、これでは駄目だということです。  
*To sum up, this is not acceptable.*

Sentences 3, 6 and 7 are idiomatic and Sentence 5 is more colloquial than Sentence 4.

#### 6.1.3.3 Causals: causes/reasons

The PPs **kara** (から: see § 6.2.5.1), **kototote** (こととて: see § 6.2.7.1), **monode/monde** (もので/もんで: see § 6.2.10.1), **node** (ので: see § 6.2.17.1), **shi** (し: see §§ 6.2.19.1—6.2.19.3) or **te/de** (て/で: see § 6.2.21.2) can mark the cause of or a reason for something. The general sentence structure is given below: such Sentence A mentions the cause of or the reason for something happening in Sentence B.

Sentence A	kara kototote monode/monde node shi te/de	sentence B
------------	--	------------

Table 24: An overview of the semantic functions of each conjunctional PP

	Conjunctional PP	Semantic functions
1	ba	1) conditional in a narrow sense 2) aspective (habitual customary actions/happenings) 3) introductive (an introduction idiomatic expressions) 4) aspective-temporative (simultaneous actions; actions in the past) 5) copulative (listing items) 6) modality (suggestions)
2	dokoroka	1) adversative (oppositions)
3	domo	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> )
4	ga	1) introductive (introductions) 2) adversative (oppositions) 3) concessive (ignoring something) 4) modality (reservation, hesitation, indirectness) 5) modality (astonishment, being impressed)
5	kara	1) causal (causes/reasons) 2) modality (firm decisions) 3) restrictive (specifications; restrictions) + conditions 4) sentence structures with the PP <b>kara</b> (から)
6	kedo/kedomo/ keredo/keredomo	1) adversative (oppositions) 2) introductive (introductions) 3) modality (astonishment, being impressed)
7	kototote	1) causal (causes/reasons)
8	kuseni	1) concessive + modality (criticism)
9	mo	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> ) 2) restrictive + quantitative (maximal limits)
10	monode/monde	1) causal (causes/reasons)
11	mononara	1) conditional-avoidative (an avoidance) 2) conditional-assumptive (a presumption of not being able to do something)
12	monono	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> )
13	monoo	1) conditional (unreality)
14	nagara	1) aspective-temporative (two synchronous actions) 2) aspective (stative, an unchanged situation) 3) concessive ( <i>although</i> )

		4) quantitative (holistic features totality)
15	nari	1) aspective-temporative (an immediate sequence of actions: <i>immediately after</i> )
16	ni	2) aspective (stative, an unchanged situation) 1) introductive (introductions idiomatic expressions) 2) modality (astonishment due to unexpectedness)
17	node	1) causal (causes/reasons)
18	noni	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> )
19	shi	1) causal (causes/reasons) 2) causal (causes/reasons) + additions 3) copulative (expansion, increase)
20	tatte/datte	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> ) 2) restrictive (restrictions) + concessive ( <i>although</i> )
21	te/de	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> ) 2) causal (causes/reasons) 3) temporative (consecutive, <i>and</i> ) 4) temporative (preceding action, <i>before</i> ) 5) copulative ( <i>and</i> ) 6) manner (ways) 7) contrastive (contrasts) 8) adverbial clauses 9) verb-compounds 10) sentence structures with the PP <b>te/de</b> (て/で)
22	temo/demo	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> )
23	to	1) condition in a narrow sense 2) condition (customs; repetition) 3) condition (idiomatic adverbial expressions) 4) aspective-temporative (two synchronous actions in the past) 5) concessive ( <i>although</i> ) 6) introductive (introductions idiomatic expressions)
24	tokorode	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> )
25	tokoroga	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> ) 2) temporative (actions in a sequence of time)
26	tomo	1) concessive ( <i>although</i> ) 2) modality (temporal or quantitative estimation)



		3) quantitative (holistic features: totality)
27.	tote	1) concessive (although)
28.	tsutsu	1) concessive (although) 2) aspective (two synchronous actions/happenings) 3) aspective (progressive)
29.	ya	1) aspective-temporative (an immediate sequence of actions: immediately after)

8. O-kane ga nai kara, ryokou wa akirame-ta.  
お金がないから、旅行は諦めた。  
*I've given up the idea of taking a trip because I don't have any money.*
9. O-kane ga nai kototote, ryokou wa akirame-ta.  
お金がないこととて、旅行は諦めた。  
*I've given up the idea of taking a trip because I don't have any money. (I have some other reasons, too. This is not the only reason.)*
10. O-kane ga nai monode/monde, ryokou wa akirame-ta.  
お金がないもので、旅行は諦めた。/ お金がないもんで、旅行は諦めた。  
*I've given up the idea of taking a trip because I don't have any money.*
11. O-kane ga nai node, ryokou wa akirameru koto ni itashi-mashi-ta.  
お金がないので、旅行は諦めることにいたしました。  
*I've given up the idea of taking a trip because I do not have any money.*
12. O-kane ga nai shi, ryokou wa akirame-ta.  
お金がないし、旅行は諦めた。  
*Among other things, I don't have any money. That's why I've given up the idea of taking a trip.*
13. O-kane ga naku te, ryokou wa akirameru koto ni shi-ta n da.  
お金がなく、旅行は諦めることにしたんだ。  
*I've given up the idea of taking a trip because I don't have any money.*

All the reasons marked by the above PPs, except for the one marked by the PP **node** (ので), are subjective. The PP **node** (ので), on the other hand, marks, in general, an objective reason/cause, so that statements with this PP have overtones of formality. The PP **te/de** (て/で) can be used both for subjective and objective reasons. Reasons marked by the PPs **kototote** (こととて) or **shi** (し) carry with them a connotation that there are other reasons as well, which are not mentioned. Furthermore, the PP **shi** (し) can express the nuance of the speaker's resignation with the meaning of *after all* in certain situations. The PP **monde** (もんで) is colloquial and is derived from the PP **monode** (もので), which is used for formal statements (cf. § 1.3).

## 6.2 Usage of conjunctional PPs

This section contains a description of the various usages of each of the 29 conjunctional PPs illustrated through the use of many schemata and example sentences.

### 6.2.1 ba (ば)

The PP **ba** (ば) is used in the following configuration and has six different functions.



Sentence A

Sentence B

#### 6.2.1.1 Conditionals in a narrow sense

In the configuration shown above, Sentence B is the main statement made under the condition expressed within Sentence A.

- O-kane ga are ba, shin-sha o kau.  
お金があれば、新車を買う。  
*If I had some money, I'd buy a new car. / If I have some money, I'll buy a new car.*
- Ato ichi-jikan mo sure ba, densha ga kuru.  
あと一時間もすれば、電車が来る。  
*The train will arrive in about one hour. (Lit.: When the next hour has passed, the train will arrive.)*
- Ayamare ba, yurushi-te-age-temo ㊦.  
謝れば、許して上げてもいい。  
*If you apologize to me, I can forgive you.*

#### 6.2.1.1.1 Sentence constructs using the conditional form of the PP **ba**

The following subsections illustrate some standard sentence constructs in which the conditional form of the PP **ba** < V4+ba > is incorporated.

##### 6.2.1.1.1.1 Duty: < ... V1 + nakere ba naranai >

This construct expresses a duty that one has to do something.

- Tomodachi ga asobi ni kuru node, souji-shi-na-kere ba nara-nai.  
友達が遊びに来るので、掃除しなければならない。  
*Because my friend is coming to visit me, I have to tidy up my room.*

##### 6.2.1.1.1.2 Proportional changes: < V4 ba V3 hodo ... >

This sentence construction portrays two actions/happenings which change proportional to one another. An expression equivalent in English is *the more ... the more*.

- Toshi o tore ba toru hodo, kashiko-ku naru to ru mono de wa nai.

年を取れば取るほど、賢くなるというものではない。

*It's not always the case that the older you get, the wiser you become*

6. Kangaere **ba** kangaeru hodo atama ga ita-ku naru.

考えれば考えるほど頭が痛くなる。

*The more I think, the worse my headache gets.*

#### 6.2.1.2 Aspectives: habitual (a habit); iterative (recurrence) — < V4 + ba >

When the action expressed in Sentence A (see § 6.2.1) occurs, the action/happening described in Sentence B takes place almost all the time. A habitual action/state of affairs of a person can also be expressed (see Sentence 9) using this construct.

7. Kaze ga fuke **ba**, nami ga tatsu

風が吹けば、波が立つ。

*Whenever the wind blows, waves appear.*

8. Haru ga kure **ba**, hana ga saku.

春が来れば、花が咲く。

*When the spring comes, the flowers bloom.*

9. O-naka ga suke **ba**, kibun ga waruku naru.

お腹が空けば、気分が悪くなる。

*Whenever I get hungry, I feel sick*

#### 6.2.1.3 Introductives: an introduction

Sentence A is an introductory statement for the subsequent main statement made in Sentence B

V4 + ba	main sentence
---------	---------------

Sentence A: an introduction    Sentence B: the main statement

10. Yamada-san to ie **ba**, ano hito ni wa mou nagai koto a-t-te-i-mase-n.

山田さんと言えば、あの人にはもう長いこと会っていません。

*Speaking of Mr/Ms Yamada, I haven't seen him/her for such a long time.*

11. Betsu no kotoba de ie **ba**, ima no seiji wa fuhai-shi-te-iru to iu koto desu.

別の言葉で言えば、今の政治は腐敗しているということです。

*In other words, politics today is corrupt*

12. Gutar-teki ni ie **ba**, anata o koyou-deki-nai to iu koto desu.

具体的に言えば、あなたを雇用できないということです。

*To be blunt, we won't be able to employ you.*

#### 6.2.1.4 Aspective-temporatives: two synchronous actions/happenings in the past

The **ba**-clause (Sentence A) indicates an action/a happening, which had been taken place in the past. As far as the sequence of time is concerned, the action/happening in the **ba**-clause (Sentence A) and the subsequent action/happening (Sentence B)

occur almost simultaneously. Therefore, Sentence B has to be in the past tense. The content of Sentence B is the perception of the speaker upon his action (Sentence A).

V4 + ba	main sentence
---------	---------------

Sentence A: an action    Sentence B: content of the speaker's perception

13. Soto o mire **ba**, hito-ri no otoko ga ta-t-te-i-ta

外を見れば、一人の男が立っていた。

*When I looked outside, I saw a solitary man standing*

However, the PP **to** (と: see § 6.2.23.4), which also has the same temporal function, is more frequently used than the PP **ba** (ば) (see Sentence 14 below).

14. Soto o miru **to**, hito-ri no otoko ga ta-t-te-i-ta

外を見ると、一人の男が立っていた。

*When I looked outside, I saw a solitary man standing*

#### 6.2.1.5 Copulatives + Modality (astonishment)

Actions or happenings can be listed using the PP **ba** (ば). Two such actions or happenings, marked with the PP **ba** (ば), are usually given as examples for the reasons why a speaker is astonished. In such cases, the PP **mo** (も: see § 5.2.11.9), having the same modality function, is generally used in conjunction with the PP **ba** (ば) as can be seen in Sentences 15, 16 and 17. The PP **shi** (し: see § 6.2.19.3) can also be used for this purpose. The sentence constructs using verbal and i-adjectival predicates are illustrated below.

##### (1) Verbal predicate

mo	V4 ba	mo	V3
----	-------	----	----

15. Yama **mo** are **ba**, kawa **mo** aru.

山もあれば、川もある。

*Wow, there are mountains and rivers here! (Everything is here!)*

16. Ano hito wa Nihon-go **mo** dekire **ba**, Doitsu-go **mo** dekiru.

あの人は日本語も出来れば、ドイツ語も出来る。

*He/She can speak Japanese as well as German! (It's amazing!)*

##### (2) I-adjectival predicate

mo	stem of I-adj. + kere	ba	mo	I-adj.
----	-----------------------	----	----	--------

17. Nihon-go **mo** omoshiro-kere **ba**, Chuugoku-go **mo** omoshiroi.

日本語も面白ければ、中国語も面白い。

*Learning Japanese is interesting, but learning Chinese is also interesting!*

## 6.2.1.6 Suggestions

By placing the PP **ba** (ば) at the end of Sentence A, the speaker can make his/her suggestion to the hearer/addressee to do something. As you can see in the sentence structure shown below, Sentence B can be omitted (see Sentences 18 and 19). It should have content of the form *it would be nice* and the like. The PP **ba** (ば) is therefore used as an expression of a condition, meaning that *it would be nice if somebody does something*. This usage is rather colloquial.



Sentence A      Sentence B

18. Ashita no kaigi no gichou wa anata ga yare **ba**?  
 明日の会議の議長はあなたがやれば?  
*Why don't you become the chairman of our meeting/conference tomorrow?*
19. Anata ga shachou to hanashi-te-mire **ba**?  
 あなたが社長と話してみれば?  
*Why don't you speak with the president?*

## 6.2.2 Dokoroka (どころか)

The PP **dokoroka** (どころか) has an adversative function of marking an oppositional relation of two things/matters. The connection of the PP to its preceding predicate is illustrated in the sentence construct below. The predicate of Sentence A can of course be negated or in the past tense, depending upon the statement the speaker wishes to make



## 6.2.2.1 Adversatives: opposites

By marking a statement (Sentence A) with the PP **dokoroka** (どころか), its content is emphatically denied and the subsequent statement (Sentence B), which is contrary to the foregoing one, is made. English contrastive expressions, such as *on the contrary* or *rather*, correspond to this Japanese expression. Thereby, the restrictive-expansive meaning of *not only A, but also B* can also arise (see Sentence 3 below).

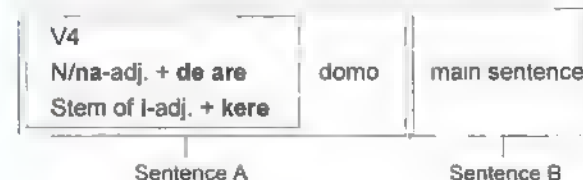
1. Kyou wa samui **dokoroka**, atsui gurai/kurai da-t-ta.  
 今日は寒いどころか、暑いぐらい(くらい)だった。  
*It wasn't cold today. On the contrary, it was rather hot*
2. Hanzai-ristu wa heru **dokoroka**, fueru ippou da.  
 犯罪率は減るどころか、増える一方だ。

*The crime rate hasn't been decreasing. On the contrary, it's constantly increasing*

3. Ano hito wa Nihon-go **dokoroka**, Chuugoku-go mo dekiru  
 あの人は日本語どころか、中国語もできる。  
*He/She doesn't only speak Japanese, but Chinese as well*

## 6.2.3 domo (ども)

The PP **domo** (ども) has a semantic role of marking a concessive. The morpho-syntactic sentence structure using the PP **domo** (ども) is schematized below



## 6.2.3.1 Concessives

A concessive, with the meaning of *although* or *as*, is expressed by the PP **domo** (ども). Following two sentence configurations (1) and (2) are frequently used for this purpose.

## (1) &lt; V4 domo + V4 domo ... &gt;



Sentence A and Sentence B have the same inflectional form 'V4' (see § 0.6.1.1) expressing a contrast under circumstances described in Sentence C. The literal translation of the whole sentence is: *Although A, and although B, it is C*. This has the meaning that no matter what the speaker does, the matter described by Sentence C remains valid.

1. Ike domo ike domo atari ichimen bokusouchi da  
 行けども行けども辺り一面牧草地だ。  
*As far as the eye can see, meadows, meadows and more meadows*
2. Kono roba wa ose domo hike domo ugoka-nai  
 このロバは押せども引けども動かない。  
*No matter how hard I tried to push or pull the donkey, it wouldn't move*

## (2) &lt; Stem of i-adj -kere + domo ... &gt;

This sentence configuration is derived from Classical Japanese and therefore conveys a more formal statement.





3. Kuyashi-kere **domo**, kon-kai wa akirame-you.  
口惜しけれども、今回は諦めよう。  
*It's frustrating, but I will give up this time.*

In Modern Japanese, however, the predicative i-adjective in the lexicon form (i-adjective stem + i) is used followed by the adversative PPs **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo** (けど/けども/けれど/けれども: see § 6.2.6.1) as is demonstrated in Sentence 4 below

4. Kuyashii **keredomo**, kon-kai wa akirame-you.  
口惜しいけれども、今回は諦めよう。  
*It's frustrating, but I will give up this time.*

#### 6.2.4 ga (が)

Alongside the case marking functions (see § 3.2.3), the PP **ga** (が) also has a syntactic function of coordinating sentences. It has five semantic roles (see §§ 6.2.4.1—6.2.4.5). In these cases, Sentences A and B are connected using the PP **ga** (が) as illustrated below:



##### 6.2.4.1 Introductives: an introduction

Sentence A functions as an introductory part for the main statement which is made in Sentence B (see the diagram above).

1. Kono mae no hanashi desu **ga**, are wa sono go dou nari-mashi-ta ka?  
この前の話ですが、あれはその後どうなりましたか。  
*The thing we talked about last time we met, what has happened to it since then?*
2. Kitamura to moushi-masu **ga**, shachou wa irassha-i-masu ka?  
北村と申しますが、社長はいらっしゃいますか。  
*My name is Kitamura. Is the president there please?*
3. Denwa o kake-tai no desu **ga**, keitai-denwa o kashi-te-mora-e-mase-n ka?  
電話をかけたのですが、携帯電話を貸してもらえませんか。  
*I want to make a telephone call, so can I use your mobile telephone?*

##### 6.2.4.2 Adversatives

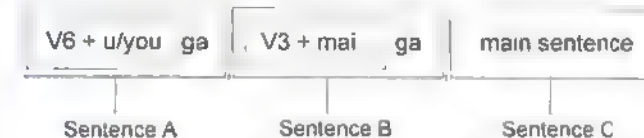
Contrary or opposite statements can be combined using the PP **ga** (が); Sentence B (see the diagram above) describes something contrary to the inference drawn from Sentence A.

4. Kodomo o shika-t-ta **ga**, kikime ga na-ka-t-ta  
子供を叱ったが、効き目がなかった。  
*I scolded my children, but it didn't help.*
5. Ishikawa-san to sono koto ni tsu-i-te hanashi-a-t-ta **ga**, goui ni wa tas-shi-na-kat-ta.  
石川さんとその事について話し合ったが、合意には達しなかった。  
*We talked about it with Mr/Ms Ishikawa, but we couldn't reach an agreement.*

6. Tenki-yohou de wa kyou wa hare to iu koto da-t-ta **ga**, ichi-nichi-juu ame ga fu-t-te-i-ta.  
天気予報では今日は晴れということだったが、一日中雨が降っていた。  
*According to the weather forecast, it was supposed to be fine today, but instead it rained all day.*

##### 6.2.4.3 Non-inference

When the PP **ga** (が) is employed to express a non-inference meaning *no matter what something is/happens*, the assertive auxiliary verbs **u** (う) or **you** (よう) as well as **mai** (まい) that encodes a negation and an assertion synchronously, are used. Sentence A in the diagram below is an assertion about something that will take place, Sentence B is a negative assertion about something that may not happen, Sentence C is the main statement. Therefore, the complete sentence structure conveys the meaning of *No matter what A and B are it is C*. Sentence B is often omitted. The adverb **tatoe** (たとえ) can also be used at the beginning of the sentence in order to emphasize the implication of non-inference



7. **Tatoe oya ni hantai-sare you ga**, (sare-mai ga,) ano hito to kekkon-suru.  
たとえ親に反対されようが、(されまいが、)あの人と結婚する。  
*Irrespective of whether my parents are for or against the marriage, I will marry him/her*
8. **Tatoe minna kara kirawa-re-you ga**, (kirawa-re-mai ga,) watashi wa jibun no shinnen o tsuranuku  
たとえ皆から嫌われようが、(嫌われまいが、)私は自分の信念を貫く。  
*No matter how much people dislike me for it, I'm going to adhere to my opinion.*

##### 6.2.4.4 Modality: humbleness; hesitation; taking a reserved stance; avoiding direct statements

The conjunctional PP **ga** (が) can be used pragmatically in order to express the politeness of the speaker towards the interlocutor. This is due to the following properties: it signalsizes humbleness or a reserved stance of the speaker, it indicates that the speaker is hesitating or abstaining from saying something directly. Thus, his/her statement sounds soft and polite in the hearer's/addressee's ears. It is worth noting that Sentence B (see below) is almost always omitted. Nevertheless, it is generally understood what it would have been by the hearer/addressee from the context. From a syntactic-semantic point of view, the PP **ga** (が) in this usage can also be categorized under the modality expressing PPs (see §§ 2.5, 7.1 and 7.2.2.2) since Sentence B is omitted



9. Chotto o-negai-shi-tai koto ga aru no desu ga ...  
 ちょっとお願いしたいことがあるのですが.....  
*I would like to ask you to do me a favour (, but I'm not sure if I should).*

10. Jikan ga nai koto wa nai no desu ga  
 時間がないことはないのですが.....  
*I wouldn't say that I don't have any time (, but I've not exactly got too much time on my hands either)*

#### 6.2.4.5 Modality: surprise (cf. § 6.2.6.3)

Sentence B (see the diagram below) is stated as an additional comment to Sentence A. The statement consisting of Sentences A and B as a whole expresses that the speaker is surprised, or impressed about something.



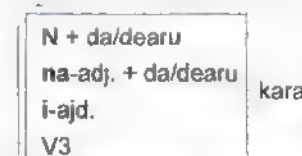
11. Maiku wa Nihon-go mo jouzu da ga, Chuugoku-go mo jouzu da.  
 マイクは日本語も上手だが、中国語も上手だ。  
*Mike is not only good at Japanese, but also at Chinese. (It's surprising! / I'm quite impressed!)*
12. Hosokawa-san wa nouryoku mo aru ga, zaiyoku mo aru.  
 細川さんは能力もあるが、財力もある。  
*Mr/Ms Hosokawa has both talent and money. (It's surprising!)*

The conjunctional PP *shi* (し: see § 6.2.19.2) can also be used in place of the PP *ga* (が) in its modality cases as is shown in Sentence 13 below.

13. Maiku wa Nihon-go mo jouzu da shi, Chuugoku-go mo jouzu da.  
 マイクは日本語も上手だし、中国語も上手だ。  
*Mike is not only good at Japanese, but also at Chinese. (It's surprising! / I'm quite impressed!)*

#### 6.2.5 kara (から)

Of the three primary semantic functions of the conjunctional PP *kara* (から), namely causal roles (see § 6.2.5.1), expressing firm decisions (see § 6.2.5.2) and restrictive functions (see § 6.2.5.3) the first role occurs most frequently. Subsection 6.2.5.4 illustrates various sentence structures in which this conjunctional PP is incorporated. The morphosyntactic connection of the PP *kara* (から) to the preceding predicate is given in the diagram below.



This predicate can, of course, also be negated or in the past tense

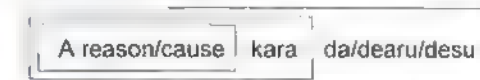
#### 6.2.5.1 Causals: causes/reasons

In the scheme below Sentence A is a reason/cause for something and Sentence B is the main statement. In contrast to the conjunctional PP *node* (ので: see § 6.2.17.1), a subjective reason/cause is generally marked with the conjunctional PP *kara* (から).



1. Kaze o hi-i-ta kara, kyou wa kaisha o yasumu  
 風邪を引いたから、今日は会社を休む。  
*I won't go to work today because I've got a cold*
2. Kono hon wa takai kara kawa-nai  
 この本は高いから買わない。  
*This book is so expensive that I'm not going to buy it*
3. Yamada-san wa niku ga kirai da kara, yasai bakari tabe-te-iru.  
 山田さんは肉が嫌いだから、野菜ばかり食べている。  
*Mr/Ms Yamada doesn't like meat. That's why he/she only eats vegetables.*

As shown in the following diagram, the *kara*-clause can also be a part of the nominal predicate (see §§ 0.5, 0.7 and 0.7.1): < [ ~ *kara*, da/dearu/desu ] >. The PP *kara* (から) cannot be replaced with the PP *node* (ので: see § 6.2.17.1) when using this sentence construction



4. Kankyou-kaigi ga hiraka-re-ta no wa, chikyuu-kibo de susumu kankyou-osen ga shinkoku-ka-shi-te-iru kara dearu  
 環境会議が開かれたのは、地球規模で進む環境汚染が深刻化しているからである。  
*The reason why the Environmental Conference was held is that environmental pollution is getting worse on a global scale.*

#### 6.2.5.2 Modality: a firm decision

The PP *kara* (から) is placed at the end of the sentence and marks a firm decision made by the speaker. Owing to this syntactic constellation and its sentient meaning, the PP *kara* (から), in this usage, can be regarded as a modality expressing PP.



Content of the speaker's firm decision

5. Kono shigoto wa zettai ni shi-masu kara  
この仕事は絶対にしますから。  
*I will definitely do this job*
6. Dare ga nan to iou to watashi wa kare to kekkon-shi-masu kara.  
誰が何と言おうと私は彼と結婚しますから。  
*No matter what people say, I will marry him!*

### 6.2.5.3 Restrictives (Restrictive-conditional specifications): < ~ kara (ni) wa >

English meanings such as, *as long as*, or *as far as*, are expressed by this sentence structure. The three PPs involved in marking this form of restriction are ordered hierarchically: the PP *kara* (から) designates a restriction, the PP *ni* (に), which is optional, marks a reason/cause (see § 3.2.6 13), and finally the PP *wa* (は) indicates an emphasis (see § 3.4.9 3)

7. Yakusoku-shi-ta kara ni wa, kono shigoto o shi-nasai.  
約束したからには、この仕事をしなさい。  
*You've promised to do this job, so just get on with it!*
8. Kenpou de genron no jiyuu ga kitei-sa-re-te-iru kara ni wa, kono demo o kinshi-suru wake ni wa ika-nai.  
憲法で言論の自由が規定されているからには、このデモを禁止するわけにはいかない。  
*As long as freedom of speech is guaranteed in the Constitution, we cannot forbid this demonstration.*

### 6.2.5.4 Sentence structures with the PP *kara* (から)

This subsection introduces five sentence structures involving the use of the conjunctional PP *kara* (から: see §§ 6.2.5.4.1—6.2.5.4.5). The PP *kara* (から) in the first four sentence patterns (see §§ 6.2.5.4.1—6.2.5.4.4) is causal. The last pattern (see § 6.2.5.4 5) encodes the emphasis or surprise of the speaker (see § 3.2 4 8).

#### 6.2.5.4.1 Causals + Concessives 1: < ~ kara tote >

The following sentence structure illustrates a juxtaposition of two PPs: the causal marker PP *kara* (から) and the concessive encoder PP *tote* (とて, see § 6.2.27.1).



9. Himan da kara tote, nani mo tabe-nai wake ni wa ika-nai.  
肥満だからとて、何も食べないわけにはいかない。  
*Even if I'm overweight, I can't just eat 'nothing'. I have to eat something.*

#### 6.2.5.4.2 Causals + Concessives 2: < ~ kara to itte > / < ~ kara tte >

A reason/cause can be marked with the PP *kara* (から), and a concessive meaning can be indicated by using the expression *to itte* (といて/とって) or by the PP *tte* (つて: see § 3.4.7.3); they both mark a citation (quotative).

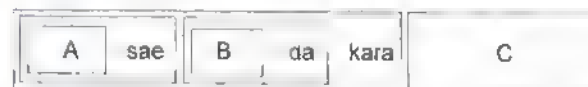


10. Fukyou da kara to i-t-te, juugyou-in o kaiko-suru wake ni wa ika-nai.  
不況だからといて、従業員を解雇するわけにはいかない。  
*We can't fire employees just because of the economic depression.*
11. Ie ga tooi kara tte, mai-nichi jugyou ni okure-te-kuru no wa yoku-nai.  
家が遠いからって、毎日授業に遅れて来るのは良くない。  
*It's not acceptable that you arrive late for class every day just because you live far away!*

#### 6.2.5.4.3 Emphasis + Causals: < ~ sae ~ da kara, ~ > / < ~ sae ~ kurai da kara, ~ >

The conjunctional PP *kara* (から), marking a reason/cause, can be used in conjunction with the adverbial PPs *sae* (さえ: see § 5.2.14.1) and *kurai* (くらい: see § 5.2.9.4) both marking an extreme. In addition, the adverb *mashite* (まして), which makes a sharp contrast between the *kara*-clause and the main statement (Sentence C below), is frequently used. The meaning of the sentence is: *It is C because even A is B*. Two sentence structures are schematized below

##### (1) < ~ sae ~ da kara ~ >



12. Otona sae kowai to omou no desu kara, mashite kodomo ni wa kono eiga wa yoku an-mase-n.  
大人さえ怖いと思うのですから、まして子供にはこの映画は良くありません。  
*Because this movie is scary even for adults, it can't be any good for children.*

##### (2) < ~ sae ~ kurai da kara ~ >



13. Watashi de sae muzukashii to omou kurai da kara mashite anata ni dekiru hazu ga nai.  
私でさえ難しいと思うくらいだから、ましてあなたに出来るはずがない。  
*Even I think this is difficult. That's why it's out of the question that you would be*



able to do it

#### 6.2.5.4.4 Causals (causes/reasons): < ~ mono da kara ~ >

The sentence structure < ... mono da kara ... > signalizes a reason/cause. Syntactically speaking, **mono** (もの/物) can be categorized as a pseudo-noun (see § 1.3) or a PP (see § 7.2.9)

Sentence A	mono	da	kara	Sentence B
------------	------	----	------	------------

14. O-kane ga na-ku-te koma-t-te-iru kara to otouto ni iwa-re-ta mono da kara, o-kane o kashi-te-age-ta.  
お金がなくて困っているからと弟に言われたものだから、お金を貸して上げた。  
*My (younger) brother told me that he was in trouble because he didn't have any money. That's why I loaned him some.*

#### 6.2.5.4.5 Obviousness: < ~ kara ni ~ >

This sentence structure is used mostly with verbs of perception, such as **miru** (見る/to see), and it portrays a meaning that *something is so obvious that with the first glance the speaker notices it right away*. Both the PPs **kara** (から) and **ni** (に) indicate the surprise of the speaker (see §§ 3.2.4.8 and 6.2.16.2).

Sentence A	kara	ni	Sentence B
------------	------	----	------------

15. Tonari no aka-chan wa miru kara ni kawaii  
隣の赤ちゃんは見るからに可愛い。  
*Our neighbour's baby is so cute! (It's so striking that you'll notice it right away.)*
16. Miru kara ni ayashii  
見るからに怪しい。  
*He/She looks very suspicious! (There's no doubt about it.)*

#### 6.2.6 kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo (けど/けども/けれど/けれども)

These four conjunctional PPs are interchangeable and have three distinct functions: adversative (contrasts; oppositions), introductory (an introductory statement) and modality expressing functions. A syntactic schema for their use is given below.

Sentence A	kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo	Sentence B
------------	-----------------------------	------------

##### 6.2.6.1 Adversatives

Sentence B is a statement that is made contrary to Sentence A. Sentence B has an unexpected content which does not necessarily correspond to the expectation drawn

from Sentence A. Semantically, the English conjunctions, such as *but*, *however*, *nevertheless*, or the adverb *still*, correspond closely to the meaning of these Japanese PPs.

1. Kono hon wa totemo takai keredomo, sankou ni naru  
この本はとても高いけれども、参考になる。  
*This book is very expensive, but very useful*
2. O-kane wa nai keredo, shiawase da  
お金はないけれど、幸せだ。  
*I don't have much money, however, I'm still happy*
3. Kaze ga fu-i-te-iru kedo, mushi-atsui  
風が吹いているけど、蒸し暑い。  
*Although the wind is blowing, it's humid*
4. Haha wa byouki de ne-te-iru kedomo, Supain ni ryokou ni iku koto ni shi-ta.  
母は病気で寝ているけども、スペインに旅行に行くことにした。  
*Although my mother is sick in bed, I've decided to take a trip to Spain.*

#### 6.2.6.2 Introductives: an introduction

In the same manner as the conjunctional PP **ga** (が; see § 6.2.4.1), the PPs **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo** (けど/けども/けれど/けれども) can mark an introductory statement (Sentence A above) made prior to the main statement (Sentence B).

5. Watashi ga tsuku-t-ta kēki desu kedo, yo-kat-tara o-meshi-agari-kudasai.  
私が作ったケーキですけど、良かったらお召し上がり下さい。  
*I baked this cake myself. Would you like some?*
6. Tanaka desu kedo, Yoshiko-san wa i-masu ka?  
田中ですけど、良子さんはいますか。  
*My Name is Mr/Ms Tanaka. Is Yoshiko there, please?*

#### 6.2.6.3 Modality: surprise

The PPs **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo** (けど/けども/けれど/けれども) can mark a surprise both in a positive or a negative sense. It is interchangeable with the PP **ga** (が; see § 6.2.4.5). Whereas the PP **ga** (が) conveys a neutral nuance, the other PPs are rather colloquial.

7. Ano ko wa sansuu mo tokui da kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo, Ei-go mo tokui da  
あの子は算数も得意だけど(けども/けれど/けれども)、英語も得意だ。  
*She/He is not only good at math, but also at English. (It is surprising!)*

#### 6.2.7 kototote (こととて)

The PP **kototote** (こととて) has a causal function and is syntactically employed in the following sentence formation. See also Section 1.3 for its morphological features.



The predicates of Sentence A shown above can, of course, also be negated.

#### 6.2.7.1 Causals: causes/reasons

The PP **kototote** (こととて) marks a reason/cause and its use is very formal. Expressions using the PP **kototote** (こととて) of this function are becoming, however, very seldom in contemporary usage.

1. Musuko wa mada osanai **kototote**, yoroshiku o-negai-shi-masu.  
 息子はまだ幼いこととて、宜しく願います。  
*Since my son is still a child, please take care of him well.*
2. Kare wa ichi-do Nihon ni i-t-ta koto ga aru **kototote**, Nihon no koto o yoku hanasu.  
 彼は一度日本に行ったことがあることとて、日本の事をよく話す。  
*Because he's once been to Japan, he talks a lot about Japan.*
3. Byouki no **kototote**, Ishida-san wa ashita no kaigi ni wa shusseki-shi-nai souda.  
 病気のことで、石田さんは明日の会議には出席しないそうだ。  
*I've heard that Mr/Ms Ishida won't be attending the conference tomorrow owing to his/her illness*

#### 6.2.8 kuseni (くせに)

The PP **kuseni** (くせに) has a dual function of encoding both concessive and modality properties. Morphologically, it can also be divided into the pseudo-noun **kuse** (癖) and the PP **ni** (に), as described in Section 1.3.



##### 6.2.8.1 Concessives

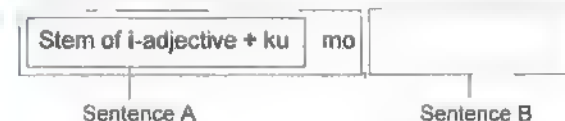
The English conjunctions, *though*, *although*, or expressions such as *in spite of the fact that*, or *notwithstanding the fact that*, correspond to the use of the Japanese PP **kuseni** (くせに). In analogy to other concessive PPs, such as **nagara** (ながら: see § 6.2.14.3), **noni** (のに: see § 6.2.18.1) and **te/de** (て/で: see § 6.2.21.1), the PP **kuseni** (くせに) conveys the emotions of the speaker much stronger. They express his/her anger, annoyance or frustration in respect to the situation described in Sentence B.

1. Kane-mochi no **kuseni**, kechi da.  
 金持ちのくせに、けちだ。  
*Although he/she is rich, he/she is stingy. (This annoys me!)*

2. Shira-nai **kuseni**, shi-t-ta-ka-buri o suru na!  
 知らないくせに、知ったかぶりをするな!  
*Don't behave as if you knew all about it, even though you don't know anything about it at all. (I don't like such behaviour!) (♂)*
3. Shi-t-te-iru **kuseni**, dama-t-te-iru.  
 知っているくせに、黙っている。  
*You keep silence, although you know all about it. (This makes me mad!)*
4. O-kane ga nai **kuseni**, o-kane ga aru you na kuchi-buri da.  
 お金がないくせに、お金があるような口ぶりだ。  
*He/She speaks as if he/she had money, although he/she doesn't. (I don't like him/her!)*

#### 6.2.9 mo (も)

The PP **mo** (も) has two functions: concession and restriction. Note that the coordination with the preceding predicate (see the diagram below) is limited to predicative i-adjectives including those auxiliary verbs which have an i-adjectival inflection, such as **nai** (ない: negation), **tai** (たい: desiderative [wishes]) and **rashii** (らしい: assumptions).



##### 6.2.9.1 Concessives

The PP **mo** (も) can mark a concessive meaning of *even if* and is nowadays primarily used in idiomatic expressions such as **yoku mo waruku mo** (良くも悪くも: see Sentences 1 and 2) In Modern Japanese the conjunctive PP **temo** (ても: see § 6.2.22.1) is chosen in preference to the PP **mo** (も) for this purpose

1. Yoku **mo** waruku **mo**, shinjitsu o kare ni i-t-ta hou ga ii.  
 良くも悪くも、真実を彼に言った方がいい。  
*For better or worse, it's still better to tell him the truth*
2. Yoku **mo** waruku **mo** kono kekka wa waku koto ni naru desho-u.  
 良くも悪くもこの結果は分かることになるでしょう。  
*We will get to know the result irrespective of whether it's bad or good*
3. Anata ni ii-taku **mo**, i-e-nai koto wa takusan aru.  
 あなたに言いたくも、言えない事はたくさんある。  
*There are lots of things I can't tell you even if I want to.*

##### 6.2.9.2 Restrictives: minimal/maximal limits (see § 5.2.11.8)

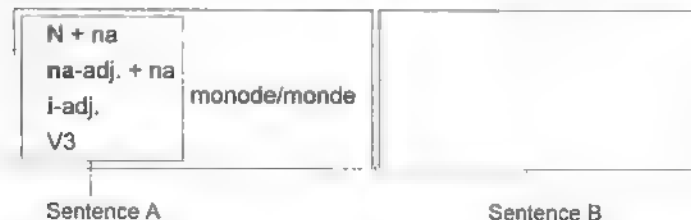
The PP **mo** (も) as a marker of a quantitative maximal limit has already been explained in Subsection 5.2.11.8. However, the morphological inflection < stem of i-adjective +

inflectional ending *ku* > can also be considered as a conjunctional form of the predicative *i*-adjective as schematized above. In Modern Japanese, this usage is limited to certain expressions, such as *sukunaku mo* (at least). Nowadays, the PP *tomo* (とも: see § 6.2.26.2) is preferentially used. *sukunaku tomo* (at least)

4. *Sukunaku mo* kan-ta o-kane dake wa ano hito ni kaesa-na-kere-ba nara-nai.  
 少なくとも借りたお金だけはあの人に返さなければならない。  
*At the very least I have to give him/her back the money I borrowed.*

### 6.2.10 monode/monde (もので/もんで)

The PP *monde* (もんで) is a phonologically changed form of the PP *monode* (もので), an ellipsis of the vowel [o] of *m-o-n-o-d-e*. Although the PPs *monode* (もので) and *monde* (もんで) are interchangeable, a statement made with *monode* (もので) is more formal than one made with *monde* (もんで). Morphologically speaking, the PP *monode* (もので) can also be considered as a compound of the pseudo-noun *mono* (物) and the PP *de* (で) as is mentioned in Section 1.3. The connection scheme is as follows.



Note that the predicate of Sentence A can, of course, also be in the negation or in the past tense

#### 6.2.10.1 Causals (causes/reasons) + Modality (surprise)

The PP *monode* (もので) or *monde* (もんで) bears a conflation of two roles: causal functions (reasons/causes) and modality (surprise). Sentence A is a reason/cause marked with the PP *monode/monde* (もので/もんで) for the action described in Sentence B (see the diagram above). Sentence B has a connotation that its syntactic subject is the agent of the unexpected action described in Sentence B, i.e. the speaker is quite surprised about the fact described in Sentence A and that this instigated the subsequent action in Sentence B which was unplanned. The adverb *tsui* (つい), which indicates more vividly the unexpected nature of the action in Sentence B, is often incorporated into an expression using these PPs.

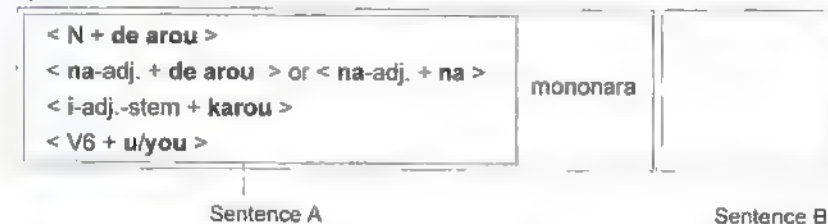
1. *Anman ni mo yasu-kat-ta monode*, *tsui* kono sukâto o ka-t-te-shima-t-ta  
 あんまりにも安かったもので、ついこのスカートを買ってしまった。  
*This skirt was amazingly cheap. That's why I bought it. (Actually I was not intending to buy it.)*
2. *Aman ni mo atama ga ita-kat-ta monde*, *kyuukyuu-sha* o yo-n-da.  
 あまりにも頭が痛かったもんで、救急車を呼んだ。  
*I called an ambulance, because I had such a terrible headache. (I wasn't planning on doing so.)*

### 6.2.11 mononara (ものなら)

The PP *mononara* (ものなら) marks a condition. This section illustrates the two morphosyntactically different types of conditional sentence structures possible using this PP: < a condition + a negative consequence > and < a condition + irrealis >. It is worth noting that the PP *mononara* (ものなら) can be divided into two morphological elements: the pseudo-noun *mono* (物) and *nara* (なら) being the conditional form of the auxiliary verb *da* (だ) used to make a definitive statement (see § 1.3)

#### 6.2.11.1 Conditionals: < a condition + a negative consequence >

In the following diagram, the predicate of the sentence preceding the PP *mononara* (ものなら) can also be negated or in the past tense, depending upon the statement the speaker wants to make.



Sentence A describes some advice of the speaker in the form that the interlocutor should avoid doing something; Sentence B designates a warning of the speaker that something terrible, uncomfortable or unfavourable will happen, should the addressee not heed the advice.

1. *Sonna koto o ano hito ni io-u mononara*, *taihen* na koto ni naru  
 そんな事をあの人に言おうものなら、大変な事になる。  
*If you say something like that to him, something terrible is bound to happen (You'd better not tell him that)*
2. *Boku no kanojo no warukuchi o io-u mononara*, *tada* de wa okanai zo.  
 僕の彼女の悪口を言おうものなら、ただではおかないぞ。  
*If you say bad things about my girlfriend, I shall never leave you in peace!*
3. *Chichi ni uso o tsuko-u mononara*, *dona-rareru* yo.  
 父に嘘を吐こうものなら、怒鳴られるよ。  
*If I were to tell a lie to my father, he would shout at me!*

#### 6.2.11.2 Conditionals: < a condition + irrealis >

The following sentence construction encodes something with an unrealistic nature.



The speaker deems it impossible to carry out whatever is described in Sentence A; Sentence B designates an unrealistic state or action to be carried out.



4. Anata ni dekiru mononara, ya-t-te-mora-ou ja nai ka.  
あなたに出来るものなら、やってもらおうじゃないか。  
*If you think that you can do it, then go ahead! (You can't do it. It's out of the question!)*
5. Sore de suma-sareru mononara, koto wa kantan da  
それで済まされるものなら、事は簡単だ。  
*Only if you could solve a problem like this, the rest would be easy!*

### 6.2.12 monono (ものの)

The PP **monono** (ものの) has a concessive function with the meaning of *even though*. Morphologically, **monono** (ものの) can also be analysed as a compound of the pseudo-noun **mono** (物) and the PP **no** (の) as explained in Section 1.3. The following is the construction diagram detailing the use of this PP.



#### 6.2.12.1 Concessives + Modality (regret)

The English concessive meanings, such as *although* or *though*, can be expressed by the use of the PP **monono** (ものの). The sentence structure outlined above conveys the meaning of *although A, B; A, but B; A, however B*. Furthermore, it carries a connotation that the syntactic subject of the whole sentence (Sentences A and B), which is the agent of an action taken (Sentence A), expresses his/her regret for this action. Sentence B indicates that he/she is not capable of realizing what he/she has/had mentioned in Sentence A.

1. Kono shigoto o hiki-uke-ta monono, isogashi-sugi-te te o tsukeru hima mo nai.  
この仕事を引き受けたものの、忙し過ぎて手を付ける暇もない。  
*Although I accepted this job, I haven't even started it yet, because I am too busy. (I shouldn't have accepted it. It was a mistake.)*
2. Tomodachi o tasuke-te-yaru to wa i-t-ta monono, dou shi-te tasuke-te-ya-t-te ii no ka wakara-nai.  
友達を助けてやるとは言ったものの、どうして助けてやっていいのか分からない。  
*Although I told my friend that I would help him, I don't know how. (I shouldn't have said that.)*
3. Kari-ta o-kane wa kaesu to i-t-ta monono, imada ni tagaku no shakkin de kaes-e-nai.  
借りたお金は返すと言ったものの、未だに多額の借金で返せない。  
*I did tell him/her that I would give him/her back the money that I borrowed from him/her, but I still have a huge amount of debt. Therefore I still can't do it. (I regret that I told him/her that.)*

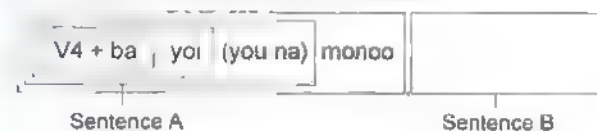
### 6.2.13 monoo (ものを)

The PP **monoo** (ものを) is a conflation of a conditional and a modality marker as explained below (see § 6.2.13.1). This PP also belongs to the group of PPs (see § 1.3) which can be morphologically analysed as a compound of a pseudo-noun and a PP **mono** (物) + **o** (を).

#### 6.2.13.1 Conditionals (a condition) + Modality (vexation)

Two different sentence structures can be used as shown below. Sentence A describes something which did not or will not take place, but something which the speaker deemed/deems desirable. Subsequently, Sentence B generally depicts a conclusion drawn out of Sentence A, and it is something undesirable or unacceptable for the speaker (see Sentences 1 and 2 below); it can, however, be a description of the present state (see Sentence 3). Thus, by using this sentence pattern, the speaker automatically expresses his/her regret, distress or vexation over something (see Sentence A) which he/she deems should not have happened/should not happen.

#### (1) < V4 + ba yoi (you na) monoo ... >



1. Dama-t-te-ire ba yoi monoo, tsui hontou no koto o i-t-te-shimai, taihen na koto ni na-t-ta.  
黙っていれば良いものを、つい本当の事を言ってしまい、大変な事になった。  
*I should have remained silent but I just told him/her the truth and now I'm in a difficult situation*
2. "Gomen-nasai" to ie ba yoi you na monoo, jji o ha-t-te ayamaro-u tomo shi-nai.  
「ごめんなさい」と言えば良いようなものを、意地を張って謝ろうともしない。  
*All he/she has to do is to say "Sorry" to me, but he/she is too stubborn and he/she won't do it.*

#### (2) < ... de arou monoo ... >



3. Kou shi-te-i-tara seikou-shi-te-i-ta de aro-u monoo fukou na kekka ni owa-t-ta.  
こうしていたら成功していたであろうものを、不幸な結果に終わった。  
*If I had done it in this way, I could have succeeded. The end result was very miserable*

### 6.2.14 nagara

The PP **nagara** (ながら) has the following three distinct semantic roles (see §§

6.2.14.1—6.2.14.4): aspectual (synchronous-progressive; habitual; stative), concessive, and quantitative functions. Its morphosyntactic connection with the preceding predicate depends upon which of these functions is being portrayed.

#### 6.2.14.1 Aspectives: two synchronous/progressive actions

Two actions, A and B, are described in Sentences A and B respectively which occur at the same time. Sentence B describes an action that takes place in a state described in Sentence A.



1. Tabe **nagara**, hanasa-nai de kudasai  
食べながら、話さないで下さい。  
*Please don't speak with your mouth full!*
2. Shinbun o yomi **nagara** aru-i-te-i-tara, kawa ni ochi-te-shima-t-ta  
新聞を読みながら歩いていたなら、川に落ちてしまった。  
*As I was taking a walk while reading a newspaper, I fell into the river.*

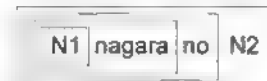
#### 6.2.14.2 Aspectives: habitual actions; unchanged situations

By using the PP **nagara** (ながら) the speaker can express habitual actions/happenings with a connotation that the situation has not changed. In this case, a noun precedes the PP **nagara** (ながら).



3. Itsumo **nagara**, watashi no nayami o ki-i-te-kure-mase-n ka?  
いつもながら、私の悩みを聞いてくれませんか。  
*I have some problems. Do you have time for me again, please?*  
(Lit.: I have worries so can you listen to me as usual, please?)

**Itsumo** (いつも) in Sentence 3 above is not used as an adverb, but as a noun. Also, the postpositional phrase < N + **nagara** > can function as a modifier of a noun (see below)



4. Kore wa mukashi **nagara** no shuukan da.  
これは昔ながらの習慣だ。  
*This is our traditional custom. / These are our traditional customs.*

#### 6.2.14.3 Concessives

Concessive meanings, such as *although* or *though*, can be expressed by using the PP **nagara** (ながら) in the following sentence scheme:



5. Ano ko wa chiisai **nagara**, kashikoi.  
あの子は小さいながら、賢い。  
*Although he/she is a child, he/she's smart*
6. Haha wa jitsui o shi-t-te-i-**nagara**, oshie-te-kure-na  
母は事実を知っていながら、教えてくれない。  
*Although my mother knows the truth, she doesn't let me know.*
7. Taihen **nagara**, maru-ichi-nichi kake-te kono shigoto o shi-age-ta.  
大変ながら、丸一日かけてこの仕事を仕上げた。  
*Although it was hard work, I've finished the task by working all day.*

#### 6.2.14.4 Quantitatives: holistic quantities

By placing the PP **nagara** (ながら) after a quantifier < number + counter unit > a holistic property in the sense of *all* is expressed. This usage, however, is seldom found in Modern Japanese, the PP **tomo** (とも: see § 6.2.26.3) is used instead. The **nagara**-postpositional phrase is adverbial, but can also be used nominally: < quantifier **nagara** no N >.



8. Shimai san-nin **nagara**, seiji-ka ni na-t-ta  
姉妹三人ながら、政治家になった。  
*All of the three sisters became politicians.*

#### 6.2.15 nari (なり)

The PP **nari** (なり) has two distinct functions: < temporative + aspective > and aspective. Their morphosyntactic connections with the preceding predicate are respectively: < V3 + **nari** > and < TA + **nari** >.

##### 6.2.15.1 Temporatives + Aspectives (immediate actions/happenings)

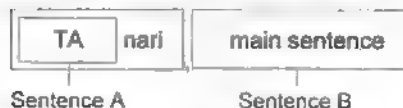
The PP **nari** (なり) can be used when an action takes place (see Sentence A below) and almost simultaneously the next action occurs (see Sentence B). English equivalents are *soon after*, *as soon as*, *right after*, etc.



- Heya ni hairu nari, suu-nin no otoko ni kakoma-re-ta.  
部屋に入るなり、数人の男に囲まれた。  
As soon as I entered the room, I was surrounded with several men
- Watashi no kao o miru nari, kodomo ga na-i-ta  
私の顔を見るなり、子供が泣いた。  
Upon looking at my face, the child began to cry.

### 6.2.15.2 Aspectives: unchanged situations

The PP nari (なり) can be used to describe a situation, which has/had arisen (see Sentence B), because a certain action (see Sentence A) that was taken remains unchanged. The usage of this expression is, however, becoming scarce.



- Kono hon wa sen-getsu ka-t-ta nari, mada yo-n-de-i-nai  
この本は先月買ったなり、まだ読んでいない。  
I bought this book last month, and I still haven't read it.
- Ano hito wa tomodachi ni o-kane o kar-ta nari, kaesa-nai  
あの人は友達にお金を借りたなり、返さない。  
He/She borrowed money from his/her friend, and he/she still hasn't given it back

### 6.2.16 ni (に)

The PP ni (に) has both syntactically and semantically a wide range of functions that are partially expounded in §§ 3.2.6, 4.2.5 and 7.2.13. As a conjunctional PP it has two distinct functions: introductive and modality expressing functions. Each function has a different associated sentence structure.

#### 6.2.16.1 Introductives: an introduction

The statement made in Sentence A and marked with the PP ni (に) is an introduction to the subsequent main statement in Sentence B. This usage is limited to a certain number of idiomatic expressions. A few of which are illustrated below.



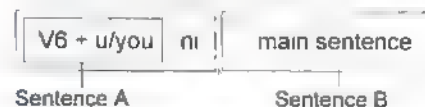
- Omou ni, sekai-heiwa no iji wa fukanou da.

思うに、世界平和の維持は不可能だ。  
I think it is impossible to maintain peace throughout the world.

- You suru ni, anata ga warui n desu yo.  
要するに、あなたが悪いんですよ。  
In short, it's your fault.

#### 6.2.16.2 Modality: astonishment; bewilderment

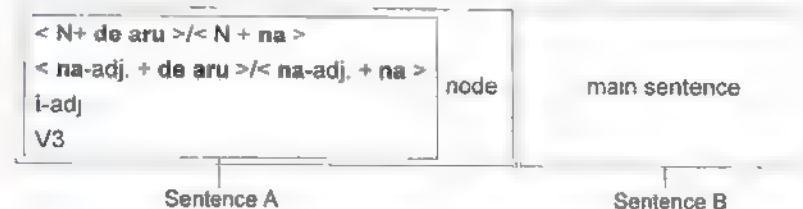
The speaker expresses his/her astonishment/bewilderment owing to the fact that he/she did not anticipate/expect/foresee something at all.



- Koto mo aro-u ni, anata ga sonna koto o suru nante souzou mo shi-te-i-na-kat-ta  
事もあろうに、あなたがそんな事をするなんて、想像もしていなかった。  
I never thought that you would do such a thing!
- Kotowari-kata mo hoka ni aro-u ni, naze sonna ii-kata o shi-ta no desu ka!  
断わり方も他にあらうに、なぜそんないい方をしたのですか。  
There are many ways to refuse, but how could you say in such a way!

### 6.2.17 node (ので)

The PP node (ので) has a causal function and its morphosyntactic connection is illustrated below. The predicate of Sentence A can, of course, be negated or in the past tense, depending upon a statement wishing to be made



#### 6.2.17.1 Causals: causes/reasons

Sentence A is the reason/cause of Sentence B. In contrast to the PP kara (から; see § 6.2.5.1), which marks, in general, a subjective reason, the reason/cause marked with the PP node (ので) is considered to be objective. However, the PP node (ので) can also be used pragmatically in order to show a certain mental distance of the speaker to the hearer/addressee. In this way, a more formal atmosphere can be achieved (see Sentence 4)

- Ashita wa yasumi na node, uchi de nonbiri suru koto ni shi-ta.  
明日は休みなので、家でんびりすることにした。  
Because tomorrow is a holiday, I've decided to relax at home.



2. Kaigi no junbi o shi-na-kere-ba-nara-na-kat-ta **node**, uchi ni kaeru no ga osoku na-t-ta.  
会議の準備をしなければならなかったので、家に帰るのが遅くなった。  
*I came home late because I had to prepare for the conference*
3. Kyou wa jikan ga nai **node**, ashita sono koto ni tsu-i-te hanaso-u.  
今日は時間がないので、明日その事について話そう。  
*As I'm busy today, let's talk about it tomorrow.*
4. Moushiwake aru-mase-n ga, kodomo ga byouki de ne-te-ori-masu **node**, kyou wa hayame ni shitsurei-sa-sete-itadaki-masu.  
申し訳ありませんが、子供が病気で寝ておりますので、今日は早めに失礼させていただきます。  
*I'm sorry, but my child is at home sick in bed, and therefore I would like to leave earlier today*

### 6.2.18 noni (のに)

Using the PP **noni** (のに), concessive meanings such as *even though* can be expressed with the sentence structure illustrated below. Note that the predicate of Sentence A can also be negated depending upon the statement the speaker wants to make



#### 6.2.18.1 Concessives

In comparison to other concessive expressing conjunctive PPs, such as **kuseni** (くせに: see § 6.2.8.1), **nagara** (ながら: see § 6.2.14.3), **tatte/datte** (たって/だって: see § 6.2.20.1), **te/de** (て/で: see § 6.2.21.1) and the adversative PP **ga** (が: see § 6.2.4.2), the speaker clearly expresses his/her difficulties in understanding or accepting something expressed in Sentence B, by using the PP **noni** (のに). In other words, modality elements, such as surprise, disappointment, anger, frustration and the like, are more covertly expressed

1. Natsu na **noni**, kyou wa samui.  
夏なのに、今日は寒い。  
*Even though it's summer now, it's unusually cold today*
2. Otouto wa netsu ga aru **noni**, pūru ni oyogi ni i-t-ta.  
弟は熱があるのに、プールに泳ぎに行った。  
*My (younger) brother went swimming even though he had a fever. (He's crazy!)*

3. Minna ga ne-te-iru **noni**, aitsu wa oo-goe de uta-t-te-iru!  
皆が寝ているのに、あいつは大声で歌っている。  
*Everybody is asleep, but that guy is singing at the top of his voice! (It's driving me crazy!)* (♂)
4. Yamamoto-san wa hontou no koto o shi-t-te-iru **noni**, oshie-te-kure-nai  
山本さんは本当のことを知っているのに、教えてくれない。  
*Mr/Ms Yamamoto knows the truth, but he/she isn't telling me! (It is frustrating!)*

### 6.2.19 shi (し)

This subsection introduces three semantically different usages of the causal marker PP **shi** (し). The following diagram shows how the PP **shi** (し) can be morphosyntactically employed; the preceding predicate can, of course, also be negated or in the past tense, depending upon the statement the speaker wishes to make



#### 6.2.19.1 Causals: causes/reasons

The PP **shi** (し) in this usage conveys a nuance that a reason/cause given by Sentence A is just one of many reasons the speaker can possibly cite.

1. Ashita wa hayai **shi**, kyou wa kore de shitsurei-shi-masu.  
明日は早いし、今日はこれで失礼します。  
*Well, I have to get up early tomorrow (morning). That's why I'm leaving now.*
2. Kono yaneura-beya wa natsu wa totemo atui **shi**, kan-nai hou ga ii to omou.  
この屋根裏部屋は夏はとても暑いし、借りない方がいいと思う。  
*This attic gets very hot in summer, so I think it's better not to rent it.*

#### 6.2.19.2 Causals (additional information) + Modality

The speaker gives a reason/cause (see Sentence A below) for his/her main statement (see Sentence B below) as additional information. The diagram shows that the subordinate and the main clause are conversed (inversion), which is a characteristic of colloquial Japanese. By changing the syntactic word order in this manner, the speaker can effectively express his/her emotions such as happiness, disappointment, encouragement, etc., depending upon the situation during the conversational discourse.



3. Yatto kore de raku ni naru. Daigaku wa yasumi ni hai-t-ta **shi**.

やっとこれで楽になる。大学は休みに入ったし。  
I can relax at last! The university holidays have begun.

4. Kore kara wa nonbiri iki-te-iko-u. Teinen-taishoku ni na-t-ta shi.  
これからはのんびり生きていこう。定年退職になったし。  
I'm going to live my life more relaxed from now on. I'm now retired.
5. Mou dou demo ii ya. Shiken ni wa ochi-cha-t-ta shi.  
もうどうでもいいや。試験には落ちちゃったし。  
I don't care what's going to happen to me. I failed the exam!

### 6.2.19.3 Causals (causes/reasons) + Copulatives

In this use of the PP **shi** (し), the speaker gives a few or several additional reasons, listing each of them (A, B, C, etc.), in support of his/her main statement (see the diagram below). Theoretically speaking, the speaker can cite as many reasons as he/she wishes, but, in general, only one or two are given. This structure creates the nuance of "not only A, but B", "not only A and B, but C", etc

A	shi	B	shi	C	shi	...	main statement
---	-----	---	-----	---	-----	-----	----------------

6. Kinou wa, o-kane wa nusuma-reru shi, tsuma ni wa donara-reru shi, kodomo ni wa naka-reru shi de taihen da-t-ta.  
昨日は、お金は盗まれるし、妻には怒鳴られるし、子供には泣かれるしで大変だった。  
My money was stolen, and that wasn't all. My wife shouted at me, and, furthermore, my child was incessantly crying! I really had a hard day yesterday.
7. Koko wa kuuki mo ii shi, kuruma mo sukunai shi, kodomo ni totte wa ii tokoro da  
ここは空気もいいし、車も少ないし、子供にとってはいい所だ。  
This place is good for children. Amongst other things, the air is clean and there isn't too much traffic here

### 6.2.20 tatte/datte (たって/だって)

**Tatte** (たって [ta?te]) and **datte** (だって [da?te]) are morphologically formed in the same manner as the **te/de** inflection of the verbs (see § 0.6.1.2). **Datte** (だって) is a phonologically changed form of the PP **tatte** (たって); the voiceless alveolar plosive [t] has changed to the voiced alveolar plosive [d]. The PP **tatte/datte** (たって/だって) has two functions: concessive (see § 6.2.20.1) and restrictive-concessive (see § 6.2.20.2). In both cases, the morphosyntactic forms are the same when combining sentences except for the i-adjectival predicate: its morphological forms are < stem of i-adjective + **ku** + **tatte** > in case of the concessive function, and, for the restrictive-concessive role, < i-adjective + **tatte** >.

#### 6.2.20.1 Concessives

The speaker wishes to express his/her main statement (see Sentence B) irrespective

of his/her hypothesis made in Sentence A, which is marked with the PP **tatte/datte** (たって/だって)

TATTE/DATTE-form of verbs		main sentence
< N + datte > / < N + de attatte >		
< na-adj. + datte > / < na adj. + de attatte >		
i-adj.-stem + ku + tatte		
Sentence A		Sentence B

1. Shin-datte akirameru mono ka!  
死んだって諦めるものか。  
Even if it means the death of me, I shall never give up!
2. Ikura jibun no oya datte, sonna koto wa yurus-e-nai.  
いくら自分の親だって、そんな事は許せない。  
I can't even forgive my parents for that!

### 6.2.20.2 Restrictive-concessives

The speaker accepts something (see Sentence A), but not completely (see Sentence B). Or the speaker recognizes something objectively (see Sentence A), but he/she makes a restrictive comment (see Sentence B) about it. In this use of the PP **tatte** (たっ  
て) after nouns, or i- and na-adjectives, the glottal stop [ʔ] is inserted in front of it: < N + **ttatte** (ったって [ʔta?te]) > and < i-/na-adjective + **ttatte** (ったって [ʔta?te]) >

TATTE or DATTE-form of verbs		main sentence
< N + <b>ttatte</b> > or < N + <b>de attatte</b> >		
< na-adj. + <b>ttatte</b> > or < na-adj. + <b>de attatte</b> >		
i-adj + <b>ttatte</b>		
Sentence A		Sentence B

3. Kankyou ga yoku na-t-tatte, kono kawa de oyog-eru to iu tokoro made wa mada i-t-te-i-nai  
環境が良くなったって、この川で泳げるという所まではまだ行っていない。  
The environment has (for sure) improved, but, yet, it's not good enough to (be able to) swim in this river
4. Mai hōmu ttatte chīsai ie desu yo  
マイホームったって、小さい家ですよ。  
I have (as a matter of fact) my own house, but it's only a small one.

### 6.2.21 te/de (て/で)

The PP **te/de** (て/で) has already been introduced with the TE-form of verbs (see § 0.6.1.2). **De** (で) is a phonologically changed form of the PP **te** (て), and occurs when stems of the verb ends with the voiced plosives [b], [g], or the voiced nasals [m] or [n]. The PP **te/de** (て/で) has seven semantic functions (see §§ 6.2.21.1–6.2.21.7):

concessive, causal, two temporative, copulative, modal and contrastive functions. Furthermore, it is used in adverbial phrases < ... TE > (see § 6.2.21.8), in verb compounds < TE + V3 > (see § 6.2.21.9), and in many modality expressing sentence structures denoting prohibition (prohibitive), permission (permissive), giving advice, and so on (see § 6.2.21.10). Due to the heterogeneous functions of the PP **te/de** (て/で), the context often determines the function in use. Its morphosyntactic connection with the preceding predicate is shown below.

N + na no de	main sentence
na-adj. + na no de	
Stem of i-adj. + ku + te	
TE-form of verbs	
Sentence A	Sentence B

### 6.2.21.1 Concessives

The PP **te/de** (て/で) can mark the concessive content of a statement (see Sentence A) and at the same time express the speaker's emotions, such as anger, exasperation, annoyance, vexation, displeasure, resentment, indignation, frustration, and many other similar feelings. Analogous properties can also be observed with the use of the PP **noni** (のに: see § 6.2.18.1). Semantically, Sentence A is usually a description of a static situation, and therefore the verb compound < TE + Iru > is often applied.

1. Haha wa hontou no koto o shi-t-te-i-te, dama-t-te-i-ta.  
母は本当の事を知っていて、黙っていた。  
*My mother knew the truth, but she didn't tell me. (I'm mad at her! / How could she do that!)*

### 6.2.21.2 Causals: causes/reasons

The PP **te/de** (て/で) can be used to a reason or a cause of/for something.

2. O-kane ga juubun ni na-ku-te, hon ga kae-na-kat-ta.  
お金が十分になくて、本が買えなかった。  
*I didn't have enough money with me, and therefore I couldn't buy any books.*
3. Youji ga deki-te, kaigi ni de-rare-na-kat-ta.  
用事が出来て、会議に出られなかった。  
*Due to some urgent matters, I couldn't attend the conference.*
4. Nihon-go no benkyou ga omoshiro-ku-te yame-rare-nai.  
日本語の勉強が面白くて止められない。  
*Learning Japanese is so interesting that I can't stop.*

### 6.2.21.3 Temporatives: consecutive time sequences

With the PP **te/de** (て/で), actions the speaker takes/took can be listed one after another. The order of the sentences juxtaposed using the PP **te/de** (て/で) corresponds to the time sequence of the actions: A, then B, then C, then D....



5. Chichi wa, asa oki-te, taisou o shi-te, choushoku o tabe-te, kaisha ni i-t-ta.  
父は、朝起きて、体操をして、朝食を食べて、会社に行った。  
*My father got up this morning, did some gymnastics, ate breakfast and then left for work.*

In a similar manner, the speaker can also list actions he/she takes/took by using the TARI-form of the verbs (see § 0.6.1.2). In this case, however, the actions are listed at random and not in time sequence, in which they occurred, as is the case with the TE-form of the verbs. The way in which the speaker observes the actions determines the form of verbal inflection: the TE-form of the verbs is used when the speaker wants to emphasize the time sequence, in which ordered actions are taken or are to be taken; the TARI-form is employed when the speaker just wants to give some examples of actions which are taken or are to be taken (see Sentence 6 below).

6. Chichi wa gorufu o shi-tari, taisou o shi-tari, hon o yon-dari, kouen ni i-t-tari-shi-ta.  
父はゴルフをしたり、体操をしたり、本を読んだり、公園に行ったりした。  
*My father did many different things, such as playing golf, gymnastics, reading books, or going to the park.*

### 6.2.21.4 Temporatives: preceding actions

The action described in Sentence A (see the diagram below) takes place first, and subsequently the action in Sentence B. Thus, in this case, the PP **te/de** (て/で) encodes the preceding temporal aspect. The temporal function mentioned in Subsection 6.2.21.3 has a similar property, however, it gives weight to the listing of actions which takes/took place, whereas the PP **te/de** (て/で) of this subsection draws the attention to which of the two actions occurred before the other.



7. Kekka o mi-te, ketsudan o kudasu.  
結果を見て、決断を下す。  
*I'll see the result first, and then I'll make my decision.*

### 6.2.21.5 Copulatives: coordination — and

Different facts or phenomena can be listed one after another without putting any weight on the time sequence in which they occur. Owing to this semantic nature, the predicate is usually a static description of situations or of properties of things

8. Yasu-ku-te oishii resutoran o shiri-mase-n ka?  
安くて美味しいレストランを知りませんか。  
*Do you know any cheap and good restaurant?*



## 6.2.21.6 Manner

The ways or the manner of actions/things can be marked using the PP **te/de** (て/で).

9. Aru-i-te eki made iki-nasai.  
歩いて駅まで行きなさい。  
*Walk to the station!*
10. Musuko wa basu-tei kara hashi-t-te kae-t-te-ki-ta  
息子はバス停から走って帰って来た。  
*Our son ran back home from the bus stop*
11. Yoroko-n-de kono shigoto o hikiuke-ta.  
喜んでこの仕事を引き受けた。  
*I took this job with pleasure*

## 6.2.21.7 Contrastives: contrasts

In conjunction with the PP **wa** (は: see § 3.4.9.2), a contrast of the two distinct things can be marked using the PP **te/de** (て/で).

12. Ane ga su-n-de-iru tokoro wa, natsu wa atsuku-te, fuyu wa samui.  
姉が住んでいる所は、夏は暑くて、冬は寒い。  
*The place where my (elder) sister lives is hot in the summer, but cold in the winter.*

The PP **wa** (は) is used altogether at three places in Sentence 12 above. The first PP **wa** (は) is a topic marker, whereas the remaining two PPs are contrast markers.

## 6.2.21.8 Adverbials

The PP **te/de** (て/で) is used in many adverbial phrases.<sup>20</sup> As can be seen from Table 25, there is a distinct relationship between the syntactic cases (ni-, o-, to- and kara- postpositional case markers) and the verbs used (Muraki 1996: 325-334).

The English equivalent to the Japanese adverbial phrases mentioned below are just meant as examples; the exact meaning has to be determined from the context in which these phrases are used. Therefore, the following Japanese sentences can be translated quite differently, depending on the context in which they are used.

13. Kyonen ni kurabe-te kotoshi wa samui  
去年に比べて今年は寒い。  
*Compared to last year, this year is cold*
14. Watashi ni to-t-te, Nihon-go wa kantan da  
私にとって、日本語は簡単だ。  
*For me, Japanese is an easy language*

<sup>20</sup> Momiyama (2002: 91-94) refers to this language phenomenon as a grammaticalization of verbs, i. e. verbs have changed their functions to case marking or other categories of PPs

Table 25: Adverbial phrases using the PP **te/de** (て/で)

~ ni atatte	~に当たって	concerning ..., in doing ...
~ ni atte	~にあって	as ...
~ ni chokumen-shite	~に直面して	confronted by ...; in confrontation of ...
~ ni itatte	~に至って	owing to ...; due to ...
~ ni hanshite	~に反して	against ...; contrary to ...
~ ni kanshite	~に関して	concerning ..., regarding ...; about ...
~ ni kurabete	~に比べて	comparing with ...; in contrast with ...
~ ni taishite	~に対して	for ...; against ...; towards ...; contrary to ...
~ ni totte	~にとって	for ...; to ...
~ ni tsuite	~について	about ...; on ...
~ ni tsuzuite	~に続いて	after ...; following ...
~ ni saishite	~に際して	at ...; during ...; on ...; upon ...
~ o fukumete	~を含めて	including ...
~ o motte	~を以て	with ...; through ...
~ o tsuujite	~を通じて	through ...; per ...; throughout ...
~ to kanren-shite	~と関連して	in connection with ...
~ to shite	~として	as ...; for ...
~ kara mite	~から見て	from the standpoint of ...
~ kara kangaete etc.	~から考えて	concerning ..., considering ...

15. Toukyou ni iku no wa watashi o fukume-te goukei go-nin da.  
東京に行くのは私を含めて合計五人だ。  
*There are altogether five people including myself, who are going to Tokyo.*
16. Yamada-san o tsuujite kono koto o shi-t-ta.  
山田さんを通じてこの事を知った。  
*I came to know about this from Mr/Ms Yamada*  
*I was informed of this by Mr/Ms Yamada.*
17. Ima no joukyou kara mi-te, keizai no kaifuku wa sore hodo hayaku nai daro-u.  
今の状況から見て、経済の回復はそれほど早くないだろう。  
*Considering the present economic situation, it won't be recovering very soon.*

## 6.2.21.9 Verb compounds: &lt; TE + V3 &gt;

Some verb compounds, consisting of the TE-form (see § 0.6.1.2) and the V3-form of verbs (see §§ 0.6.1.1), are used for aspectual<sup>21</sup> or pragmatic expressions (see Table 26). Since the functions of these compound-verbs are very numerous, their inclusion here is only meant to scratch the surface by way of a few examples.

<sup>21</sup> Kageyama and Hofmann (1990: 82-113) depict notions of tense and aspect including aspectual properties of verbs. See also Katsuki (1991: 82-113) for an introduction to this topic.

Table 26: Aspectual verb compound &lt; TE+V3 &gt;

Compound verbs		Main functions
Te-i·ru	～ている	progressive; static situation; customary actions
TE-ar·u	～てある	static situation; precautions actions/measures
TE-ok·u	～ておく	unchanged situation, precautions actions/measures
TE-mi·ru	～てみる	trying something out to see how things are
TE-shima·u	～てしまう	perfective; modality (regret, anger, etc.) <sup>22</sup>
TE-kuru	～てくる	direction: aspective (gradual changes, etc.)
TE-ik·u	～ていく	direction: aspective (gradual changes, etc.)

18. Ima nani o shi-te-i-masu ka? (progressive)  
今何をしていますか。  
What are you doing now?
19. Biru ga reizouko ni hiyashi-te-ar. (stative aspect)  
ビールが冷蔵庫に冷やしてある。  
Beer is in the fridge (Somebody/I put it there so that you could have a cold beer.)
20. Biru o reizou-ko ni hiyashi-te-oi-te-kudasai. (stative aspect)  
ビールを冷蔵庫に冷やしておいて下さい。  
Please put the beer in the fridge (so that somebody/I can drink a cold beer).
21. Kono kikai o tsuka-t-te-mi-te-kudasai  
この機械を使ってみてください。  
Try out this machine (and see how it works)!
22. Kesa hayaku haha ni okosa-re-te-shima-t-ta.<sup>22</sup>  
今朝早く母に起こされてしまった。  
My mother woke me up early this morning. (She could have let me sleep longer!)
23. Mou shorui ni me o tooshi-te-shima-t-ta. (perfective/completive aspect)  
もう書類に目を通してしまった。  
I have already looked through all the papers.
24. Kankyou-mondai ni kanshi-te kanshin ga takama-t-te-ki-ta. (inceptive/inchoative aspect)  
環境問題に関して関心が高まってきた。  
The interest in environmental problems is growing
25. Sensou de takusan no hito ga shi-n-de-i-t-ta. (durative aspect)  
戦争でたくさんの人が死んでいった。  
Many people died during the war.

<sup>22</sup> Iwasaki (1993: 10-12) elucidates the verbal compounds TE-shimau and TE-morau/kureru from the viewpoint of subjectivity expressing the speaker's negative or favourable evaluation of actions taken

The following compound verbs < TE + V3 > are so-called 'verbs of giving and receiving' which have benefactive meanings (see Table 27). When using these verbal compounds, the speaker has to choose the right verb among many verbs which all have the same meaning of *to give* or *to receive*. The determinant criteria employed in such cases are grammatical categories such as the grammatical person (first/second/third person), or pragmatic features such as social hierarchy of the speaker and the interlocutor (higher/lower in the hierarchy), the degree of politeness expressed (polite/neutral), intimacy between the speaker and the hearer, the direction of things which are given or received, and other factors. A detailed explanation of these expressions is omitted due to the complexity of their syntactic and semantic roles.<sup>23</sup>

Table 27: Beneficiary verb compounds &lt; TE + V3 &gt;

Compound verbs		Meanings
TE-yar·u	～てやる	to do something for somebody (2nd or 3rd person); the benefactor is in a higher position than the benefactee
TE-age·ru	～て上げる	to do something for somebody (2nd or 3rd person); the benefactor is higher than or on the same level as the benefactee in position
TE-sashiage·ru	～て差し上げる	to do something for somebody (2nd or 3rd person); the benefactor is lower in position than the benefactee
TE-mora·u	～てもらう	somebody (2nd or 3rd person) does something for me/us; the benefactor is close to me/us and is lower than or on the same level as the benefactee (I/we) in the hierarchy; the syntactic subject of the sentence is the 1st person, i.e. 'I' or 'we'
TE-itadak·u	～て頂く	somebody (2nd or 3rd person) does something for me/us; the benefactor is not close to me/us and is higher in the hierarchy than the benefactee (I/we)
TE-kure·ru	～てくれる	somebody (2nd or 3rd person) does something for me/us; the benefactor is close to me/us and is lower than or on the same level as the benefactee (I/we) in the hierarchy; the syntactic subject of the sentence is the 2nd or 3rd person
TE-kudasar·u	～て下さる	somebody (2nd or 3rd person) does something for me/us; the benefactor is not close to me/us and is higher than or on the same level as the benefactee (I/we) in the hierarchy; the syntactic subject of the sentence is the 2nd or 3rd person

<sup>23</sup> See Katsuki (1991: 40-56) for an introduction to this topic, and Uda (1994: 173-219) and Matsumoto (1996: 44-62) for further linguistic discussions

26. Inu ni hone o nage-te-ya-t-ta.

犬に骨を投げてやった。

*I threw a bone to my dog*

27. Chichi ga watashi ni ka-t-te-kure-ta hon o musuko ni yo-n-de-age-ta.

父が私に買ってくれた本を息子に読んで上げた。

*I read a book for my son that my father bought for me.*

28. Chichi ni ka-t-te-mora-t-ta hon o musuko ni age-ta.

父に買ってもらった本を息子に上げた。

*I gave my son a book that my father bought for me*

## 6.2.21.10 Modality expressions

Expressions that designate prohibition (prohibitive), permission (permissive), desire (desiderative), etc. have the PP **te/de** (て/で) in their sentence structures as shown in Table 28.<sup>24</sup>

Table 28: Modality expressions using the PP **te/de** (て/で)

Complex predicates/ verb compounds		Meanings
~ TE wa naranai	~てはならない	<i>must not</i>
~ TE wa ikenai.	~てはいけない	<i>must not</i>
~ TE mo ii (temo ii) <sup>25</sup>	~てもいい	<i>can, may</i>
~ TE hoshii	~て欲しい	<i>I want somebody to do something</i>
~ TE yamanu/yama-nai	~て止まぬ/止ま ない	<i>cannot help ...ing</i>

29. O-kane o nusu-n-de wa nara-nai.

お金を盗んではならない。

*You must not steal money*

30. Inu o niku-ya no naka ni tsure-te-i-t-te wa ik-e-nai

犬を肉屋の中に連れて行ってはいけない。

*You may not take your dog with you into the butcher's*

31. Koko ni chuusha-shi-te mo
- <sup>25</sup>
- ii desu ka?

ここに駐車してもいいですか。

*Can I park my car here?/May I park my car here?*

<sup>24</sup> Kageyama and Hofmann (1990: 68-81) elucidate English modals (capacity, generic, idiomatic, deontic and epistemic modals) with which the Japanese modality expressions listed in Table 28 can be compared. For general discussions on this topic see Palmer (1998).

<sup>25</sup> The PP **temo** (ても: cf. § 6.2.22) can be morphologically divided in to the PPs **te** (て) and **mo** (も).

32. Watashi wa anata ni kono shigoto o shi-te-hoshii.

私はあなたにこの仕事をして欲しい。

*I want you to take this job.*

33. Ryoukoku-kankei ga kaizen-sareru koto o nozo-n-de-yama-nai

両国関係が改善されることを望んで止まない。

*I really hope that the bilateral relations of these two countries will improve / I can't help wishing that the bilateral relations of these two countries will improve.*

## 6.2.22 temo/demo (ても/でも)

The PP **demo** (でも) is a phonologically changed form of the PP **temo** (ても): the voiceless alveolar plosive [t] changes into the voiced alveolar plosive [d] when the stem of the preceding consonant verb ends with the voiced plosives [b] or [g], or the voiced nasals [m] or [n] (see § 0.6.1 2). The PP **temo/demo** (ても/でも) has a concessive function. Its connection to the preceding predicate is schematized below

TEMO- or DEMO-form of verbs i-adj -stem + ku + temo Noun + demo na-adj. + demo	
Sentence A	Sentence B

## 6.2.22.1 Concessives

Compared to other concessive conjunctive PPs, such as **kuseni** (<せに: see § 6.2.8.1), **nagara** (ながら: see § 6.2.14.3), **noni** (のに: see § 6.2.18 1) and **tatte/datte** (たって [ta?te]/だって [da?te]: see § 6.2.20.1), the concessive meaning marked with the PP **temo/demo** (ても/でも) is neutral since its modality function is not particularly evident.

1. Jinsei ga tsura-ku-temo, gaman-shi-you.

人生が辛くても、我慢しよう。

*Even if it's a hard life, I'll manage to endure it*

2. Sono koto o ano hito ni hanashi-temo muda da.

その事をあの人に話しても無駄だ。

*Anyway, it won't be any good, even if you talk to him about it.*

3. Ashita ame ga fu-t-temo, Fuji-san ni iku tsumon da

明日雨が降っても、富士山に行くつもりだ。

*Even if it rains tomorrow, I will climb Mt Fuji*

4. Anata no tegami wa, nan-do yo-n-demo wakara-nai

あなたの手紙は、何度読んでも分からない。

*No matter how many times I read your letter, I don't understand what you want to say*



## 6.2.23 to (と)

The PP to (と) has three primary semantic functions: conditional, temporative, and concessive roles. The first primary function, the conditional function, is further sub-categorized into three secondary classifications: general conditions, customary actions/habits/phenomena and adverbial expressions. From a morphosyntax point of view, there are two different ways of combining sentences using the PP to (と): the first two functions, *conditional* and *temporal*, simply require the V3 verb inflectional form to be placed in front of the PP to (と: see §§ 6.2.23.1, 6.2.23.2, 6.2.23.3 and 6.2.23.4); in the case of its concessive function, several different verbal inflectional forms can be used (see § 6.2.23.5).

## 6.2.23.1 Conditionals in a narrow sense

In this case, the content of a condition (see Sentence A) is marked with the PP to (と). Sentence B then designates a conclusion drawn out of the statement made in Sentence A. It should be noted that the predicate of Sentence A must always be in the non-past tense, i.e. the V3 form of the verb (see § 0.6.1.1).



Sentence A      Sentence B

- Hyaku-yūro o Nihon-en ni naosu to ichi-man-ni-sen-en hodo ni naru.  
百ユーロを日本円に直すとい万二千円ほどになる。  
*If you change 100 euros into Japanese yen, it amounts to approximately 12,000 yen.*
- Ashita wa tenki ni naru to ii desu ne.  
明日は天気になるといいですね。  
*Wouldn't it be nice if the weather were fine tomorrow?*
- Ame ga nagaku tsuzuku to, kouzui no osore ga aru.  
雨が長く続くと、洪水の恐れがある。  
*If it rains for a long time, there's a danger of flooding.*

## 6.2.23.2 Aspectives: habitual (a habit); iterative (recurrence)

Sentence A is a condition for Sentence B; Sentence B signifies a habitual action, a happening or a phenomenon. In other words, whenever A occurs, B takes place or appears.



Sentence A      Sentence B

- Haru ni naru to sakura no hana ga saku.  
春になると桜の花が咲く。  
*When the spring arrives, cherry trees blossom*

- Ando hito wa sutoresu ga tamaru to, sugu o-sake o nomu.  
あの人はストレスが溜まると、直ぐお酒を飲む。  
*Whenever he's/she's stressed, he/she starts drinking.*

## 6.2.23.3 Conditionals: adverbials

Certain conditional expressions, using the PP to (と), have an idiomatic use as an adverbial



Sentence A      Sentence B

- Kyou no terebi no nyūsu ni yoru to, terorisuto ga suu-nin tsukama-t-ta souda.  
今日のテレビのニュースによると、テロリストが数人捕まったそうだ。  
*According to today's news on the TV, some terrorists were arrested*
- Gutai-teki ni iu to, kondo no ryokou ni wa yon-juu-man-en kakaru.  
具体的に言うと、今度の旅行には四十万円かかる。  
*Concretely speaking, my next trip will cost 400,000 yen*

## 6.2.23.4 Temporatives (consecutive actions in the past) + Aspectives (immediate actions) + Perceptions (recognition of something) (see § 6.2.25.2)

The use of the PP to (と) marks point in time at which the speaker recognizes that something occurs (see Sentence B) almost simultaneously with the action mentioned in Sentence A. In this use, the PP to (と) can be replaceable with the PP ya (や) which shares the same role (や: see § 6.2.29.1).



Sentence A      Sentence B

- Chichi wa kaji to kiku to odoroi-te tobi-oki-ta.  
父は火事と聞くと驚いて跳び起きた。  
*My father sprang out of bed when he heard somebody shouting "Fire!"*
- Aka-chan wa watashi no kao o miru to, naki-dashi-ta.  
赤ちゃんは私の顔を見ると、泣き出した。  
*The baby began to cry when he/she saw my face*

## 6.2.23.5 Concessives

The following sentence pattern is used to express a concessive meaning using the PP to (と). This expression usually has two subjunctive clauses (Sentences A and B) and one main clause (Sentence C). The second subjunctive clause, Sentence B, can be left out without changing the meaning of the statement. The English meaning of *irrespective of* or *regardless of* corresponds closely to the meaning of this Japanese expression. *Regardless of A and B, it is C*. Statements expressed with Sentences A

and B are in opposition, i.e. Sentence A is in the affirmative and Sentence B in the negative.

N/na-adj. + de arou i-adj.-stem + karou V6 + u/you	to	(N/na-adj. + de) nakarou (i-adj.-stem + ku) nakarou V1 (vocalic/suru-V/kuru-V) + mai V3 (consonantal V) + mai	to	
--	----	--	----	--

Sentence A

Sentence B

Sentence C

10. Omoshiro-karo-u to, omoshiro-ku na-karo-u to, kono shigoto o shina-kere ba nara-nai.

面白かろうと、面白くなかろうと、この仕事をしなければならない。  
*Irrespective of whether this job is interesting or not, I have to do it.*  
*Whether I like it or not, I have to do this job.*

11. Kono keikaku ni sansei-shi-you to shi-mai to anata no katte da  
この計画に賛成しようとしまいとあなたの勝手だ。  
*It doesn't bother me at all whether you are for or against this plan.*

12. Ryoushin ga nan to io-u to, watashi wa kaisha o yameru.  
両親が何と言わうと、私は会社を辞める。  
*I'm going to leave the company whatever my parents say.*

### 6.2.24 tokorode (ところで)

The PP **tokorode** (ところで) conveys a concessive function and is morpho-syntactically conjoined exclusively with the TA-form (see § 0.6.1.2) of the preceding verb as illustrated below. It can be morphologically further divided into two words, namely, the pseudo-noun **tokoro** (所) and the PP **de** (で), as described in Section 1.3

TA tokorode	
-------------	--

Sentence A

Sentence B

#### 6.2.24.1 Concessives

The concessive meaning *even if* can be expressed with the PP **tokorode** (ところで): *Even if A, it is B*. By using the PP **tokorode** (ところで), an implication arises that the present situation, described in Sentence B, will not change, even if something is carried out that is described in Sentence A.

1. Kono koto o ano hito ni hanashi-ta tokorode muda da  
このことをあの人に話したところで無駄だ。  
*You can talk to him/her about it, but it'll all be in vain*
2. Kuya-n-de-mi-ta tokorode hajimara-nai.  
悔やんでみたところで始まらない。

*No matter how much you regret it, it won't change a thing*

3. Ikura iso-i-da tokorode, densha ni wa mou ma ni awa-nai.  
いくら急いだところで、電車にはもう間に合わない。  
*You can hurry as much as you like, but you won't be able to catch your train any more*

### 6.2.25 tokoroga (ところが)

Two functions are ascribed to the PP **tokoroga** (ところが): concessive (see § 6.2.25.1) and temporative (see § 6.2.25.2). It is always attached to the preceding verb with the TA-form of the verb as schematized below. Morphologically, it can also be analysed as a compound of the pseudo-noun **tokoro** (所) and the PP **ga** (が) as explained in Section 1.3

TA tokoroga	
-------------	--

Sentence A

Sentence B

#### 6.2.25.1 Concessives

Concessive meanings such as *although* or *though* can be expressed using the PP **tokoroga** (ところが) along with an inherent nuance that the speaker is making the assertion that something is insufficient, not good enough, unsatisfactory or even inferior described in Sentence B.

1. Sukoshi gurai doryoku-shi-ta tokoroga, ima kara de wa mun da  
少しぐらい努力したところが、今からでは無理だ。  
*Even if you work harder from now on, it is now too late.*

#### 6.2.25.2 Temporatives (consecutive) + Perceptions (recognition of something)

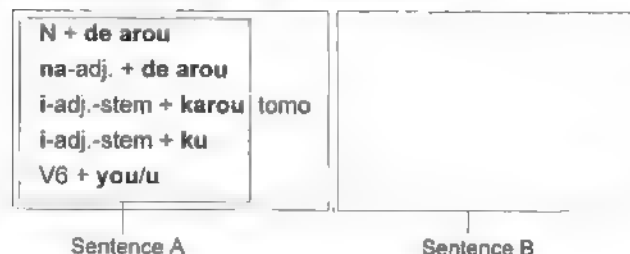
The temporal and aspectual features of actions/phenomena can be marked using the PP **tokoroga** (ところが). An action mentioned in Sentence A was carried out and followed by an action in Sentence B. In addition, Sentence B is something that the speaker recognizes soon after the action A has taken place. In this respect, the PP **tokoroga** (ところが) has a similar function to the PP **to** (と; see § 6.2.23.4). However, they cannot always be used interchangeably. In case of the PP **to** (と), the action described in Sentence A is of a non-volitional nature, whereas the PP **tokoroga** (ところが) marks something where the agent of the action has a certain intention to do something. Therefore, the compound verb construction **TE-miru** is often used in Sentence A (see Sentences 2 and 3 below) in order to express the intention of the agent of the action. Notice that **ga** (が) is sometimes omitted.

2. Kono shousetsu o yo-n-de-mi-ta tokoro(ga), mattaku omoshiro-ku-na-kat-ta  
この小説を読んでみたところ(が)、全く面白くなかった。  
*I read this novel, but found out that it was not at all interesting.*
3. Sushi o tsuku-i-te-mi-ta tokoro(ga), umaku ika-na-kat-ta.

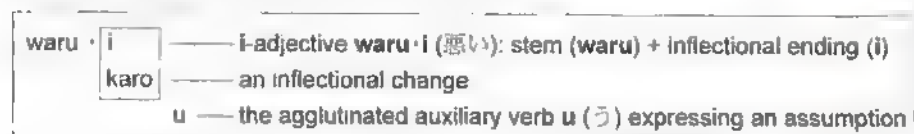
寿司を作ってみたところ(が)、うまくいかなかった。  
*I tried to make some sushi, but it didn't work*

### 6.2.26 tomo (とも)

The PP **tomo** (とも) has two semantic functions: concessive (see § 6.2.26.1) and restrictive roles (see §§ 6.2.26.2 and 6.2.26.3). The following diagram illustrates its conjunction with the preceding predicate.



In the case of the predicative i-adjective, there are two ways of forming the conjunction (see Sentence 2 below). The morphological analysis that follows clarifies one of these two possibilities. The i-adjective **waru**・i (悪い, *bad, wrong, wicked, evil*, etc.) has been taken as an example. Notice also that the auxiliary verbs that have an i-adjectival inflection, such as **na**・i (ない/negation), **ta**・i (たい/wishes), **ma**・i (まい/negative assumptions/intentions) and **rashi**・i (らしい/assumptions; appearance) belong to this category (see Sentence 1 below).



#### 6.2.26.1 Concessives

The concessive marker **tomo** (とも) denotes a firm determination, decision, intention or plan of the speaker. It is frequently used in conjunction with interrogatives, such as **nani/nan** (何: *what*), **donna** (どんな: *what kind of*), **itsu** (いつ: *when*), **doko** (どこ: *where*), **dare** (誰: *who*), etc. Together they create the English equivalents of *whatever, whatsoever, whenever, wherever, whoever*, etc. (see Sentences 2, 3 and 4).

1. Konna koto wa iwa-re-na-ku **tomo** shi t-te-iru.  
 こんな事は言われなくとも知っている。  
*You don't have to tell me! I know.*
2. Donna ni tsuraku **tomo** gaman-suru./Donna ni tsura-karo-u **tomo** gaman-suru.  
 どんなに辛くとも我慢する。/どんなに辛かろうとも我慢する。  
*However hard it is, I will endure it. / However hard it might be, I will endure it.*
3. Nan to iwa-re-you **tomo**, watashi wa jibun no shinnen o kaeru tsumon wa nai

何と言われようとも、私は自分の信念を変えるつもりはない。  
*Whatever you say, I have no intention of changing my principles.*

4. Doko de aro-u **tomo**, itsu de aro-u **tomo**, nan de aro-u **tomo**, tasuke ga hitsuyou na toki wa shira-se-te-kudasai  
 どこであろうとも、いつであろうとも、何であろうとも、助けが必要な時は知らせて下さい。  
*It doesn't matter where you are, when or what it might be; please let me know if you need my help*

#### 6.2.26.2 Restrictives: minimum/maximum limits

The PP **tomo** (とも) marking a temporal or quantitative limit is found in idiomatic expressions. It usually designates a maximum or minimum limit and is interchangeable with the conjunctional PP **mo** (も: see § 6.2.9.2). Note that adverbial PP **mo** (も) has a similar function of marking a maximum limit (も: see § 5.2.11.8). As for the conjunction of the PP **tomo** (とも) to the preceding predicate, only the predicative i-adjective can be used which is schematized below:



5. Osoku **tomo** roku-ji made ni wa uchi ni kae-t-te-ki-nasai.  
 遅くとも六時までには家に帰って来なさい。  
*You have to be back home by six o'clock at the latest.*
6. Tango o sukunaku **tomo** ha-s-sen-go gurai wa oboe-na-kere-ba-nara-nai.  
 単語を少なくとも八千語ぐらいは覚えなければならない。  
*At the very least, you have to learn a vocabulary of approximately 8,000 words.*
7. Ashita no kaigi ni sanku suru no wa ooku **tomo** juu-nin gurai daro-u.  
 明日の会議に参加するのは多くとも十人ぐらいだろう。  
*At the very most, ten people will attend the conference tomorrow*

#### 6.2.26.3 Quantitatives: holistic quantities

The PP **tomo** (とも) can also mark a holistic quantity with the meaning of *all*

8. Kodomo wa san-nin **tomo** byouki de ne-te-iru.  
 子供は三人とも病気で寝ている。  
*All three children are sick in bed*

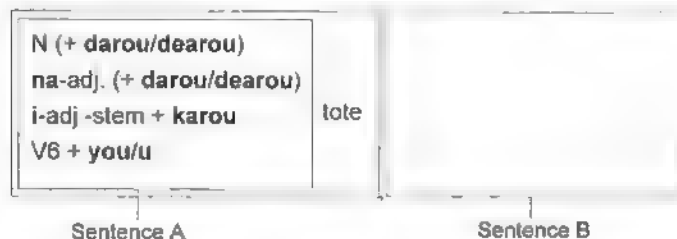
### 6.2.27 tote (とて)

The PP **tote** (とて) has a concessive function. In all cases, there are two distinct ways of agglutinating the PP to the preceding predicate (see the two diagrams below). Either way, the semantic meaning of the statements remains unchanged.



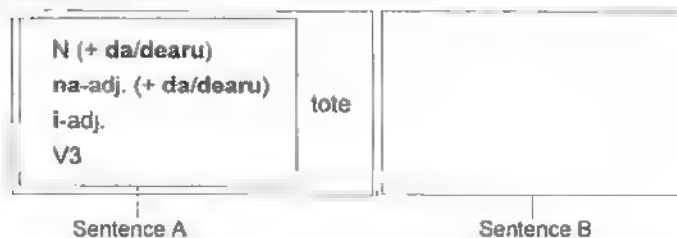
## 6.2.27.1 Concessives

In conjunction with the assumptive auxiliary verbs **you** (よう) or **u** (う) and interrogative words, a concessive statement meaning *whatever, whatsoever, whoever, and wherever* can be expressed by using the PP **tote** (とて). Therefore, this PP is interchangeable with the PP **tomo** (とも: see § 6.2.26.1). The following sentence scheme is the first of two possible structures.



- Ikura sono hanashi ga jiritsu (de aro-u) tote, watashi no kangae wa kawara-nai.  
いくらその話が事実(であろう)とて、私の考えは変わらない。  
*Even if the story is true, I won't change my mind*
- Ikura ganbaro-u tote kono shiken ni wa ukara-nai.  
いくら頑張ろうとて、この試験には受からない。  
*However hard I study, I won't be able to pass this exam*

The second possible sentence scheme is outlined below — it shares the same semantic meaning with the one outlined above.



Note that the above predicates can be in the past tense or negated depending upon the statement the speaker wishes to make.

- Shiken ni ukara-na-kat-ta tote, betsu ni rakutan-suru hitsuyou wa nai.  
試験に受からなかったとて、別に落胆する必要はない。  
*Even if you didn't pass the exam, you don't have to be disappointed*
- O-kane ga aru tote, koutoku da to wa kagira-nai.  
お金があるとて、幸福だとは限らない。  
*Even if one has a lot of money, it doesn't necessarily mean that one is happy.*

## 6.2.28 tsutsu (つつ)

The PP **tsutsu** (つつ) has three different semantic functions: concessive (see § 6.2.28.1), temporative (see § 6.2.28.2) and aspective (see § 6.2.28.3). Its morphological form for combining sentences, namely < V2 + **tsutsu** >, is the same for all three roles, but its syntactic structure consisting of a subordinate clause (see Sentence A below) and a main clause (see Sentence B) differs depending upon its function

## 6.2.28.1 Concessives

The PP **tsutsu** (つつ) marks a contrast among circumstances creating English equivalents such as *although*. It is frequently used in conjunction with the PP **mo** (も). **tsutsu mo** (つつも). It is interchangeable with the PP **nagara** (ながら: see § 6.2.14.3). However, the concessive meaning of a statement made with the PP **tsutsu** (つつ) is more formal and neutral than a statement made with the PP **nagara** (ながら).



- Kiken o juubun shiri **tsutsu** (mo), fuyu-yama ni nobo-t-ta.  
危険を十分知りつつ(も)、冬山に登った。  
*Even knowing how dangerous it could be, I nevertheless went mountain climbing in the winter*
- Warui to wa shiri **tsutsu**, uso o tsu-i-te-shima-t-ta.  
悪いとは知りつつ、嘘を吐いてしまった。  
*I knew it was not right, but I still lied to him/her.*
- Kono otoko ni wa zenka ga aru to shiri **tsutsu**, unten-shu to shi-te yato-t-ta.  
この男には前科があると知りつつ、運転手として雇った。  
*Although I knew that he had a criminal record, I employed him as our driver.*

## 6.2.28.2 Aspectives: two synchronous actions

The PP **tsutsu** (つつ) can be used when two different actions A (see Sentence A below) and B (see Sentence B below) are carried out at the same time. Sentence A is a description of manner how action B, which is the main statement, was carried out. The agent of these two actions is the same person and is the syntactic subject of both Sentences A and B. However, it is often omitted



- Kanada ni iru kodomo-tachi no koto o omoi **tsutsu**, Nihon de shigoto o shi-ta.  
カナダにいる子供達のことを思いつつ、日本で仕事をした。  
*While thinking of my children in Canada, I carried on working in Japan.*

## 5. Arubaito-shi o tsutsu, benkyou ni hage-n-da

アルバイトをしつつ、勉強に励んだ。

I studied hard all the time earning money by doing part-time jobs.

## 6.2.28.3 Aspectives: present progressive actions or phenomena

Things in progress can be expressed with the sentence structure below. The verb **aru** (ある), corresponding to the English verb *to be*, means that something is in a particular situation. Therefore, in the sentence structure outlined below, the entry < V2 + tsutsu > has a function of depicting manner how things are.

V2 + tsutsu	aru
-------------	-----

## 6. Nihon-keizai wa nen-nen akka-shi tsutsu aru.

日本経済は年々悪化しつつある。

The Japanese economy is becoming worse

## 7. Nihon-go-gakushuu-sha no kazu wa fue tsutsu aru.

日本語学習者の数は増えつつある。

The number of students who are learning Japanese is increasing.

## 8. Seiji-joukyou wa kinpaku-shi tsutsu aru.

政治状況は緊迫しつつある。

The political situation is becoming tense.

## 6.2.29 ya (や)

Semantically, the PP **ya** (や) has an aspectual role and is used as illustrated in the following syntactic structure:

V3	ya	ina	ya	
----	----	-----	----	--

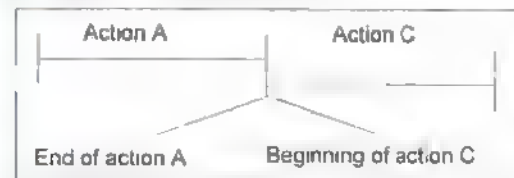
Sentence A    Sentence B    Sentence C

Sentence B is omissible; **ina** (否) has the literal meaning of *not*; **ina ya** (否や) means *once ... as soon as ... the moment that ...* and the like.

## 6.2.29.1 Aspectives: immediate actions

By using the PP **ya** (や), the speaker can express an aspectual situation that the action C (see Sentence C above) took place instantaneously after the action A (see Sentence A) has been completed. Sentence B is simply a negation of Sentence A and is optional, but by employing it, the sense of immediateness of action C becomes more pronounced. The PP **to** (と), with the similar function (see § 6.2.23 4), differs from the PP **ya** (や) in that the manner of the expressions with **ya** (や) emphasizes the immediate and instantaneous nature of action C (see Sentence C) much stronger than is the case with the use of the PP **to** (と).

Diagram 5: Immediate actions



## 1. Ie ni hairu ya, chichi ni donara-re-ta

家に入るや、父に怒鳴られた。

Upon entering the house, my father shouted at me. / Immediately after I entered the house, my father shouted at me

## 2. Takushi ni noru ya, ame ga furidashi-ta.

タクシ-に乗るや、雨が降り出した。

No sooner had I got into the taxi, it began to rain.

## 3. Haha wa chichi no jiko no koto o shiru ya, sugusama byouin ni hashi-t-te-i-t-ta

母は父の事故の事を知るや、直ぐさま病院に走っていった。

The moment my mother was informed about my father's accident, she ran to the hospital

## Chapter 7

### Modality expressing PPs

Modality expressing PPs designate the emotions or stance of the speaker<sup>26</sup> Morpho-syntactically they are attached to the predicate at the end of the sentence. Because of their sentient properties, the examples in Section 7.2 are all written in a conversational style, thus expressing the opinions and feelings of the speaker more clearly. It should be noted that this inevitably leads to grammatical deviations from Standard Japanese. This chapter first outlines the general features of the modality expressing PPs and follows on with a detailed explanation of their concrete usages. Altogether twenty-six PPs are treated as modality expressing PPs in this book (see Table 29).<sup>27</sup>

#### 7.1 Main features

Modality expressing PPs encode the speaker's emotional or psychological attitudes to the statement he/she has made and are attached to the end of the sentence (Tokieda 1986: 185; Watanabe 1992: 36-55) as schematized below (cf. § 2.5). A variety of distinct sentient notions can be encoded using these PPs (see Tables 30 and 32). This subsection explores their primary characteristics



##### 7.1.1 Interchangeability

Table 30 clarifies the interchangeability of different modality expressing PPs. For example, in the case of a desiderative denoting a desire or wish of the speaker, there are eight different possible PPs to choose from: **ga** (が), **ka** (か), **kashira** (かしら), **kedo** (けど)/**kedomo** (けども)/**keredo** (けれど)/**keredomo** (けれども) and **na** (な). Some PPs can be interchanged without making a difference to any nuances (see §§ 7.1.1.1 and 7.1.1.2), and some affect different connotations (see §§ 7.1.1.3 and 7.1.1.4).

##### 7.1.1.1 Interchangeability of PPs for expressing impatience

The modality expressing use of the PPs **tara** (たら)/**ttara** (ったら) can be replaced with the PPs **teba** (てば)/**tteba** (tteば) as both PPs implicate the impatience of the speaker (see §§ 7.2.16.1 and 7.2.17.1). However, the interjectional PPs **tara** (たら) and **teba**

<sup>26</sup> Maynard (1997: 83-93; 2002) also points out that the Japanese language is rich in emotional expressions

<sup>27</sup> The traditional Grammar of Classical and Modern Japanese classify the Japanese PPs into six different categories: **kaku-joshi** (格助詞), **kakari-joshi** (係助詞), **fuku-joshi** (副助詞), **setsuzoku-joshi** (接続助詞), **kantou-joshi** (間投助詞) and **shuu-joshi** (終助詞). Syntactically speaking, the **kantou-joshi** (間投助詞) is placed after entres (constituents/entities) such as the subject, the object, adverbials, and other entities, whereas the **shuu-joshi** (終助詞) is agglutinated at the end of a main clause. This handbook treats these two categories as one group due to their semantic features that they all mark emotional feelings or attitudes of the speaker to a proposition



Table 29: The number of functions for each modality expressing PP (cf. Table 30)

Postpositions	Number of functions	Postpositions	Number of functions
1. e	1	14. no	4
2. ga	4	15. sa	6
3. i	8	16. tara/tara	3
4. ka	12	17. teba/tteba	2
5. kashira	3	18. tomo	2
6. ke/kke	2	19. wa	3
7. kedo/kedomo/ keredo/keredomo	3	20. wai	3
8. koto	4	21. ya	6
9. mono	3	22. yai	3
10. monka/monoka	2	23. yara	1
11. na/naa	8	24. yo	8
12. ne/nee	7	25. ze	3
13. ni	1	26. zo	5

(てば) with this functionality are becoming vestigial, so that **ttara** (ったら) and **tteba** (ってば) are now most commonly used. There is also a gender restriction on their usage. Sentences such as Sentence 1 below, using the morphological conjunction < V5 + **ttara/tteba** >, are usually used by men, while expressions such as Sentence 2 below, with the morphological merger < TE + **ttara/tteba** >, can be employed by both men and women

1. Hayaku shiro-**ttara**!/Hayaku shiro-**tteba**!  
早くしろったら! / 早くしろってば!  
*Hurry up! (I can't wait any longer!) (♂)*
2. Hayaku shi-te-**ttara**!/Hayaku shi-te-**tteba**!  
早くしてったら! / 早くしてってば!  
*Hurry up! (I can't wait any longer!) (♂/♀)*

### 7.1.1.2 Interchangeability of PPs for expressing dissatisfaction/desperation

The speaker's dissatisfaction with his/her situation or with the addressee can be marked using the PPs **kedo** (けど), **kedomo** (けども), **keredo** (けれど), or **keredomo** (けれども) (see § 7.2.7.3). The speaker makes an utterance out of desperation, anger and dissatisfaction. In this case, all the variations for Sentence 3 below are equivalent, i.e. there are no changes in nuance.

3. Watashi nante dou na-t-temo ii n desu **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo**!  
私なんてどうなってもいいんですけど(けども/けれど/けれども)。  
*I don't care what happens to me! (Nobody cares about me anyway!)*

### 7.1.1.3 Interchangeability with differences in nuance: imperatives (commands)

The speaker can signal that his/her statement should be taken by the addressee as a command by using imperative PPs: **i** (い: 7.2.3.7), **ka** (か: 7.2.4.8), **na** (な: see §§ 7.2.11.1, 7.2.11.2 and 7.2.11.3), **tara/ttara** (たら/ったら see § 7.2.16.3), **tteba** (ってば: see § 7.2.17.1), **ya** (や: see § 7.2.21.2) and **yai** (やい: see § 7.2.22.1). The following examples clarify some of the subtle differences in nuance:

4. Kenka wa mou yamero **ii**!  
喧嘩はもう止めろい!  
*Stop fighting! That's enough (♂)*
5. Kenka wa mou yose **yai**!  
喧嘩はもう止せやい!  
*Stop fighting! That's enough! (♂)*
6. Kenka wa mou yame-mase-n **ka**!  
喧嘩はもう止めませんか。  
*Why don't you stop fighting! / Would you please stop fighting! (♂/♀)*
7. Kenka wa mou yame-**tara**?  
喧嘩はもう止めたら?  
*Why don't you stop fighting? (I think it's better for you.) (♂/♀)*
8. Kenka wa mou yamero-**tteba**?  
喧嘩はもう止めろってば!  
*Why don't you stop fighting? (I'm becoming impatient. That's enough) (♂)*
9. Kenka wa mou yame **na**!  
喧嘩はもう止めな。  
*Stop fighting! (I am telling you this as your elder.) (♂)*
10. Kenka wa mou yame-nasai **na**!  
喧嘩はもう止めなさいな。  
*Can't you stop fighting now? That's enough! (It's better for you) (♂/♀)*
11. Isoge **ya** isoge no awate-buri da-t-ta  
急げや急げの慌てぶりだった。  
*He/She was in such a hurry! (He/She didn't know what he/she was doing because he/she was in such a hurry) (♂/♀)*

Except for Sentence 11, which is idiomatic (see § 7.2.21.2), the examples above are all commands by the speaker for the hearer to stop fighting. However, as illustrated in Table 31, there are distinctive features which differentiate the nuances of each

Table 30: An overview of the functions of modality expressing PPs

	Expressions of:	Postpositions
1	dissatisfaction, anger; irritation; frustration; being offended	kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo, wai, yo
2	impatience	tara/tara, tteba
3	various emotional feelings	na (being impressed, happiness, sadness, etc.), wa (わ) being impressed, happiness, surprise, etc.), wai (regret; joy, happiness; surprise, etc.)
4	being impressed	koto, monoka/monka/monokai/, na, ne, sa, ya (+ an emphasis), yo (+ giving information)
5	astonishment	ka, tara/tara, tteba, ze
6	intimacy; softness	e, i, koto, ne, no, yo, wa (わ)
7	infancy	i, no
8	mild statements	na
9	indirectness, euphemism; avoiding clear statements, a reserved stance	ga, kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo, ne
10	desires/wishes	ga ka, kashira, kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo, na/naa
11	will	ka
12	irrealis (unreality) + regret	ni
13	invitations; suggestions; exhortation	ka, koto, tara/tara, ya, yo
14	requests	ka, yo
15	prohibition	na
16	warning	ne, zo
17	persuasion	ga, na, ne, no
18	commands	i, ka, na, tara/tara, teba/teba, ya
19	criticism	i, ka, no, sa, yo, zo
20	complaints; protests	i
21	interrogatives; suspicion; questions; doubt	ka, kashira, koto, no
22	confirmation	ka, kke, na, ne, tomo
23	drawing someone's attention	ga, ze, zo (+ warning)
24	calling somebody's name	ya, yo
25	an emphasis	i, ya (+ being impressed), yo, zo
26	insistence	ne, sa

27	certainly, confident and definite statements	tomo yo (+ giving information)
28	uncertainty	yara
29	despise	i
30	arrogance	ze
31	being relaxed	sa
32	rhetorical questions	i, ka, monoka/morka/monkai, ya, zo
33	reasons/causes	mono (+ criticism, + coquettish attitudes; + being impressed)
34	information from the third party	sa
35	monologues	ka (+ being emotionally slightly moved), kashira (+ wondering about something), ya, zo
36	retrospection; reminiscence	kke
37	listing actions or happenings + exaggeration + emotional feelings	wa
38	conjunctions, coordinations	ne, sa

utterance: gender (man/woman), direct/gentle/abrupt, patient/impatient, the emotional attachment of the speaker to the addressee (close/distant), the hierarchical relationship of the speaker to the interlocutor (higher/same/lower) and other factors.

#### 7.1.1.4 Interchangeability with differences in nuance: criticism

Using the modality expressing PPs, the speaker can express various criticisms. The PPs *i* (い: see §§ 7.2.3.2 and 7.2.3.5), *ka* (か: see § 7.2.4.4) and *sa* (さ: see § 7.2.15.5) belong to this group. They are also male gender markers. Sentence 12 below expresses the speaker's complaint with an implication that he cannot understand why the hearer made a certain statement to the speaker. Sentence 13 conveys the speaker's criticism to the hearer with the pragmatic implication that the speaker is in a hierarchical order higher than the hearer. Sentence 14 signals the speaker's refutation of the addressee by indicating his frustration, anger and aggression towards him/her.

12. Dou shite ayamara-na-kere ba ike-nai n da i!  
 どうして謝らなければいけないんだい。  
*Why do I have to apologize to you! (There's no reason to!)* (♂)
13. Nani o i t te-ru no ka!  
 何を言ってるのか。  
*What are you talking about! (What you are saying is unacceptable!)* (♂)
14. Naze sou shi-tara ike-nai no sa!  
 なぜそうしたらいけないのさ。  
*Why can't I do it! (I'm mad that you are telling me not to do it!)* (♂)

### 7.1.2 Poly-functionality

The modality expressing PPs generally have more than one function. The number of functions of each PP ranges from one to twelve (see Table 32). For example, the PPs **e** (え: see § 7.2.1), **ni** (に: see § 7.2.13) and **yara** (やら: see § 7.2.23) only have one function. Sentence 15 below is an example of this mono-functionality of the PP **yara** (やら), which encodes uncertainty. At the other extreme, the PP **ka** (か: see § 7.2.4) can mark at least twelve different kinds of emotions or stances of the speaker: suspicion, questions/doubt, rhetorical questions, criticism, confirmation, invitations/suggestions, requests, commands/prohibitions, will, astonishment/unexpectedness, desires/wishes and monologues. Polysemy means that the context often determines the actual function of the PP employed.

15. Shiken ni ukaru koto yara.  
試験に受かることやら。  
*I wonder if I can pass the exam. / I'm not sure if I can pass the exam.*

### 7.1.3 Syncretism of functions

Some PPs can synchronously encode two or more semantic roles within a single PP used in a statement. This feature, syncretism, was briefly touched upon in Subsection 1.4.4 in respect to dual cases. For instance, two functions, namely to inform the hearer of something and to indicate that this something is/was very impressive, are syncretized in one single PP **yo** (よ: see § 7.2.24.5).

16. Ano eiga wa omoshiroi desu yo!  
あの映画は面白いですよ。  
*Listen! That movie is very interesting!*

### 7.1.4 Pragmatic encoding

Some modality expressing PPs mark the male/female gender differences (see § 7.1.4.1), the age (see § 7.1.4.2), the social group (see § 7.2.1 and 7.2.3), the hierarchical relations (see §§ 7.1.4.3 and 7.2.26.2) and the intimacy (see §§ 7.1.4.4, 7.2.1.1, 7.2.3.1 and 7.2.22.1) of the speaker and/or the hearer. In other words, there are some PPs that are primarily used by elder people. More specifically speaking, they are employed by older men or older women. Likewise, there are some that are solely used by small children of both sex and some only by small boys (see § 7.2.3.8) or small girls

#### 7.1.4.1 Gender

The speaker can express his/her surprise/astonishment by attaching the PPs **ka** (か: see § 7.2.4.10) or **wa** (わ: see § 7.2.19.2) to the predicate of a sentence. The sentence-final PP **ka** (か) is used primarily by men (see Sentence 17) and **wa** (わ) by women (see Sentence 18).

17. Ano hito ga koutsuu-jiko de shi-n-da no ka.  
あの人が交通事故で死んだのか。  
*What? Was he/she killed in a car accident? (♂)*
18. Kono hana kirei da wa.  
この花綺麗だわ。

この花綺麗だわ。  
*Gee! This flower is beautiful! (♀)*

The PP **kashira** (かしら: see § 7.2.5.1) is an overtly female gender marker, and is, therefore, used by women (see Sentence 19).

19. Sore, hontou kashira.  
それ、本当かしら。  
*I'm not sure if it's true. / Is it true? (♀)*

#### 7.1.4.2 Sociolects: age

Some PPs mark the age of the speaker. Most of these PPs function synchronously as a gender marker as well. The PP **wai** (わい), for instance, is used by old men (see § 7.2.20; see Sentence 20) and the PP **no** (の: see § 7.2.14.1) is used both by young male and female children (see Sentence 21). Likewise, young boys use the PP **i** (い: see § 7.2.3.8) as shown in Sentence 22.

20. Koma-t-ta wai!  
困ったわい。  
*What shall I do! (I'm at a loss as to what to do.) (The speaker is an older man)*
21. Mari-chan/Boku o-furo ni hairi-taku-nai no  
まりちゃんお風呂に入りたくないの。/僕お風呂に入りたくないの。  
*I don't want to take a bath*  
(The speaker respectively is a young girl by the name of Mari and a boy using the male personal noun **boku** [僕] meaning I.)
22. O-furo iya da i!  
お風呂いやだいい。  
*I don't want to take a bath. (The speaker is a little boy)*

#### 7.1.4.3 Sociolects: hierarchical relations

Men use the PP **zo** (ぞ: see § 7.2.26.2), and the hierarchical rank of the speaker is either the same as, or higher than that of the hearer

23. Oi, kore machiga-t-te-ru zo!  
おい、これ間違ってるぞ。  
*Hey! You've made a mistake here! (♂)*

#### 7.1.4.4 Intimacy

In analogy to French and German, which both use a lexical means of personal pronouns (*tu* and *du* respectively) or the morphological means of verbal inflection in order to designate the psychological distance between the speaker and the hearer, Japanese uses modality expressing PPs for attaining this purpose. For example, the PPs **e** (え: see § 7.2.1.1), **i** (い: see § 7.2.3.1), **koto** (こと: see § 7.2.8.1), **mono** (もの: see § 7.2.9) and **no** (の: see § 7.2.14) unambiguously express a sense of intimacy. Sentences 24 and 25 both have the same semantic meaning but contrast strongly in terms of intimacy with respectively familiar and formal connotations



Table 31: The semantic distinctive features of imperative PPs

Distinctive features	PPs	i	ka <sup>1</sup>	ka <sup>2</sup>	tara	tteba	na <sup>3</sup>	na <sup>4</sup>	ya	ya + i
1. male		+	+	+/-	+/-	+	+	+/-	+/-	+
2. gentle		-		+	+	-	+	+/-	+/-	-
3. patient		+		-	-	+	+/-	+/-	+/-	-
4. close		+	+	-	-	+	+	+/-	-	+
5. higher		+/-	+	+/-	+/-	+/-	+	+	+/-	+/-

N.B.: 1: < V1 + nai + ka >; 2: < V2 + masen + ka >; 3: < V2 + na >; 4: < V2 + nasai + na >

24. Nani shi-te-ru no?

何してるの。

What are you doing? (Fr.: *Que fais-tu?*/Ger.: *Was machst du?*)

25. Nani o shi-te-iru no desu ka?

何をしているのですか。

What are you doing? (Fr.: *Que faites-vous?*/Ger.: *Was machen Sie?*)

Sentence 24 expresses the intimacy of the speaker to the hearer, whereas Sentence 25 indicates an emotional distance between the speaker and the hearer. Owing to the conversational style, the syntactic object marker *o* (を) as well as the initial vowel [i] of the verb *i-ru* (いる) are deleted in Sentence 24 above: *Nani (o) shi-te-(i)ru no?*

#### 7.1.4.5 Dialogues/monologues

All of the modality expressing PPs can be used in a dialogue. However, there are some PPs that can also be used in a specific situation, namely, in a monologue. Conversely, this differentiation means that not all the modality PPs can function as a monologue marker. The PPs *ka* (か: see § 7.2.4.12), *kashira* (かしら: see § 7.2.5.1), *ya* (や: see § 7.2.21.3) and *zo* (ぞ: see § 7.2.26.1) are used when the speaker is speaking to himself/herself in order to remind/ensure/confirm/persuade himself/herself of something (see the sentences below).

26. Saa, shigoto wa kono hen de yame-te-oku ka.

さあ、仕事はこのへんで止めておくか。

Well, I'm going to stop working now.

27. Maa, kore de ii ya

まあ、これでいいや。

Well, this'll be enough

28. Un, kore wa ii zo.

うん、これはいいぞ。

Well, this is good. (The PP *zo* [ぞ] is also a male gender marker.)

Table 32: Modality expressing PPs and their functions

	Postpositions	Functions
1.	e	1) intimacy/softness
2	ga	1) desideratives: wishes/desires 2) indirectness/euphemism 3) persuasion 4) drawing somebody's attention
3.	i	1) interrogatives + intimacy/softness 2) complaints/protests 3) rhetorical questions 4) contempt, scorn, disdain 5) criticism 6) an emphasis 7) commands 8) infancy
4	ka	1) suspicion 2) interrogatives 3) rhetorical questions 4) criticism 5) confirmation (making sure of something) 6) exhortation/invitations/suggestions 7) requests (asking somebody to do something) 8) moderate negative commands/gentle prohibition 9) will 10) astonishment/unexpectedness 11) desideratives: desires/wishes 12) monologues + feelings of being slightly moved
5.	kashira	1) monologues + doubt/questioning 2) doubt/questioning 3) desideratives: desires/wishes
6.	ke/kke	1) retrospection/reminiscence 2) confirmation
7.	kedo/kedomo/ keredo/keredomo	1) desideratives: desires/wishes 2) a reserved stance

		3) dissatisfaction
8.	koto	1) softness: < ... koto yo > 2) being impressed 3) invitations/mild suggestions 4) gentle questions
9	mono	1) causals (causes/reasons) + criticism 2) causals (causes/reasons) + coquettish behaviour 3) causals (causes/reasons) + being impressed
10.	monoka/monka	1) rhetorical statements 2) being impressed: < ... to iu mono ka >
11.	na	1) prohibitives: abrupt prohibition: < V3 + na > 2) imperatives: abrupt commands: < V2 + na > 3) imperatives: gentle commands: < V2 + nasal + na > or < ... o kudasai na > 4) emotional feelings: being impressed, happiness, sadness, etc. 5) desideratives: strong desires/wishes < V1 + nai + ka + na/naa > or < ... to ii (n da ga) na/naa > 6) mild statements 7) asking for confirmation 8) persuasive statements: combining postp. phrases
12.	ne	1) being impressed 2) soft insistence/persuasion 3) mild warning 4) expectation of an agreement or confirmation 5) intimacy + questioning 6) evitatives: avoiding clear statements 7) conjoining
13	ni	1) irrealis (unreality) + regret: < V6 + u/you + ni >
14.	no	1) softness 2) interrogatives 3) criticism 4) persuasion

15.	sa	1) relaxed statements 2) insistence 3) giving information which is obtained indirectly 4) being emotionally affected 5) criticism/refutation 6) conjunction of postpositional phrases
16	tara/ttara	1) impatience 2) astonishment 3) euphemistic commands or suggestions
17.	teba/tteba	1) impatience 2) astonishment
18.	tomo	1) certainty/confidence 2) indications of strong confirmation
19.	wa	1) softness 2) emotional feelings: happiness, being impressed, surprise 3) copulatives (listing) + exaggeration + emotionality
20.	wai	1) emotional feelings: regret, happiness, surprise, etc. 2) abrupt statements: anger, irritation, frustration, etc. 3) being offended
21.	ya	1) invitations: < V6 + u/you + ya > 2) imperatives (commands): < V5 + ya + V5 > 3) monologues 4) interrogatives (rhetorical questions) < ... koto ga arimashou ya > 5) calling somebody's name 6) an emphasis + being impressed
22.	yai	1) imperatives: mild commands 2) contempt 3) strong statements
23.	yara	1) uncertainty
24.	yo	1) definitive statements + giving information 2) rebuking somebody of something

		3) requests + an emphasis 4) suggestions + a coquettish attitude 5) being impressed + giving information 6) a perfunctory attitude + dissatisfaction: < ... <b>deshou yo</b> > 7) drawing attention + giving information 8) calling somebody's name
25	ze	1) drawing sb's attention + giving sb information 2) arrogance 3) surprise
26	zo	1) monologues: speaking to oneself 2) drawing sb's attention + giving sb a caution 3) rhetorical statements: < V6 + u/you + <b>zo</b> > 4) an emphasis 5) scolding somebody

## 7.2 Usage of modality expressing PPs

This section describes the practical usage of 26 (see Table 29) modality expressing PPs with an abundance of examples

### 7.2.1 e (え)

The PP **e (え)** is used by elder women and is used, in general, among lower social groups or in certain regions. The use of PP **e (え)** is becoming unfashionable and therefore sounds very antiquated

#### 7.2.1.1 Intimacy

The PP **e (え)** expresses the speaker's mental stance of being close to the hearer. As mentioned above, it is also an age and gender marker, the speaker is generally an old woman

1. Sou ka **e**. Jaa, ima koma-t-te-ru n daro-u nee  
 そうかえ。じゃあ、今困ってるんだろねえ。  
*Is that so? Then, you must be in trouble now, I suppose.*

### 7.2.2 ga (が)

Syntactic-semantically speaking, the PP **ga (が)** is poly-functional since it marks syntactic-semantic cases (see § 3.2.3), conjoins sentences (see § 6.2.4) and encodes the emotions/attitudes of the speaker, which is the topic of this chapter. As a sentence-final PP it can designate the speaker's desires/wishes (see § 7.2.2.1), his/her efforts to elucidate a reserved stance while making a declarative statement (see § 7.2.2.2), or to persuade the addressee of his/her opinion (see § 7.2.2.3)

#### 7.2.2.1 Desideratives: desires/wishes

The speaker's wish or desire, which he/she deems to be difficult to realize, can be expressed by using the PP **ga (が)** in conjunction with the antecedent sentence constructions < ... V4 + **ba ii** (～ばいい) >, < ... V3 + **to ii** (～といい) > or < ... **hoshii no/n<sup>28</sup> da** (～欲しいの(／ん)だ) >. The conditional verb forms, < V4 + **ba** > or < V3 + **to** >, as well as the i-adjective **hoshii** (欲しい), designating the speaker's wish of wanting to have something are used in these constructions (see the schema below)

V4 + <b>ba ii</b> V3 + <b>to ii</b> <b>hoshii no/n da</b>	<b>ga</b>
---	-----------

- 1 Chichi ga futatabi genki ni na-t-te-kureru to ii **ga**  
 父が再び元気になるてくれるといいが。  
*I hope my father will regain his health.*

<sup>28</sup> **N** (ん [ŋ]) is a form of phonological elision, which derives from the PP **no** (の) by dropping out its vowel [o]



2. Kono shinsei ga toore bai ii ga.  
この申請が通ればいいが。  
I hope that this application will be accepted (σ)
3. Anata ni kono shigoto o shi-te hoshii n da ga  
あなたにこの仕事をして欲しいんだが。  
It would be nice if you could do this job. (σ)

### 7.2.2.2 Indirectness; euphemism

When the speaker wants to avoid direct statements and thereby express his/her politeness to the addressee, he/she can place the PP **ga** (が) at the end of the statement. His/Her statement becomes mild, vague and indirect.

Sentence	ga
----------	----

4. O-negai-shi-tai koto ga aru no desu ga  
お願いしたい事があるのですが。  
(If you don't mind,) I would like to ask you to do something for me. / Would you mind if I ask you to do something for me?

### 7.2.2.3 Persuasion

The speaker can use the PP **ga** (が) in order to persuade the addressee of something. In this case, a sentence ending with < ... **deshou** > usually precedes the PP **ga** (が).

... deshou	ga
------------	----

5. Kono e o mi-te-kudasai. kirei na mono desho-u ga  
この絵を見て下さい。綺麗なものでしょうが。  
Please look at this painting! It is beautiful, isn't it?

### 7.2.3 i (い)

The PP **i** (い) encodes six different semantic implications: marking questions (see §§ 7.2.3.1 and 7.2.3.3), complaints (see § 7.2.3.2), disdain (see § 7.2.3.4), criticism (see § 7.2.3.5), emphasis (see § 7.2.3.6) and commands (see § 7.2.3.7). They all share one common feature that the speaker is generally a male. There are, however, such cases that elderly women from rather lower social groups use this PP. The PP **i** (い) can also be an age marker (see § 7.2.3.8).

#### 7.2.3.1 Interrogatives + Intimacy

Four distinctive features are syncretized in the PP **i** (い): it encodes firstly, a question where the speaker wants to know something; secondly, the intimacy of the relationship between the speaker and the addressee, thirdly, that the gender of the speaker is in all probability a male; and finally, a subdued and mild tone of speech that his/her statement is not straightforward. It is often employed in conjunction with the interrogative PP **ka** (か; see § 7.2.4.2; see Sentence 2 below). **ka i** (かい).

1. Dou shi-ta n da i?  
どうしたんだい。  
What's happened?/What's the matter? (σ)
2. Genki ka i?  
元氣かい。  
How are you doing? (σ)

### 7.2.3.2 Complaints/protests

Disapproval, objections or dissatisfaction can be marked with the PP **i** (い).

3. Naze ore ga kono shigoto o shina-kya nara-nai n da i!  
なぜ俺がこの仕事をしなきゃならないんだい。  
Why do I have to do this job! (I don't want to!) (σ)

### 7.2.3.3 Rhetorical questions

The PP **i** (い) can be used to build rhetorical questions.

4. Dare ga tasuke-te-yaru mon ka i!  
誰が助けてやるもんかい。  
Who'd help you! (Nobody!/I wouldn't help you!) (σ)

### 7.2.3.4 Disdain

With the use of the PP **i** (い), the speaker can express an attitude of looking down on somebody.

5. Ittai, mai-nichi, nani shi-te-ru n da i!  
一体、毎日、何してるんだい。  
What on earth do you do every day, you lazy man! (σ)

### 7.2.3.5 Criticism

Critical attitudes of the speaker can be expressed by using the PP **i** (い).

6. Nani monku i-t-te-ru no ka i!  
何文句言ってるのかい。  
What are you complaining about! (There is no reason for your complaint!) (σ)

### 7.2.3.6 Emphasis

The PP **i** (い), when used to make emphasis, is often used in conjunction with the PP **na** (な; see § 7.2.11.1) marking a prohibition **na i** (ない).

Sentence	na	i	!
		PP: modality (prohibition)	
		PP: modality (emphasis)	

7. Kore gurai no koto de naku na i!  
これぐらいの事で泣かない。  
Don't cry over such things! (σ)

## 7.2.3.7 Imperatives: commands

The PP i (い) in conjunction with the verb inflectional form V5 (see § 0 6.1.1) forms imperatives or commands: < V5 + i >.

Sentence (V5) i i

8. Hakkiri shiro i!  
はっきりしろい!  
*Make up your mind!* (♂)

## 7.2.3.8 Infancy

The PP i (い) can work as an age and gender marker in that male children use this PP when they want to insist on something

9. Chuusha nante iya da i!  
注射なんていやだ!  
*I don't want an injection!* (♂)

## 7.2.4 ka (か)

Poly-functionality is the main feature of the PP ka (か) having twelve roles, namely marking, dubitation, interrogation, rhetorical questions, criticisms, confirmation, invitations, requests, imperatives, astonishment, desires and monologues

## 7.2.4.1 Dubitatives: suspicion

The PP ka (か) signals something that the speaker finds unbelievable

1. Konna koto ari-uru daro-u ka?  
こんな事あり得るだろうか。  
*How could it happen! (I can't believe it really happened!)*

## 7.2.4.2 Interrogatives

A question is formed by attaching the PP ka (か) after the predicate at the end of a sentence.

2. Ima o-hima desu ka?  
今お暇ですか。  
*Have you got time now?*
3. Kono hon ikura desu ka?  
この本いくらですか。  
*How much is this book?*

## 7.2.4.3 Rhetorical questions

The PP ka (か) can be used to form a question, which is asked for the sake of effect and to impress the addressee. The addressee is not expected to answer since the answer is obvious

4. Sonna koto shi-te nan no toku ni naru-u ka!  
そんな事して何の得になろうか。  
*What merit will it bring? (None!)*

## 7.2.4.4 Criticism

The PP ka (か) can be used to mark a critical attitude of a speaker towards something.

5. Konna ni i-t-temo, mada wakara-nai no ka!  
こんなに言っても、まだ分からないのか。  
*How many times do I have to tell you this! You still don't understand, do you?*
6. Sonna koto shi-tara komaru ja nai ka!  
そんな事したら困るじゃないか。  
*You shouldn't do such things! (Lit.: If you do such things, I'll be the one that ends up getting into trouble.)*

## 7.2.4.5 Confirmation

Marking a statement with the PP ka (か) can indicate that the speaker is expecting the addressee to confirm his/her statement.

7. Kono koto wa dare ni mo iu na yo! Ii ka?  
この事は誰にもいふなよ。いいか。  
*Don't tell this to anybody! OK?*

## 7.2.4.6 Exhortation; invitations; suggestions

Using the sentence-final PP ka (か), the speaker can express an intention to urge the addressee to do something, or to suggest that he/she does something. In this case, it is most commonly used in conjunction with the sentence structures < V2 + mashou ka >, < V2 + masen ka > or < V1 + nai ka >. The last sentence pattern is only used by male speakers. Sentence 9 below is a typical example of this usage

V2 + mashou	ka
V2 + masen	
V1 + nai	

8. Konban, erga demo mi ni iki-mase-n ka?  
今晚、映画でも見に行きませんか。  
*Shall we go to the cinema tonight?*
9. Issho ni Furansu ni ika nai ka?  
一緒にフランスに行かないか。  
*Why don't we go to France together!* (♂)

## 7.2.4.7 Requests

If the speaker wants to ask the interlocutor to do something, he/she can do this by marking his/her statement with the PP ka (か). The sentence structures < TE-kure + masen ka > or < TE-kure + nai ka > are used for this purpose. The compound verb TE-

**kureru** expresses a beneficial meaning that the addressee is doing/will do something for the speaker. Males use exclusively the latter pattern (see Sentence 11 below)

TE-kure-masen	ka
TE-kure-nai	

10. Chotto tetsuda-t-te-kure-mase-n ka?  
 ちょっと手伝ってくださいませんか。  
*Can you help me, please?*

11. O-kane kashi-te-kure-nai ka? (♂)  
 お金貸してくれないか。  
*Can you loan me some money?*

#### 7.2.4.8 Imperatives: moderately negative commands; gentle prohibitions

When the speaker wants to gently command or to prohibit the addressee from doing something, the PP **ka** (か) can be used for this purpose. The same sentence structure as that employed in § 7.2.4.7 is used. Once again, the sentence structure < V1 + nai ka > is used by men (see Sentence 13).

12. Tabako wa mou yame-mase-n ka!  
 煙草はもう止めませんか。  
*Isn't it better for you to quit smoking?*
13. Sake o nomu no wa mou yame-nai ka!  
 酒を飲むのはもう止めないか。  
*Don't you want to stop drinking? (Isn't it better for you to stop drinking?) (♂)*

#### 7.2.4.9 Will

The speaker's will to do something can be marked by the PP **ka** (か).

14. Raten-go? Boku mo ya-t-te-miru ka  
 ラテン語、僕もやってみるか。  
*Latin? Well, I might as well begin learning it (♂)*

#### 7.2.4.10 Astonishment; unexpectedness

The PP **ka** (か) can designate astonishment caused by unexpected incidents/matters. Sentences 15 and 16, given below, are formed using constructions only used by male speakers

15. Omae, ryouri jouzu ja nai ka!  
 おまえ、料理上手じゃないか。  
*Oh! You can cook pretty well! (I'm surprised!) (♂)*
16. Burûtasu, o-mae mo ka!  
 ブルータス、おまえもか。

*What! Brutus! You too are betraying me! (♂)*

17. E, kono kuruma sonna ni suru n desu ka!  
 え、この車そんなにするんですか。  
*What! This car is that expensive?*

#### 7.2.4.11 Desideratives: desires/wishes

In conjunction with the desiderative PP **naa** (なあ: 7.2.11.5) and the negated benefactive verb compound **TE-kure-nai** or the negated verb form < V1 + nai >, the speaker's desires/wishes can be expressed.

V1 + nai	ka	naa
TE-kure-nai		

18. Ashita tenki ni na-t-te-kure-nai ka naa.  
 明日天気になってくれないかなあ。  
*I hope it'll be fine tomorrow.*
19. Dare ka Nihon-go oshie-te-kureru hito i-nai ka naa?  
 誰か日本語教えてくれる人いないかなあ。  
*I hope I can find someone who would teach me Japanese*

#### 7.2.4.12 Monologues + A feeling of being slightly moved

The PP **ka** (か) can be used to indicate the emotional state of a speaker in which the speaker is slightly moved/impressed by observing/finding out something and he/she is saying this to himself/herself

20. Saru mo ki kara ochiru ka  
 猿も木から落ちるか。  
*Oh yes, this is really a case of "Even Homer sometimes nods" (Lit.: "Even a monkey falls out of a tree".)*

#### 7.2.5 kashira (かしら)

The PP **kashira** (かしら) marks a question and, at the same time, it works as a gender marker, that is, women generally use this PP.

#### 7.2.5.1 Dubitatives (doubt; questions) + Monologues

The PP **kashira** (かしら) can mark doubt or something the speaker wonders about. In this case, it is used in a monologue

1. Haha wa ima goro dou shi-te-iru kashira?  
 母は今頃どうしているかしら。  
*I wonder how my mother is doing. (♀)*



2. Ano hito wa ima doko ni iru no kashira?  
あの人は今どこにいるのかしら。  
I wonder where he/she is now. (♀)

### 7.2.5.2 Expectations of an answer to a question

The PP **kashira** (かしら) can indicate that the speaker is expecting an answer, or is urging that the addressee gives him/her an answer to his/her question.

3. Kono kurai no nedan de dou kashira?  
このくらいの値段でどうかしら。  
Do you think the price is all right? / What do you think about the price? (♀)

### 7.2.5.3 Desideratives: desires/wishes

In combination with the negated verb from < V1 + nai > preceding the PP **kashira** (かしら), the speaker can express his/her desires or wishes for something: < V1 + nai + kashira >.

V1 + nai	kashira
----------	---------

4. Hayaku natsu-yasumi ni nara-nai kashira  
早く夏休みにならないかしら。  
I wish the summer holidays would begin soon. (♀)
5. Kono shigoto, dare ka ya-t-te-kure-nai kashira  
この仕事、誰かやってくれないかしら。  
I wish that somebody would do this job for me. (♀)

### 7.2.6 ke (け)/kke (つけ)

The PP **ke** (け) has two semantic roles: retrospection/reminiscence (see § 7.2.6.1) and confirmation (§ 7.2.6.2). Owing to a phonological process of regressive assimilation, the PP **ke** (け) is often pronounced with the glottal stop [ʔ] **kke** (つけ [ʔke]). Expressions using this PP are rather colloquial. The preceding predicate generally has the TA-form of the verb (see § 0.6.1.2), or other predicative words in the past tense.

TA-form	
Predicate in the past tense	ke/kke

#### 7.2.6.1 Retrospection; reminiscence

When a speaker looks back on past events/experiences, he/she can mark it with the PP **ke** (け) or **kke** (つけ). For this purpose, female speakers also use the expression using the femininity marker PP **wa** (わ: see § 7.2.19.1) followed by the PP **ne/nee** (ね/ねえ: see § 7.2.12.4): < ... wa ne/ ... wa nee (〜わね/〜わねえ) >.

1. Sou sou, yoku sensei ni shikara-re-ta kke  
そうそう、よく先生に叱られたっけ。

That's right. My teacher scolded me often. (Lit.: I was often scolded by my teacher)

2. Sou da ne. Sonna koto mo a-t-ta kke nee  
そうだね。そんな事もあったっけねえ。  
You are right. It was like that, wasn't it?
- Cf. Sou da ne. Sonna koto mo a-t-ta wa nee  
そうだね。そんな事もあったわねえ。  
You are right. It was like that, wasn't it? (♀)

### 7.2.6.2 Confirmation

The PP **ke** (け) or **kke** (つけ) can be placed at the end of a sentence in order to indicate that the speaker wants to ascertain something. In this case, the predicate preceding the PP **ke/kke** (け/つけ) can also be in the present tense (for example, see Sentence 3)

3. Anata no tanjou-bi ashita da kke?  
あなたの誕生日明日だっけ。  
Your birthday is tomorrow, isn't it?
4. Ano hito no namae, Takahashi da-t-ta kke?  
あの人の名前、高橋だったっけ。  
Isn't his/her name Mr/Ms Takahashi?

### 7.2.7 kedo (けど)/kedomo (けども)/keredo (けれど)/keredomo (けれども)

With these PPs the speaker can express three distinct emotions or attitudes: desires/wishes (see § 7.2.7.1), reserved attitudes (see § 7.2.7.2), and dissatisfaction (see § 7.2.7.3). Although there are four different morphological forms **kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo**, there are no semantic differences in their usage. Note that the same PPs can also be used as conjunctive PPs but with different syntactic and semantic properties (see § 6.2.6). The basic sentence construction is illustrated below:

Sentence	no/n	da	kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo
----------	------	----	-----------------------------

The PP **n** (ん [ŋ]) is an elision derived from the case marking PP **no** (の: see § 3.2.7.5) used in nominalizing a sentence; the vowel [o] from the PP **no** (の [no]) has been dropped.

#### 7.2.7.1 Desideratives: desires/wishes

In conjunction with the sentence structure < ... to ii no/n da >, the speaker can express his/her wish/desire for something.

Sentence	to		no/n	da	kedo/kedomo/keredo/keredomo
----------	----	--	------	----	-----------------------------

1. Shiken ni ukaru to ii n da kedo.

試験に受かるといいんだけど。

*I hope I will pass the exam*

2. Ashita tenki ni naru to ii n da kedomo.

明日天気になるといいんだけど。

*It would be nice if the weather would be fine tomorrow*

### 7.2.7.2 Reserved stance

By using one of these PPs, a speaker's attitude that he/she wants to avoid making a declarative statement can be marked. The real intention of the speaker, which he/she wishes to convey, is expressed in a very subtle manner.

3. Jitsu wa sensei ni o-negai ga aru n desu keredomo

実は先生にお願いがあるんですけど。

*Well, (if you don't mind) I would like to ask you (the teacher) to do me a favour.*

4. Sensei no ossha-t-te-iru koto wa yoku waku n desu keredo

先生のおっしゃっていることはよく分かるんですけど。

*Well, (of course) I understand well what you (the teacher) are talking about, however ....*

### 7.2.7.3 Dissatisfaction

Mixed feelings of dissatisfaction, frustration, desperation and anger can be marked by using the PPs kedo (けど), kedomo (けども), keredo (けれど) or keredomo (けれども)

5. Douse watashi no koto desu kara, dou na-t-ta tte ii n desu kedo ne.

どうせ私の事ですから、どうなったっていいんですけどね。

*Oh well, you don't really care what happens to me after all, do you?*

6. Mou tasuke-te nanka kure-na-ku itatte ii n desu kedo.

もう助けてなんかくれなくなっちゃっていいんですけど。

*You needn't help me any more! (You don't care about me anyway!)*

## 7.2.8 koto (こと)

The PP **koto** (こと) has four different functions: marking softness, being impressed, soft invitations and gentle questions. They all share one characteristic, namely that of generating a soft and gentle atmosphere. Hence, it also functions as a female gender marker. As is mentioned in Section 1.3, it can be morphosyntactically interpreted as the pseudo-noun **koto** (事). **Koto** (事) can be used to express many different semantic meanings.

### 7.2.8.1 Softness: < ... koto yo >

By using the PP **koto** (こと), a very gentle and feminine utterance can be marked when it is followed by the PP **yo** (よ: see § 7.2.24.1).

Sentence	koto	yo
----------	------	----

1. Sonna koto i-t-te, minna ni kirawa-reru koto yo.

そんな事言って、皆に嫌われる事よ。

*If you say such things, nobody will like you. (♀)*

### 7.2.8.2 Being affected/impressed

An emotional state of being affected or impressed by something can be marked with the PP **koto** (こと).

2. Maa, go-rippa na o-ie da koto!

まあ、ご立派なお家だこと。

*Oh, what a nice house you have! (♀)*

3. Maa, yoku deki-ta koto!

まあ、よく出来たこと。

*Gee, you've done a really good job! (♀)*

### 7.2.8.3 Soft invitations; mild suggestions

When a female speaker wants to persuade/suggest the interlocutor to do something in a very gentle manner, she can place the PP **koto** (こと) at the end of the sentence.

4. Machi ni issho ni irasshara-nai koto?

町と一緒にいらっしやらないこと。

*Wouldn't you like to go into town with me? (♀)*

### 7.2.8.4 Interrogatives: gentle questions

The PP **koto** (こと) can be employed when the speaker wants to ask something in a very soft and feminine manner.

5. Kono hon mi-temo ii koto?

この本見てもいいこと。

*Can I take a look at this book? (♀)*

6. Anata mo sou o-omoi ni nara-nai koto?

あなたもそうお思いにならないこと。

*Don't you think so as well? (♀)*

## 7.2.9 mono (もの)

The basic function of the PP **mono** (もの) is causal. However, it is possible to distinguish three distinct additional nuances: criticism, coquettish behaviour and being impressed. From the viewpoint of morphosyntax, the PP **mono** (もの) can also be considered to be the pseudo-noun **mono** (物), which has since lost its literal meaning and is now simply used to fulfil its syntactic function (see §§ 1.3 and 5.2.5). In a colloquial speech, the speaker also uses the morpheme **mon** (もん) by dropping the second vowel [o] of [mono] (see Sentence 1).

**7.2.9.1 Causals (causes/reasons) + Criticism**

The speaker gives a reason as the answer to a question posed by the hearer/addressee with additional feelings of anger, dissatisfaction or frustration. In other words, the speaker tries to justify his/her situation or an action that he/she has taken.

1. A: **Naze sonna kitanai kakkou-shi-te-ru n da!** (♂)  
なぜそんな汚い格好してるんだ。  
*Why are you wearing such dirty things!*
- B: **O-kane ga nai n desu mono!** (♀)/**O-kane ga nai n da mon!** (♂/♀)  
お金がないんですもの！/お金がないんだもん！  
*That's because I don't have any money! (How could you say such things about me!)*

**7.2.9.2 Causals: causes/reasons + Coquettish behaviour**

The speaker, always a female in this case, can give a reason for something in a coquettish way by using the PP **mono** (もの)

2. A: **Tsukare-ta?**  
疲れた？  
*Are you tired?*
- B: **lie. Mada wakai n desu mono.** (♀)/**lie. Mada wakai mon de.** (♂)  
いいえ。まだ若いんですもの。/いいえ。まだ若いもんで。  
*No, because I'm still young.*

**7.2.9.3 Causals: causes/reasons + Being impressed**

The PP **mono** (もの) can be used when the speaker wishes to give a reason for something and, in addition, portray a feeling of being impressed.

3. A: **Tanaka-san ga konsâto de shou o to-t-ta n datte.**  
田中さんがコンサートで賞を取ったんだって。  
*I've heard that Mr/Ms Tanaka won a prize for the concert he gave!*
- B: **Ano hito kodomo no koro kara piano ga jouzu da-t-ta mono.**  
あの人が子供の頃からピアノが上手だったもの。  
*He/She has been a good piano player ever since he/she was a child.* (♀)

**7.2.10 monoka/monka/monokai (ものか/もんか/ものかい)**

Two meanings can be encoded using these PPs: a rhetorical statement (see § 7.2.10.1), or an emotional state of being impressed (see § 7.2.10.2). When one analyses the PPs **monka** (もんか), **monoka** (ものか) and **monokai** (ものかい) morphologically, they are found to be further made up of smaller word units (morphemes): namely the pseudo-noun **mono** (物) and the PPs **ka** (か; see § 7.2.4) and **i** (い; see § 7.2.3); **mon + ka**, **mono + ka** and **mono + ka + i** (see § 1.3) **Mon** is a form of phonological elision in that the vowel [o] from the end of **mono** has been

deleted. In most cases, they are interchangeable (see § 7.2.10.2 for an example when this is not the case). In general, male speakers use these PPs in making utterances.

**7.2.10.1 Rhetorical statements**

A rhetorical statement using the PPs **monoka** (ものか), **monka** (もんか) or **monokai** (ものかい), results in a strong negation of the preceding sentence (see the diagram below)

Sentence	monoka/monka/monokai
----------	----------------------

1. **Shi-n-datte kaeru monka!**  
死んだって帰るもんか。  
*I shall never go back home, even if I have to die because of it!*
2. **Ano hito ga gakusha na monoka!**  
あの人が学者なものか。  
*He/She is most definitely not a scholar! (How could he/she be a scholar!)*
3. **Kowai monokai!**  
怖いものかい。  
*I'm not at all scared!*

**7.2.10.2 Being impressed: < ... to iu monoka/monka >**

The PPs **monoka** (ものか) and **monka** (もんか) can mark an emotional state of being impressed/moved by finding out the truth about something, or discovering the basic nature of things, or becoming enlightened about something. The PP **monokai** (ものかい) cannot be used for this purpose.

[ ]	to	[ iu ]	monoka/monka
-----	----	--------	--------------

4. **Aa, kore ga jinrui-ai to iu monoka!**  
ああ、これが人類愛というものか。  
*Oh, this is the so-called human love!*

**7.2.11 na (な)**

The PP **na** (な) can be used to mark eight different terms: prohibitions, abrupt and gentle imperatives, emotions, desideratives, mild statements, requests for confirmation and persuasion.

**7.2.11.1 Prohibitives (abrupt prohibitions): < V3 + na >**

By placing the PP **na** (な) at the end of a sentence, which ends with the V3-form of the verb (see § 0.6.1.1), the speaker can signal that his/her statement is an abrupt command to the addressee, not to do something. Therefore, it is a merger of a prohibitive and an imperative. Men generally use this expression.

V3	na
----	----



1. Naku na!  
泣くな。  
Don't cry! (♂)
2. Soko o ugoku na!  
そこを動くな。  
Don't move! / Freeze! (♂)

### 7.2.11.2 Imperatives (abrupt commands): < V2 + na >

An abrupt command to an addressee can be marked by the PP **na** (な) by placing it after the verb V2-form (see the diagram below). It should be noted, however, that the resulting expression is a very familiar and can, therefore, also mark the intimacy of the speaker towards the addressee. Men primarily use this form.



3. Hayaku uchi ni kaeri na  
早く家に帰りな。  
Go back home soon! (♂)
4. Atchi e iki na  
あっちへ行きな。  
Go away! (♂)

### 7.2.11.3 Imperatives (gentle commands): < V2 + nasai + na > or < ... o kudasai + na >

The following two constructions are used to express gentle commands using the PP **na** (な). The first sentence structure < V2+nasai > expresses in itself a mild command, and, therefore, by juxtaposing the PP **na** (な) to it, the whole expression sounds even milder and softer. Likewise, the second sentence pattern < ... o kudasai >, which expresses a request from the speaker to the interlocutor to give him/her something (please give me/us something), conveys gentleness by attaching the PP **na** (な) to it. Generally, women use these expressions.



5. Kenka wa mou yame-nasai na.  
喧嘩はもう止めなさいな。  
Stop fighting now! (That's enough!) (♀)
6. Kore kudasai na.  
これトさいな。  
Please give me this! (♀)

### 7.2.11.4 Emotional feelings: being impressed, happy, sad, etc.

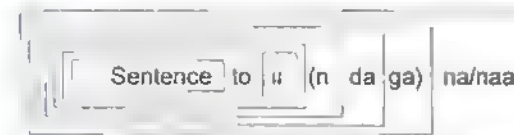
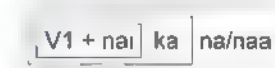
The speaker's miscellaneous feelings, such as happiness, sadness, embarrassment, and other emotions, can be expressed by placing the PP **na** (な) at the end of a sentence. The PP **na** (な) can also be pronounced with a long vowel [a:] so that the intensity of the speaker's emotions can be designated more emphatically: **naa** (なあ [na:]).



7. Uwaa, kono bara kirei da naa!  
うわあ、このバラ綺麗だなあ。  
Wow, this rose is so beautiful!
8. Ureshii na! Ashita kara natsu-yasumi da!  
嬉しいな。明日から夏休みだ。  
Wow, I'm so happy! The summer holidays begin tomorrow!
9. Koma-t-ta na! O-kane ga nakuna-t-cha-t-ta yo!  
困ったな。お金がなくなっちゃったよ。  
Oh, what shall I do! I don't have any money any more!

### 7.2.11.5 Desideratives (strong desires/wishes): < V1 + nai + ka + na/naa > or < ... to ii (no/n da ga) na/naa >

By using the sentence structures that follow, the speaker can designate his/her strong wish/desire for something to be realized. The PP **na** (な) can also be pronounced with a long vowel [a:] in order to emphasize the speaker's desire/wish: **naa** (なあ [na:]).



10. Ashita hare-nai ka na. (♂/♀)/Ashita hareru to ii na. (♂/♀)  
明日晴れないかな。/明日晴れるといいな。  
I hope it'll be fine tomorrow
11. Shiken ni ukara-nai ka naa. (♂/♀)/Shiken ni ukaru to ii n da ga naa (♂)  
試験に受からないかなあ。試験に受かるといいんだかなあ。  
I really hope that I will pass the exam.

### 7.2.11.6 Mild statements

The PP **na** (な) can also signal that the speaker is trying to avoid making a declarative statement so as to express his/her opinion in a gentle way

12. Boku wa sou wa omowa-nai na.

僕はそうは思わないな。  
Well, I don't think so. (♂)

13. Kono keikaku wa jitsugen-shi-nai daro-u na

この計画は実現しないだろうな。  
My fear is that this plan won't be realized. (♂)

## 7.2.11.7 Asking for confirmation

By employing the sentence-final PP na (な), a speaker can signal an attitude that he wants to make sure that he himself or the addressee has understood something correctly. In this case, the speaker is expecting an answer or comment to his statement from the addressee with the expectation that the addressee agrees with his statement. This usage of the PP na (な) is limited to men.

14. Ima boku ga i-t-ta koto waka-t-ta na.

今僕が言った事分かったな。  
Did you understand what I've just told you? / You understood what I've just said, didn't you? (♂)

15. Kono hanashi wa honto da na?

この話はほんとだな。  
That was a true story, wasn't it? (♂)

## 7.2.11.8 Persuasive statements

One can observe in colloquial language, that the PP na (な)/naa (なあ) can be placed after almost any entry (constituent/entity) of a sentence such as a noun, an adverb, or a postpositional phrase. Sentences of this type give the impression that the speaker wants to convince the hearer of something. These expressions also have pragmatic encoding that the speaker is situated higher in the hierarchical order than the hearer and that the speaker is most likely male.



16. Kore naa, zettai ni naa, sugu ni naa kowareru yo.

これなあ、絶対になあ、すぐになあ壊れるよ。  
Look! This will surely be broken soon. (♂)

## 7.2.12 ne (ね)

The sentence-final PP ne (ね) is poly-functional having seven different roles. It can be used namely to mark feelings of being impressed, soft insistence, mild warnings, agreement, an intimate question, an evasive statement, and emphasis within a list of statements. The context determines its function.

## 7.2.12.1 Being impressed

With the sentence-final PP ne (ね), the speaker can make interjectional statements expressing his/her feelings of being impressed/affected. The vowel [e] can be replaced with the long vowel [e:] in order to intensify his/her emotions (see Sentence 2). nee (ねえ [ne:])

1. Kono hana wa kirei desu ne!

この花は綺麗ですね。  
This flower is beautiful!

2. Kyou wa hontou ni ii tenki desu nee!

今日は本当にいい天気ですねえ。  
What wonderful weather we have got today!

## 7.2.12.2 Soft insistence/persuasion

The sentence-final PP ne (ね) can be used when the speaker wishes to express his/her opinion in a manner that he/she is convinced of, but would not necessarily insist on. Therefore, it can also be employed when the speaker wants to gently persuade the hearer of something.

3. Ano hito wa kesshite warui hito da to wa omoi-mase-n ne

あの人は決して悪い人だとは思いませんね。  
Well, I think he/she is by no means a bad person. (Of course, I may be wrong in my opinion. / If I were you, I wouldn't think that he/she is a bad person.)

4. Kono mondai ni tai-suru kaiketsu-saku wa fu-juubun da to omoi-masu ne.

この問題に対する解決策は不十分だと思いますね。  
Well, I don't think the measures, which have been taken to solve this problem, are sufficient. (But this is my opinion, and I might be wrong. / I think we should be taking more measures.)

5. Tsukare-ta toki ni wa, sukoshi kyuukei o toru koto da ne

疲れた時には、少し休憩を取ることだね。  
You'd better take a short break when you get tired. (I would do so if I were you. / Why don't you take a short break if you get tired?)

## 7.2.12.3 Mild warnings

The PP ne (ね) can be used to mark a gentle warning from the speaker to the addressee. The implication is that the addressee knows the warning is justified (cf. § 7.2.24 and Diagrams 6 and 7).

6. Mou kore kara wa konna koto wa ni-do to shi-nai de kudasai ne.

もうこれからはこんな事は二度としないで下さいね。  
From now on, please do not do such a thing again!

## 7.2.12.4 Expectations of an agreement or a confirmation

The PP ne (ね) can mark an expectation of the speaker that the addressee will agree with him/her (see § 7.2.24).

## 7. Ashita asa no ku-ji ni ki-te-kureru ne?

明日朝の九時に来てくれるね。

You are coming here at nine o'clock in the morning tomorrow, aren't you?

## 8. Kyou wa ii tenki desu ne!

今日はいい天気ですね。

It's nice weather today, isn't it! (Don't you think so, too?)

## 7.2.12.5 Intimacy + Interrogatives (questions)

In conjunction with the interrogative PP *ka* (か; see § 7.2.4.2), the speaker can signal that he/she feels emotionally close to the addressee. This usage is generally used by elderly people and especially by elderly men



## 9. Dou ka ne? Genki ka ne?

どうかね。元気かね。

How are you doing? Are you fine?

## 7.2.12.6 Evitatives: avoiding a clear statement

The PP *ne* (ね) can mark the stance of a speaker that he/she wants to avoid making a clear statement. In this case, the PP *ne* (ね) can also be pronounced with a long vowel [e.]: *nee* (ねえ [ne:]).

## 10. A: Kono hon wa omoshiroi to omoi-mase-n ka?

この本は面白いと思いませんか。

Don't you think this is an interesting book?

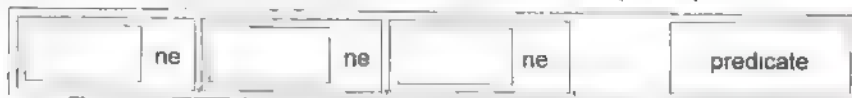
## B: Sou desu nee

そうですねえ。

Well, .

## 7.2.12.7 Emphasis + Copulatives (conjunction of sentence constituents/clauses)

Entries (constituents/entities) such as nouns, adverbs, adverbials and postpositional phrases, or even subordinate clauses, can be conjoined with the PP *ne* (ね) in order to make an emphatic statement. This use, however, is very colloquial.



## 11. Ano desu ne, o-taku no inu na n desu ga ne, itsumo hoe-rare-te desu ne, koma-t-te-ru n desu kedo, dou ni ka nari-mase-n ka?

あのですね、お宅の犬なんですかね、いつも吠えられてですね、困ってるんですけど、どうにかなりませんか。

Well, it's about your dog. He always barks at me, and I'm fed up with it. Can't you do something about it?

## 12. Kinou ne, machi no depâto de ne, koukou-jidai no tomodachi ni ne, a-t-ta n da kedo ne, hisashi-buri da-t-ta mon de ne, sugu ni wa wakara-na-ka-t-ta n da yo

昨日ね、町のデパートでね、高校時代の友達にね、会ったんだけどね、久しぶり

だったもんでね、すぐには分からなかったんだよ。

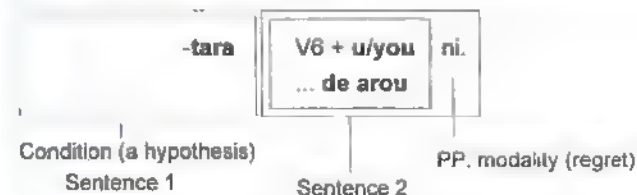
You know, I met an old friend of mine in a department store in town yesterday. We went to the same high school. But, you know, because we haven't seen each other for such a long time, I didn't recognize him/her at first.

## 7.2.13 ni (に)

The main characteristic of the PP *ni* (に) is its poly-functionality encompassing multifarious syntactic, semantic and pragmatic roles. It belongs to the categories of case marking PPs (see § 3.2.6), copulative PPs (see § 4.2.5), conjunctive PPs (see § 6.2.16), and finally modality expressing PPs as explained below.

## 7.2.13.1 Hypothesis + Regret/Being relieved: &lt; V6+ u/you + ni &gt;

The speaker thinks that his/her present situation could have been different if only something in the past had not occurred. In this respect, it is an expression of hypothesis that is conveyed with the use of the subordinate clause (Sentence 1 below) and the *tara*-conditional form. *Tara* (たら) is a conditional form of the auxiliary verb *ta* (た) marking the perfective aspect or the past tense. The speaker's regret at being in the present disagreeable/unpleasant/unacceptable situation, or the contrary feeling of being relieved that something is not the case at present, is described with the main clause (Sentence 2) which is marked with the sentence-final PP *ni* (に). The auxiliary verbs *u* (う) or *you* (よう)<sup>29</sup> are used as assumption markers.

1. Chichi sae iki-te-i-te-kure-tara, konna ni kurushima-naku temo su-n-da daro-u ni.  
父さえ生きていてくれたら、こんなに苦しまなくてもすんだらうに。  
If only my father were alive! Then I wouldn't have to suffer so much now.

<sup>29</sup> Morphosyntactically speaking, words belonging to auxiliaries (see § 0.4) in the traditional School Grammar, are inflectional suffixes having verbal, i-adjectival, and other inflections. However, pertinent to their semantic functions in that they mark meanings such as causatives (to let), desideratives (would like to), honorifics (could, would), assumptions (may, might), hortatives (to let, shall), duties (must, should), and capabilities (can), they are treated as auxiliaries in this handbook. Semantically, however, they do not fully correspond to English auxiliaries, because they also mark negations (not) using *nai* (ない), *zu* (ず), *nu* (ぬ) and *n* (ん); passives with *reru* (れる) and *rareru* (られる); tense and aspect using *ta* (た); *wili* (う [う] and *you* [よう]); a hearsay (*souda* [そうだ]); appearance (*youda* [ようだ]) *mitai* [みたい], *rashii* [らしい] and *souda* [そうだ]), and other functions.



## 2. Ano ressha ni no-t-te-i-tara, shi-n-de-i-ta de aro-u ni

あの列車に乗っていたら、死んでいたであらうに。

Had I taken that train, I would have been killed. / ..., I would be dead now

## 7.2.14 no (の)

The poly-functional PP **no (の)** has case marking (see § 3.2.7), copulative (see § 4.2.6), and modality expressing functions. This subsection elaborates on four such sentient roles. Generally, the PP **no (の)** has connotations of feminine properties, but can also be used at times by men (see § 7.2.14.2). The context determines its function and connotations. The syntactic structure is illustrated below:

Sentence no

## 7.2.14.1 Expressing softness or gentleness

The PP **no (の)** can function as a feminine or an infantile marker so that, in this case, women or small children use this PP. In general, statements ending with the PP **no (の)** thus sound very soft (see Sentences 1, 2 and 3 below). The PP **no (の)** also marks intimacy indicating that the speaker and the interlocutor are in a close relationship, such as family members, friends, colleagues and so on (see Sentences 1 and 3). However, when the PP **no (の)** is agglutinated to a predicate in the polite **desu-masu**-style (see § 0.7 and 0.7.1), the speaker indicates a certain emotional distance to the hearer with an implication of being snobbish (see Sentence 2). When it is used by small children of pre-school age (both male and female), their statements sound very infantile and cute (see § Sentence 3).

## 1. Ima ryoun-shi-te-ru no. Dakara te ga hanas-e-nai no

今料理してるの。だから手が離せないの。

I'm cooking just now. That's why I can't do anything else

## 2. Watakushi, ima, ryouri-shi-te-ori-masu no. Desukara, te ga hanas-e-mase-n no.

私、今、料理しておりますの。ですから、手が離せませんの。

I'm cooking just now. That's why I can't do anything else

## 3. Boku o-meme ga itai no. Dakara na-i-te-ru no.

僕おめめが痛い。だから泣いてるの。

I have pains in my eyes. That's why I'm crying now. (The deictic personal noun

boku (僕), meaning I, signals a male speaker)

## 7.2.14.2 Interrogatives + Intimacy

The interrogative PP **no (の)** can be used without any restriction of gender or age. It not only marks a question but also intimacy.

## 4. Naze na-i-te-ru no?

なぜ泣いてるの。

Why are you crying?

## 5. Nani shi-te-ru no?

何してるの。

What are you doing?

## 7.2.14.3 Criticism

In combination with interrogative pronouns/adverbs (underlined in the examples below), the speaker can express his/her criticism.

6. Naze watashi no iu koto ni shitagawa-nai no!

なぜ私の言う事に従わないの。

Why don't you obey me! (You should do what I tell you.)

7. Itsu shukudai hajimeru no!

いつ宿題始めるの。

When are you going to start doing your homework! (Do your homework now!)

## 7.2.14.4 Persuasion

The speaker can express his/her intention to persuade the hearer by using the PP **no (の)**. In respect to the hierarchy, the speaker is in a higher position than the hearer.

## 8. Anata wa o-kane no koto wa shinpai-shi-na-ku-te i no!

あなたは金のお金は心配しなくていいの。

You don't have to worry about money! (I'll take care of it!)

## 7.2.15 sa (さ)

The PP **sa (さ)** has six different functions showing two common characteristics: it is a male gender marker with one exception (see § 7.2.15.6) and it expresses intimacy. It can be used to mark the following five situations: resignation, insistence, third party reported information, emotions and criticism with refutation. In addition, it can conjoin sentence entries (constituents/entities).

## 7.2.15.1 Relaxed statements; resignation

The speaker can convey a nuance of being relaxed or his/her resignation over something by attaching the sentence-final PP **sa (さ)** to the preceding predicate of a statement

## 1. Shinpai-suru koto wa nai sa.

心配する事はないさ。

Don't worry! Everything will be all right. / There's nothing to worry about. (♂)

## 2. Dono seitou o erabo-u to nani mo kawara-nai sa. M nna onaji sa.

どの政党を選ぼうと何も変わらないさ。皆同じさ。

Well, no matter to which political party you cast your vote, it doesn't make any difference. They are all the same. (♂)

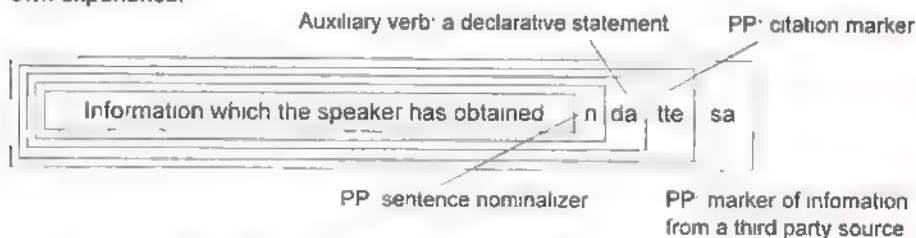
## 7.2.15.2 Insistence

The insistence of a speaker about something can be marked using the PP **sa (さ)**

3. Boku datte sonna koto dekiru sa!  
 僕だってそんな事出来るさ。  
*I can do it, too! (♂)*

### 7.2.15.3 Information from a third party; third party reported information

With the following sentence construction, the speaker gives the addressee some information, which he/she has obtained from somebody else. The case marking PP *tte* (って: see § 3.4.7.3) marks the direct/indirect speech<sup>30</sup>; the PP *sa* (さ) signals that the speaker obtained this information from somebody else and it is not based on his/her own experience.



4. Tanaka-san mou Nihon ni kae-t-ta n da-tte sa  
 田中さんもう日本に帰ったんだってさ。  
*I've heard that Mr/Ms Tanaka had gone back to Japan.*
5. Nihon de ookina jishin ga a-t-ta n da-tte sa  
 日本で大きな地震があったんだってさ。  
*I've heard that there was a big earthquake in Japan.*

### 7.2.15.4 Being emotionally affected

Various kinds of emotional feelings are marked with the PP *sa* (さ). Sentence 6 serves as just one example of many possibilities for this use of the PP *sa* (さ).

6. Kono hon omoshiroi t-tara aru shi-nai no sa!  
 この本面白いと思ったらありやしないのさ。  
*This book is absolutely interesting!*

### 7.2.15.5 Criticism + Refutation

The PP *sa* (さ) is used when the speaker wants to refute someone's opinion or argument. It also indicates the feeling of the speaker that he/she is not satisfied or does not agree with an opinion/argument of the hearer. When it is used in conjunction with an interrogative pronoun/adverb, it can be a marker of a threat or a warning from the speaker.

7. Naze warui no sa!  
 なぜ悪いのさ。  
*What's wrong with it then!*

<sup>30</sup> As mentioned in Footnote 12 in § 3.2.9.4, the differentiation of direct and indirect (or reported) speech in Japanese is not morphosyntactically overtly marked.

8. Nani sa, sono taido!  
 何さ、その態度。  
*What do you mean! How can you behave like that!*  
*What do you mean by behaving like that!*

### 7.2.15.6 Copulatives: conjunction of sentence constituents

In the Tokyo dialect, the PP *sa* (さ) can be placed after nouns, postpositional phrases, adverbs, or adverbials, to conjoin them. This usage is very colloquial and corresponds clearly to the English expression *you know*, which can also be employed to connect sentence constituents. Note that the emotionally intensified form *saa* (さあ [sa:]) is also used. In this case, the vowel [a] is replaced by the long vowel [a:] (see § 7.2.12.7).

9. Sore ga sa, un warui koto ni sa, ryokou-chuu ni sa, o-kane o sa, nusuma-re-cha-t-ta n da yo.  
 それがさ、運悪いことにさ、旅行中にさ、お金をさ、盗まれちゃったんだよ。  
*I was unlucky you know I had all money stolen during my trip, you know.*

### 7.2.16 tara/ttara (たら/ったら [?tara])

Three different sentient features are signaled by the PP *tara/ttara* (たら/ったら [?tara]) using the syntactic constructions illustrated below: impatience (see § 7.2.16.1), astonishment (see § 7.2.16.2), and commands/suggestions (see § 7.2.16.3). *Ttara* [?tara] is a variant of *tara*<sup>31</sup> (the glottal stop [ʔ] is inserted at the beginning) which is required in the first two constructs, namely when marking impatience or astonishment (see also the PP *tteba* [ってば] [?teba] in § 7.2.17), but optional when used to form commands/suggestions

#### 7.2.16.1 Impatience

In the construct below, the variant PP *ttara* (ったら [?tara]) is used to express the

Noun	
i-adjective	
o+V2	ttara
V5	

<sup>31</sup> The PP *tara* (たら) can be considered as an inflectional form of the tense marker auxiliary verb *ta* (た) which indicates the past tense or the perfective aspect. However, it is treated as a modality expressing PP in this book because of the following two semantic and syntactic reasons. First, it expresses semantically emotional feelings of the speaker. Second, it is syntactically sentence-final which is the main characteristic of modality expressing PPs. The PP *ttara* (ったら [?tara]) is phonologically speaking, a product of progressive assimilation: it is used when the stem of the V3-form of verbs (see § 0.6.1.1) ends with vowels or consonants, namely voiceless palato-alveolar affricate [tʃ] and voiced lingual flap [ɾ]. An exception is the verb *ik-u* (行く / to go), which also requires *ttara* [?tara]: *i-ttara* (行ったら). Likewise, the other phonological variant *dara* (だら) is used when the verb stem ends with consonants such as voiced bilabial plosive [b], voiced bilabial nasal [m], voiced alveolar nasal [n], voiced palatal nasal [ɲ], voiced velar nasal [ŋ], and voiced uvular nasal [ɴ] (See § 0.6.1.2). Phonetic alphabets [n], [ɲ], [ŋ] and [ɴ] are all written with the letter *n* in the transcription.

speaker's impatience. Note that, in this case, **na**-adjectives are excluded from being used to build the preceding predicate (cf. **tteba** [ってば] [ʔteba], § 7.2.17.1).

1. Anata **ttara**, watashi no i-t-te-ru koto chanto ki-i-te n no?  
あなたったら、私の言ってる事ちゃんと聞いてんの。  
*Are you listening to me! (You aren't listening to me!) (♀)*
2. Chotto, o-machi **ttara**!  
ちょっと、お待ちったら。  
*Wait a second! (Haven't you got any patience?) (♂/♀)*
3. Sonna koto totemo ja nai kedo i-e-nai **ttara**!  
そんな事とてもじゃないけど言えないったら。  
*How can I say such a thing! (It's unbelievable!) (♂/♀)*
4. Hayaku aruke-**ttara**!  
速く歩けったら。  
*Walk faster! (You're walking too slowly. I don't have any patience any more!) (♂)*

### 7.2.16.2 Astonishment

The speaker's surprise/amazement/astonishment can be marked with the PP **ttara** (ったら) (see also § 7.2.17.2).

Noun	<b>ttara</b>
------	--------------

5. Maa, Tanaka-san no kawai-you **ttara**!  
まあ、田中さんの変り様ったら。  
*Wow, Mr/Ms Tanaka has completely changed!*

### 7.2.16.3 Imperatives: commands or suggestions

The speaker can gently give an order or make a suggestion to the hearer that the hearer should do something. This can be marked using the PP **tara** (たら)/**ttara** (ったら) (see § 0.6.1.2 for the TARA-form/TTARA-form of verbal inflections). Whether the speaker's statement is a command or simply a suggestion depends on the suprasegmental features such as intonation contours and stress

TARA-form of verbs	ʔ/!
--------------------	-----

6. Hima nara anata mo tetsuda-**ttara**! / ... tetsuda-**ttara**?  
暇ならあなたも手伝ったら。  
*If you have nothing to do, help us!*  
*If you have nothing to do, maybe you could help us.*
7. Tsukare-ta no nara, sukoshi yasu-n-**dara**! / ... yasu-n-**dara**?  
疲れたのなら、少し休んだら。  
*If you are tired, take a short break!*  
*Are you tired? Why don't you take a short break?*

### 7.2.17 **tteba** (ってば [ʔteba])/teba (てば)

The PP **tteba** (ってば [ʔteba])<sup>32</sup> shares two of the same functions as the PP **ttara** (ったら [ʔtara]) marking impatience (see § 7.2.16.1) and astonishment (see § 7.2.16.2). The syntactic patterns are given in the following two subsections.

#### 7.2.17.1 Impatience

The speaker's intolerance can be marked using the PP **tteba** (ってば [ʔteba]). Unlike the PP **ttara** (ったら [ʔtara]; § 7.2.16.1), **na**-adjectives can be used to form the preceding predicate. In cases of morphological formations < o + V2 + **tteba** > and < V5 + **tteba** >, an imperative meaning that the speaker is impatiently commanding the addressee to do something also arises (see Sentences 3 and 4). Expressions using these sentence structures are, however, very abrupt

Noun	
i-adjective	
na-adjective + da	<b>tteba</b>
o+V2	
V5	

1. Mama **tteba**, hayaku shi-te yo! Sonna no kantan da **tteba**!  
ママってば、早くしてよ そんなの簡単だってば。  
*Mama! Quick! It's so easy!*
2. Sensei ni sonna koto i-t-tara, warui **tteba**!  
先生にそんな事言ったら、悪いってば。  
*You can't say something like that to your teacher! It's absolutely wrong to do so!*
3. Sassa to o-hairi **tteba**!  
さっさとお入りってば。  
*Come on! Come into the room quickly!*
4. Hayaku kuruma ni nore-**tteba**!  
早く車に乗れってば。  
*Get into the car quickly! (I can't wait any longer!) (♂)*

#### 7.2.17.2 Astonishment (cf. § 7.2.16.2)

A feeling of being speechless due to surprise can be marked using the PP **tteba** (ってば [ʔteba])

Noun	<b>tteba</b>
------	--------------

<sup>32</sup> Morphologically speaking, the PP **tteba** (ってば [ʔteba]) can be analysed as the compound of conjunctive PPs **te** (て see §§ 6.2.21 and 0.6.1.2) and **ba** (ば, see § 6.2.1), which begins with an intensifying glottal stop [ʔ]. This book treats the PP **tteba** (ってば [ʔteba]) as an independent modality expressing PP due to its semantic and syntactic character.



5. Maa, anata tteba, mada nete-ru no! Mou gogo no ichi-ji yo!  
 まあ、あなたってば、まだ寝てるの。もう午後の一時よ。  
*Gee! Are you still in bed? It's one o'clock in the afternoon! (♀)*

### 7.2.18 tomo (とも)

The PP **tomo** (とも) marks the speaker's stance that he/she is sure about something. It can be either his/her firm decision to do something (see § 7.2.18 1), or a definite confirmation of something (see § 7.2.18 2)

#### 7.2.18.1 Certainty/confidence

The speaker can indicate his/her confidence in something by using the PP **tomo** (とも). The preceding predicate can be negated, or in the past tense, depending on what the speaker wishes to say.

V3 or < V2 + masu >	tomo	!
---------------------	------	---

1. Mochiron konsâto ni iki-masu tomo.  
 勿論コンサートに行きますとも。  
*Of course, I will go to the concert. (There's no doubt about it.)*
2. Kamai-mase-n tomo  
 構いませんとも。  
*Of course, it's all right / No problem at all!*

#### 7.2.18.2 Indications of strong confirmation

When the speaker wants to signal a firm confirmation of something, he/she can express it using the PP **tomo** (とも). The preceding predicate has, in general, a static nature designating a state or characteristic of something. Mostly, the i-adjective **ii** (いい/good) is used for this sentence structure

i-adjective	tomo	!
-------------	------	---

3. A: Kono shigoto kyou-juu ni shi-age-te-kure-nai?  
 この仕事今日中に仕上げてくれない?  
*Can you finish this work today?*  
 B: Aa, ii tomo. Ya-t-te-oku yo.  
 ああ、いいとも。やっておくよ。  
*Certainly I'll finish it. (♂)*

### 7.2.19 wa (わ)

The PP **wa** (わ) has three functions: a marker of femininity (see § 7.2.19.1), an indication of emotions (see § 7.2.19.2), and a copulative role of listing miscellaneous actions/happenings (see § 7.2.19.3). In its first role, it is obviously also a female gender

marker. As an indication of emotions, the PP **wa** (わ) can be used by both males and females, however the suprasegmental characteristics differ between the two genders (see § 7.2.19.2). The copulative PP **wa** (わ) is used by both men and women with a falling intonation. The PP **wa** (わ) described in this subsection differentiates itself from the topic marker PP **wa** (は: see § 3.4.9) in its orthography, although, phonetically, they both have the same pronunciation [wa]. They also differ from each other syntactically in that the modality expressing PP **wa** (わ) is a sentence-final PP (see the sentence structure below), while the case marking PP **wa** (は) is juxtaposed after nouns, adverbials, or postpositional phrases

Sentence	wa (わ)
----------	--------

#### 7.2.19.1 Softness

Women can use the sentence-final PP **wa** (わ) in order to make their statements sound softer and more feminine

1. Kono kuruma ii wa yo.  
 この車いいわよ。  
*This car is good. (♀)*
2. Ara, iya da wa. O-saifu wasure-cha-ta wa  
 あら、いやだわ。お財布忘れちゃったわ。  
*Oh, how stupid of me I didn't take my purse with me. (♀)*

#### 7.2.19.2 Being emotionally affected

Various emotional feelings of the speaker, such as being impressed by something, happy, disgusted, astonished, and many other feelings, can be marked with the PP **wa** (わ). The PP **wa** (わ), in this role, is used both by men and women but with different intonations; women tend to utter statements marked with the PP **wa** (わ) with a rising intonation, whereas male speakers use a falling intonation.

3. Shiken ni uka-t-ta nante ureshii wa!  
 試験に受かったなんて嬉しいわ。  
*Wow! I passed the exam! I'm so happy about it! (♀)*
4. Maa, kono hana kirei da wa!  
 まあ、この花綺麗だわ。  
*Wow, this flower is beautiful! (♀)*
5. Korya ii wa!  
 こりやいいわ。  
*This is fantastic! (♂/♀)*
6. Yoku iu wa!  
 よく言うわ。  
*How could he/she say that! (It's ridiculous!) (♂/♀)*

## 7.2.19.3 Copulatives + Exaggeration + Emotionality

The speaker wishes to express his/her emotion (astonishment/anger/disappointment, etc.) and does this by listing reasons for his/her present state of mind. By using the PP **wa (わ)** for this purpose, the speaker automatically gives the impression to the hearer that he/she is exaggerating in order to give emphasis to his/her reasons.

7. Kaisha wa kubi ni naru wa, nyoubou ni wa rikon-sa-reru wa, warui koto darake da  
会社は首になるわ、女房には離婚されるわ、悪い事だらけだ。  
*I was fired from my company. My wife has divorced me. I really seem to be having a run of bad luck! (I'm quite upset.)* (♂)
8. Jiko ni au wa, suri ni o-kane o tora-reru wa, kondo no ryokou wa hidoi me ni a-t-ta  
事故に遭うわ、スリにお金を取られるわ、今度の旅行はひどい目に遭った。  
*I had an accident. I had my money stolen by a pickpocket. This time I really only had bad luck during my trip! (What a trip!)*
9. Ano hito wa, tomodachi ni shakkin-suru wa, ya-chin tameru wa de, taihen da!  
あの人は、友達に借金するわ、家賃溜めるわで、大変だ。  
*He/She has to borrow money from his/her friends, and he/she can't pay his/her monthly rent. He's/She's going through a really hard time! (It's hard to believe!)*

## 7.2.20 wai (わい)

The PP **wai (わい)** has the basic function of expressing various emotions of the speaker and is also an age and gender marker; in general, elder men use this PP.

## 7.2.20.1 Expressing emotional feelings: regret, joy, happiness, surprise, etc.

The speaker's emotions such as regret, happiness, etc., or feelings of being impressed about something, can be marked with the PP **wai (わい)**.

1. Chotto nomi-sugi-ta wai  
ちょっと飲みすぎたわい。  
*Oh well, I've drunk a little too much. (I shouldn't really have drunk so much!)* (♂)
2. Kore wa ii wai!  
これはいいわい。  
*Oh, this is fantastic! (I feel great!)* (♂)
3. Kore de yatto anshin-dekiru wai! (♂)  
これでやっと安心できるわい。  
*Oh, I'm so relieved to hear that! (At last I don't have to worry about it any more!)*

## 7.2.20.2 Abrupt statements

The PP **wai (わい)** can be used to mark that the speaker is deliberately making an abrupt statement with the aim of expressing his anger, irritation, frustration, etc. When compared with the next function, namely an indication of being offended (see § 7.2.20.3), the emphasis is put on a verbally, very abrupt articulation.

4. Sonna koto shira-n wai!  
そんな事知らんわい。  
*I don't know! (How can I know that! / How can you ask such a question?)* (♂)
5. Nagusame no kotoba nante ira-n wai!  
慰めの言葉なんて要らんわい。  
*You don't have to console me! (Mind your own business!)* (♂)

## 7.2.20.3 Expressing offense

The speaker's feeling of being annoyed or offended can be marked with the PP **wai (わい)**.

6. Taihen na koto o shi-te-kureru wai!  
大変な事をしてくれるわい。  
*What a thing he/she has done! (This makes me mad/furious/upset!)* (♂)

## 7.2.21 ya (や)

The PP **ya (や)** is multifunctional having six functions, it can be used to build an indirect (see § 7.2.21.1) or urgent command (see § 7.2.21.2), to indicate a monologue (see § 7.2.21.3) or rhetorical question (see § 7.2.21.4), to draw someone's attention (see § 7.2.21.5), or to emphasize a statement at the same time as indicating strong emotional feelings (see § 7.2.21.6).

## 7.2.21.1 Imperatives (indirect commands): &lt; V6 + u/you + ya &gt;

In conjunction with the auxiliary verbs **u/you (う/よう)**, which mark an indirect imperative, the sentence-final PP **ya (や)** signals the speaker's intention to urge, encourage, advise, or persuade somebody to do something. This usage is limited to men and has the following structure.

V6 + u/you	ya
------------	----

1. Mou kaero-u ya  
もう帰ろうや。  
*Let's go back home!* (♂)
2. Sa, iko-u ya.  
さ、行こうや。  
*Let's go!* (♂)

## 7.2.21.2 Imperatives (urgent commands): &lt; V5 + ya + V5 &gt;

This imperative usage is limited to idiomatic expressions with the following sentence structure and is not used so frequently in Modern Japanese

V5	ya	V5	!
----	----	----	---

3. Isog-e ya isog-e!  
急げや急げ!  
Hurry up!

### 7.2.21.3 Monologues

The speaker utters a monologue trying to persuade himself/herself of something. This nuance can be expressed using the PP ya (や).

4. Maa, kono gurai de ii ya.  
まあ、このくらいでいいや。  
Oh well, that's good enough. / It'll do

### 7.2.21.4 Rhetorical questions: < ... koto ga ari-mashou ya >

A question that is posed for the sake of effect and to which no answer is expected can be signaled using the PP ya (や). The resulting expression sounds very formal



5. Naze sou shi-na-kere ba nara-nai koto ga ari-masho-u ya.  
なぜそうしなければならぬことがありましようや。  
Why do I have to do it? (Of course, I don't have to.)

### 7.2.21.5 Drawing somebody's attention

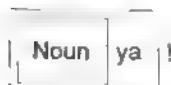
A speaker can try to attract the attention of the hearer by saying his/her name and marking it with the PP ya (や). This usage is observed mostly among elderly people when they are speaking to a younger interlocutor. This usage is, however, withering away in Modern Japanese; the PP yo (よ) is replacing it (see § 7.2.24.8).



6. Mitsuru ya! Doko ni iku n da i?  
満や。どこに行くんだい。  
Mitsuru! Where are you going? (♂)

### 7.2.21.6 Emphasis + Being emotionally affected

A speaker's emotional state of being deeply moved can be marked using the PP ya (や). In Modern Japanese, this usage is limited to citations of poems written in Classical Japanese



7. Furuike ya kawazu tobikomu mizu no oto!

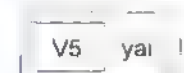
古池や蛙飛び込む水の音  
In the old pond,  
A frog springs!  
The echo of the water!

### 7.2.22 yai (やい)

The PP yai (やい) has three functions: building imperatives (see § 7.2.22.1), indicating contempt (see § 7.2.22.2), and making definitive statements (see § 7.2.22.3). It is a male gender marker and is, therefore, used by male speakers. The PP yai (やい) also designates intimacy between the speaker and the addressee.

#### 7.2.22.1 Imperatives: mild, intimate commands

Using the PP yai (やい), the speaker can command a hearer to do something in a very gentle way



1. Yose yai  
よせやい。  
Stop it! (♂)

#### 7.2.22.2 Contempt

Contempt of the speaker for the addressee can be marked using the PP yai (やい) as outlined in the structure below



2. Nakimushi yai!  
泣き虫やい。  
You are a crybaby! (♂)
3. Yowamushi yai!  
弱虫やい。  
You are a coward! (♂)

#### 7.2.22.3 Definitive statements

The PP yai (やい) can mark that the speaker wants to make a clear and definitive statement to the hearer

4. Sonna n ja nai yai!  
そんなんじゃないやい。  
It's not like that! / It really isn't like that! (♂)

### 7.2.23 yara (やら)

The PP yara (やら) marks uncertainty in the sense that the speaker is wondering about



something and is, therefore, used in monologues. The sentence structure is illustrated below.



### 7.2.23.1 Uncertainty

The speaker is not sure about something and is wondering about it. This attitude can be expressed using the PP **yara** (やら) in conjunction with interrogatives (nouns/ adverbs/ attributes) as illustrated below. In each case, the interrogatives have been underlined.

1. Uchi no inu wa doko ni i-t-ta **yara**. ('doko': an interrogative noun)  
家の犬はどこに行ったやら。  
*I wonder where our dog has gone.*
2. Ano ko wa nani o kangae-te-iru **yara**. ('nani': an interrogative noun)  
あの子は何を考えているやら。  
*I wonder what he/she is thinking about.*
3. Ano hito wa itsu kae-t-te-kuru koto **yara**. ('itsu': an interrogative adverb)  
あの人はいつ帰って来る事やら。  
*I wonder when he/she's coming back*
4. Dare ga atarashii shiten-chou ni naru **yara**. ('dare': an interrogative noun)  
誰が新しい支店長になるやら。  
*I wonder who is going to be the new head of our branch office.*
5. Ano ko wa dou-shite kurashi-te-iru **yara**. ('dou-shite': an interrogative adverbial)  
あの子はどうして暮らしているやら。  
*I wonder how he/she is living.*
6. Kondo kuru sensei wa donna sensei **yara**. ('donna': an interrogative attribute)  
今度来る先生はどんな先生やら。  
*I wonder what kind of a teacher our next teacher is going to be.*

### 7.2.24 yo (よ)

The PP **yo** (よ) is poly-functional having eight distinct functions. However, they all share one common presupposition: the addressee does not have certain information known to the speaker (see Diagrams 6 and 7 below). Therefore, the speaker tries to draw the addressee's attention to this information using methods, such as warnings, commands, enquiring by using different emotional attitudes. The following differentiation of the functions (see § 7.2.24.1—7.2.24.8) is based on these different methods of drawing attention. In contrast to this key function of the PP **yo** (よ), the PP **ne** (ね) is its antonym; in this case, the speaker presupposes that the hearer already knows the information that the speaker is trying to put across (see §§ 7.2.12.3 and 7.2.12.4).<sup>33</sup> The PP **yo** (よ) can be used by both male and female speakers, however some sentence structures require the speaker to be a specific gender (see §§

<sup>33</sup> Read Kamio (1996; 1997) and Cook (2001) for further discussion.

### 7.2.24.1 and 7.2.24.3)

Diagram 6: The sentence-final PP **yo** (よ)

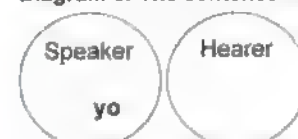
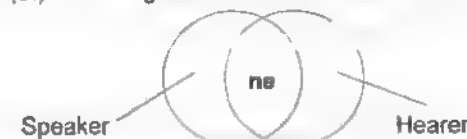


Diagram 7: The sentence-final PP **ne** (ね)



### 7.2.24.1 Definitive statements + Giving information

The speaker wants to persist in his/her opinion, or he/she wants to express his/her opinion in a definitive manner in order to persuade the hearer that what he/she is saying is true or correct. In such cases, the PP **yo** (よ) is placed at the end of the sentence. The PP **yo** (よ) when used for this function, can be employed by both male and female speakers. However, there is a differentiation made in the sentence structures employed. The following sentence patterns can only be used by female speakers: < N yo >; < ... no yo >; < ... te yo >; < ... koto yo >; < ... wa yo >.

1. Hontou **yo** Kono hon omoshiroi wa **yo**  
本当よ。この本面白いわよ。  
*It's true. This book is interesting. (♀)*
2. Hontou na no **yo** Sugu wakari-mashi-te **yo**.  
本当なのよ。すぐ分かりましてよ。  
*It's true. You can understand it right away. (♀)*
3. Sonna koto i-t-te wa i-mase-n koto **yo**  
そんな事言っではいせん事よ。  
*I'm not saying that!/That's not what I'm saying. (♀)*

The following sentence pattern can be used both by male and female speakers.



4. Hontou da **yo**. / Hontou desu **yo**.  
本当だよ。/本当ですよ。  
*It's true. (♂/♀)*
5. Sugu ni wakaru **yo**. / sugu ni wakari-masu **yo**  
すぐに分かるよ。/すぐに分かりますよ。  
*You can understand it right away. (♂/♀)*
6. Sore wa chigau **yo**.  
それは違うよ。  
*It's wrong! (♂/♀)*

### 7.2.24.2 Rebuking somebody for something

The fact that the speaker wishes to rebuke the interlocutor for something can be

expressed using the PP **yo** (よ). In this case, the interrogative words (nouns/adverbs/adverbials/attributes) are usually employed (see Sentences 7 and 8), but are not obligatory (see Sentence 9).

7. **Nani desu yo!** Watashi ga warui to demo iu no desu ka? ('Nan' is an interrogative noun.)  
何ですよ。私が悪いとでも言うのですか。  
*What! Do you mean to say that I am responsible for that! (♂/♀)*
8. **Nani i-t-te n no yo!** ('Nani' is an interrogative noun.)  
何言ってるのよ。  
*What are you saying? (♀)*
9. **Konna koto ga wakara-nai no ka yo!**  
こんな事が分からないのかよ。  
*What! Don't you understand such things? (♂)*

#### 7.2.24.3 Requests + Emphasis

In conjunction with sentence structures with which a command or a prohibition is expressed, the PP **yo** (よ) marks the speaker's attitude that he/she is demanding or asking the addressee to do something for him/her. The constructions such as < V3 + **na yo** > and < V5 + **yo** > are used by men (see Sentences 10 and 11), while the structure < ... **te yo** > is used by both male and female speakers (see Sentence 12).

10. **Sou okoru na yo.**  
そう怒るなよ。  
*Please don't be so mad at me! (♂)*
11. **Hayaku shiro yo**  
早くしろよ。  
*Please! Hurry up! (♂)*
12. **Chotto ma-t-te yo.**  
ちょっと待ってよ。  
*Wait a minute! (♂/♀)*

#### 7.2.24.4 Suggestions + A coquettish attitude

When the speaker, male or female, wants to suggest to the hearer that he/she does something together, the statement is marked with the PP **yo** (よ) in conjunction with the auxiliary verbs **u** (う) or **you** (よう). Both auxiliaries express an exhortation indicating an indirect command, i.e., *let us* .... Also, the coquettish attitude of the speaker can be synchronously expressed depending on the tone in the way the statement is said

13. **Eiga demo mi ni iki-masho-u yo**  
映画でも見に行きましょうよ。  
*Why don't we go to the movies! / Let's go to the movies!*

14. **Chuuka-ryouri tabe ni iko-u yo**  
中華料理食べに行こうよ。  
*Let's go to a Chinese restaurant!*

#### 7.2.24.5 Giving information + Emotional attitudes

The PP **yo** (よ) can mark that the speaker wants to inform the addressee of something, which affected the speaker emotionally

15. **Ano machi wa kirei desu yo!**  
あの町は綺麗ですよ。  
*It's a very beautiful city! / It's such a nice city!*
16. **Kore wa benri desu yo!**  
これは便利ですよ。  
*This is so practical!*

#### 7.2.24.6 A perfunctory attitude + Dissatisfaction: < ... **deshou yo** >

The speaker is dissatisfied with, or angry/frustrated about something, and expresses this feeling with resignation. This attitude can be marked using the PP **yo** (よ). In this case, the sentence structure < ... **deshou yo** > is used.

17. **Douse watashi nanka ni wa muri desho-u yo**  
どうせ私なんかには無理でしょうよ。  
*Oh, well, so you think this is too difficult for me, do you? (I don't care what you think about it!)*
18. **Douse watashi wa baka desho-u yo**  
どうせ私は馬鹿でしょうよ。  
*I'm only a fool anyway! (I don't care what you say about me!)*

#### 7.2.24.7 Drawing attention + Giving information

The speaker wants to draw attention to something in order to inform the hearer of something about it. This can be achieved by placing the PP **yo** (よ) at the end of the sentence

19. **Kore wa boku no hon desu yo**  
これは僕の本ですよ。  
*Look! This is my book. (♂)*

#### 7.2.24.8 Drawing somebody's attention

The speaker wants to draw the attention of the addressee to him/her by calling his/her name. This can be achieved by marking his/her name with the PP **yo** (よ).

20. **Yamada-kun yo, hayaku kaero-u.**  
山田君よ、早く帰ろう。  
*Yamada! Let's go back home! (♂)*

## 7.2.25 ze (ぜ)

Alongside the sentient roles of drawing attention with or without showing surprise and being arrogant, the PP **ze** (ぜ) is a male gender marker without any age constraints (cf. **wai** in § 7.2.20). The PP **ze** (ぜ) encodes intimacy and it is, therefore, used among very close friends. If not, it sounds very abrupt and rude.

## 7.2.25.1 Drawing attention

The speaker wants to draw the attention of the hearer to something

1. Hayaku iko-u ze!  
早く行こうぜ。  
*Let's go!* (♂)
2. Jaa, tanomu ze!  
じゃあ、頼むぜ。  
*Do it for me, OK?* (♂)
3. Oi, inu ga ki-ta ze!  
おい、犬が来たぜ。  
*Watch out! A dog is coming!* (♂)

## 7.2.25.2 Arrogance

The speaker's arrogance can be indicated with the use of the PP **ze** (ぜ)

4. Ikura ganba-t-tatte muda da ze!  
いくら頑張ったって無駄だぜ。  
*It won't work even if you do your best!* (♂)

## 7.2.25.3 Drawing attention + Expressing surprise

The PP **ze** (ぜ) marks that the speaker draws the attention of the addressee to something, which is astonishing/surprising.

5. Oi kinou no konsâto sugo-kat-ta ze!  
おい、昨日のコンサートすごかったぜ。  
*Hey, yesterday's concert was fantastic!* (♂)
6. Kono nedan sugoi ze!  
この値段すごいぜ。  
*Look at this price! It's so expensive/cheap!* (♂)

## 7.2.26 zo (ぞ)

The PP **zo** (ぞ) has five functions. The first two roles, marking a monologue or drawing attention and, at the same time, cautioning (see §§ 7.2.26.1 and 7.2.26.2) are generally used by men. The remaining three functions, namely rhetorical statements, emphasizing, or scolding (see §§ 7.2.26.3—7.2.26.5), can be used by both men and women. However, it is no longer common in Modern Japanese and, therefore, sounds very classical.

## 7.2.26.1 Monologues

The speaker is thinking about something and is speaking to himself. In such cases, the PP **zo** (ぞ) can be used. This usage is limited to men.

1. Hate, okashii zo  
はて、おかしいぞ。  
*What? That's strange.* (♂)
2. Kyou wa ganbaru zo!  
今日は頑張るぞ。  
*I will do my best today!* (♂)
3. Kore wa koma-t-ta zo.  
これはこまったぞ。  
*Oh, what shall I do? (I'm in trouble!)* (♂)

## 7.2.26.2 Drawing attention + Cautioning

In this role, only men use the PP **zo** (ぞ). Hierarchically, the speaker and the hearer are of equal rank, or the speaker is superior to the hearer. The speaker wants to draw the attention of the hearer to something in order to give him/her a warning, a command, a threat, or such. The aim of his statement depends on the situation.

4. Hayaku shi-ro! Densha ni okureru zo!  
早くしろ。電車に遅れるぞ。  
*Hurry up! Otherwise you'll miss your train!* (♂)
5. Shikkari benkyou-suru n da zo!  
しっかり勉強するんだぞ。  
*Study hard!* (♂)
6. Uso o tsu-i-tara shouchi-shi-nai zo!  
嘘を吐いたら承知しないぞ。  
*If you lie to me, I'll never forgive you!* (♂)

## 7.2.26.3 Rhetorical statements &lt; V6 + u/you + zo &gt;

The speaker makes an interrogative statement using the auxiliary verbs **u** (う) or **you** (よう), which mark an assertion without expecting an answer. A negated answer to the question is the main message that the speaker wishes to make, but which is not uttered. The PP **zo** (ぞ) can be used in this case, as illustrated in the sentence schema below

V6 + u/you	zo
------------	----

7. Dare ga sonna koto o shi-you zo!  
誰がそんな事をしようぞ。  
*Who would do such a thing! (Nobody!)*



8. Dou-shite kotowar-e-you zo!  
 どうして断れようぞ。  
*How could I reject it! (It's impossible!)*

#### 7.2.26.4 Emphasis

By using the PP zo (ぞ) the speaker can place emphasis on his/her statement.

9. Kore o nashi-e-nai de, nan no jinsei zo!  
 これをなし得ないで、何の人生ぞ。  
*It really isn't much of a life, if one cannot accomplish this!*

#### 7.2.26.5 Scolding

The speaker gives a signal that he is scolding or criticizing the hearer. This can be marked by the PP zo (ぞ).

10. Nani-goto zo!  
 何事ぞ。  
*What is this! (What a shame!)*

## Chapter 8 Conclusions

The theme of this book, *Japanese postpositions*, has been elaborated by presenting both their linguistic features as a theoretical basis, and an abundance of their concrete examples for practical usage. This approach was taken intentionally in order to combine the two divided fields, namely *theory* and *practice*. A clear separation between pure academic research and concrete and practical teaching of Japanese does not benefit any of the members of the triad: linguists, teachers, and learners. Indeed, in recent years, there have been remarkably many linguistic publications on the Japanese language brought about by different academic disciplines within linguistics. However, there has been a tendency towards making the monographs very academic, which makes it difficult for non-specialists of linguistics to access them. Through my experiences as a lecturer of Japanese linguistics and the Japanese language for many years, I am convinced that linguistic research achievements should be transferred more easily to practical usage in language teaching and learning. This handbook tries to fulfil this aim by bridging the gap between linguistic theories and practical teaching for the benefit of all three participants of the language mentioned afore.

### 8.1 A brief summary of Japanese PPs

Introduction gives the reader the basic knowledge of the Japanese grammar, such as word classes, adjectival and verbal inflections, predicate styles, and other necessary grammatical rules. This will enable the reader to understand explanations that follow in subsequent chapters 1 to 8. Chapter 1 summarizes the main characteristics of Japanese PPs and Chapter 2 presents their categories based on syntactic-semantic criteria. One of the most complex functions of Japanese PPs, namely case marking, is explained in Chapter 3. Owing to syncretism of case marking PPs, they are further divided into two types: Type A (the syntactic-semantic type) and Type B (the syntactic-semantic and modality expressing type). Likewise, explanations of PPs, whose common syntactic function is to list items, are given in Chapter 4. Adverbial functions of PPs are illustrated in Chapter 5, and the roles of clause/sentence coordination are outlined in Chapter 6. The last category of Japanese PPs, scrutinized in Chapter 7, elucidates the sentient feelings or attitudes of the speaker to a proposition and, moreover, towards his/her interlocutor; in this case, they are marked with the modality expressing PPs.

We have seen in Chapters 2 to 7 that entries (constituents/entities) of a sentence are marked by PPs, in order to clarify their syntactic, semantic, or pragmatic relations to one another. Type A case marking PPs, for example, mark in principle, syntactic relations of sentence constituents, such as the subject, the object, the locative (place), the temporative (time), etc. Some of them, however, also have modality components expressing doubt, assumption, certainty, and so on (see Tables 14 and 15 in Chapter 3). Type B case marking PPs designate syntactically a topic of a statement, and pragmatically express emotions or the attitude of the speaker, such as surprise, contempt, intimacy, etc. (see Table 16 in Chapter 3). Copulative PPs, which indicate the relations of constituents in respect to item listing, are chiefly syntactic and semantic case markers. In this case, the emphasis is placed on the semantic feature of *itemizing* (see Table 17-2 in Chapter 4). Yet some of them are also affective designating anger, resignation,

frustration, disgust, and other feelings the speaker has (see Table 18 in Chapter 4). Likewise, adverbial PPs also define syntactic and semantic relations of each entity within a sentence. Syntactically, entities marked with adverbial PPs modify predicates or adverbs. Semantically, many of them share the sememes of exclusiveness, approximation and extremes, meaning *only*, *exclusively*, and the like. They synchronously portray the affective attitude of the speaker: contempt, scorn, doubt, surprise, resignation, and so on (see Table 20 in Chapter 5). The conjunctive PPs have a common syntactic function of coordinating clauses/sentences, while semantically evoking miscellaneous meanings such as *and*, *although*, *because*, *if*, *even if*, etc. Just as other PPs, they are also modality markers as they signal emotions of the speaker such as hesitation, astonishment, firm decisions, unexpectedness, etc. (see Tables 23 and 24 in Chapter 6). The last category, modality expressing PPs,<sup>34</sup> stands for the semantic and pragmatic case markers, as the PPs belonging to this group all denote emotions and attitude the speaker is addressing to his/her interlocutor. Hence, they are used primarily in spoken language and mark more explicitly the pragmatic relations between the speaker and his/her interlocutor. Accordingly, they portray an abundance of deictic elements. For example, honorific *deixis* expresses the hierarchical relations between the speaker and his/her interlocutor, *genus deixis* defines the gender of the speaker, *information deixis* shows, whether or not a statement by the speaker is known to the listener, or whether the topic of a statement is known/unknown to the speaker (Koizumi 1993: 281-311; Koizumi 1996: 48-166; Koizumi 2001).

As has been shown so far, a categorization of Japanese PPs is derived primarily from the syntactic structure of agglutination to nouns, adverbs, or postpositional phrases (case marking, copulative and adverbial PPs), or clauses (conjunctive and modality expressing PPs). Secondly, they are further differentiated from the semantic and pragmatic features in that some of them mark items in a list (copulative PPs), and others exclusively express emotions of the speaker (modality expressing PPs). Based on these criteria, this handbook categorizes eighty different Japanese PPs (see Table 9 in Chapter 1) into six different groups (see Table 12 in Chapter 2).<sup>35</sup>

In short, all of them are attached to nouns, postpositional phrases, adverbs, adverbials, or clauses, in order to designate their syntagmatic relations to one another within a sentence. When we focus on this grammatical category of case, we can say that all Japanese PPs are case markers, i.e. not only those labelled as *case marking PPs*, but also those specified as copulative, adverbial, conjunctive and modality expressing PPs in this work. Nevertheless, I have used the term *case marking PPs* only for those attached

<sup>34</sup> Cook (2001: 176) uses the term *pragmatic particle* for the terminology 'modality expressing PP' used in this book.

<sup>35</sup> Note that there are several different categorizations of the Japanese PPs. For example, Yamada has six categories: case marking (Type A), case marking (Type B), adverbial, conjunctive, final, and interjectional PPs (Kitahara et al. 1988: 217). Tokieda (1986: 185) classifies them into four groups: case marking, delimitative, conjunctive and interjectional PPs. Hashimoto, whose grammatical theory is the basis of School Grammar in Japan, divides them into nine categories: adverbial, quasi-nominal, conjunctive, copulative, nominal, case marking (Type A), case marking (Type B), final, and interjectional PPs (Kitahara 1988: 218; Watanabe 1992: 183). The School Grammar differentiates six different groups (see Footnote 27 in Chapter 7).

to nouns/adverbs/postpositional phrases excluding copulative PPs. First of all, for the reasons that they are mainly noun specifiers with their functions being syntactic and semantic case markers, and secondly those introduced in Chapter 3 also exist in other languages, as shown in the list of grammatical concepts classified by Heine and Kuteva (2002: 16-26)<sup>36</sup> indeed the marking of these cases seems to be the core part of different case systems of many languages.

## 8.2 Relations between PPs and some characteristics of the Japanese language

This descriptive work on Japanese PPs elicits four distinct features of the Japanese language: a different perception of space; the resistance of the Japanese PPs against language change; the subjectivity manifested in the language structure, the high context dependency of Japanese in terms of textlinguistics and pragmatics.

### 8.2.1 Perception of space

The first point primarily touches upon an aspect of cognitive linguistics and pragmatics. Comparing to English or German, there are many local cases in Japanese (see Table 14 in Chapter 3). For instance, choices of local cases, which designate a place of an action, depend on sentence structures and especially on the sememes of predicative verbs used in sentences. Situative verbs designating an existence of something/somebody require the PP *ni* (に), such as "Kono heya ni neko ga iru. (この部屋に猫がいる。/ There is a cat in this room. / Eine Katze ist in diesem Raum.)"; dynamic predicates, which express specific motions (leaving a place/crossing a place/reaching a place/getting into a place), require either the PP *ni* (に), such as in the expression "Toukyou ni tsuku (東京に着く / to arrive in Tokyo / in Tokyo ankommen)", or the PP *o* (を), such as in the expression "kouen o sanpo suru (公園を散歩する / to take a walk in the park / einen Spaziergang im Park machen)". Other dynamic predicates showing intentional actions, and not belonging to the verbs of motion, require the PP *de* (で), such as "kono heya de benkyou-suru (この部屋で勉強する / to study in this room / in diesem Raum lernen)". Further, the PP *no* (の) has to be employed if a sentence's constituent manifesting a place is an attribute to a noun, *kono heya no neko* (この部屋の猫 / a cat in this room / eine Katze in diesem Raum). For all of these expressions, English and German use the preposition *in*, whereas Japanese makes use of four different PPs, namely *ni* (に), *o* (を), *de* (で) and *no* (の).

This indicates that focal points of reference are variously defined and, therefore, the speaker's perception of space seems to be different between Japanese and English, or between Japanese and German. This supports research in cognitive linguistics, as well as, anthropological linguistics, showing that the perception of space and time are indeed different among different languages and in different cultures (Comrie 1981 and 1985; Hall 1969; Nakau et al. 1997; Tanaka 1997: 1-123; Koizumi 2001: 12-23; Nakamura 2001; Matsumoto 1997: 128-228).

### 8.2.2 Resistance against changes

The second aspect deals with language change. It seems that the substantial part of the structure and the meaning of the Japanese language, namely PPs, is not yet

<sup>36</sup> In Heine and Kuteva's descriptive work, about 500 different languages were analysed for their grammaticalization.



influenced by foreign languages. The PPs are indispensable for structuring sentence constituents, and thus for evoking meanings to well structured sentences. In the history of Japanese, there has been an abundance of borrowing from foreign languages. There occurred, hitherto, two important occasions for drastic lexical changes.

The first incident was observed in the Heian-period (794-1192) when a great number of Chinese lexemes were adopted along with the import of Chinese characters. During the time of the Great Voyages in the 15th to 17th centuries in Europe, Portuguese and Spanish missionaries came, in the 16th century, to Japan. From this time on, Japanese had contact with European languages, and thus, it has taken many new words from Dutch, Portuguese, and other European languages. However, this did not bring about a substantial change in the lexical system of Japanese.

The second significant lexical change took place after the Meiji-Restoration in 1867. With an end to the national seclusion of the Tokugawa shogunate (1604-1867), which lasted for over two decades (1641-1854), Japan was confronted with a wealth of many new things from Europe and America, which had to be named using Chinese characters or loan words from European languages (Tamamura 1997: 102-103). These facets of history evince changes on the lexical level in Japanese.

Language change is a process, which has been going on over centuries. And the recent phenomena in the Japanese language that words (nouns, adjectives, adverbs, light verbs, etc.) are replaced with English words seem to be the third such big change in the Japanese lexical system. This can be ascribed to rapid and tremendous developments in today's information technology. The research results of Miyajima (1999: 249-255) on loan words {both classical (those borrowed from Classical Chinese) and new loan words (those borrowed from European languages)} support this assumption. His data are based on a dictionary comprising over 10,000 entries. Results of his research show that a lot of loan words were employed in the 19th century and even more foreign borrowings were in use in the 20th century (Miyajima 1999: 251). Most of the borrowings from Classical Chinese are in percent: nouns (78.9), verbs (9.8), adjectives/adverbs (11.3) and interjections and others (0.1); loan words from European languages are: nouns (98.9), verbs (0.2), adjectives/adverbs (0.6) and interjections and others (0.4) (Miyajima 1999: 253). We can see that the majority of changes have occurred with nouns. This result corresponds to an assertion that people have richer associations with words designating nominal categories than with words designating adjectival ones (Goodenough 2001: 21).

Pertinent to this lexical alteration in Japanese, syntactic changes have also been recently observed: the subject marker PP *ga* (が) is being replaced by the object marker *o* (を) in potential, passive or desiderative sentences, as explained in Subsection 1.4.6 (Shibatani 1988: 247-264; Inoue 1991: 94; Hasegawa 1999: 120-146). This purports a conceptual and perceptual change, namely the replacement of the subject marker PP *ga* (が) through the object marker PP *o* (を). However, this phenomenon of case alteration seems to be limited to the PPs *ga* (が) and *o* (を), and the PPs are not yet replaced by foreign words. Theoretically speaking, the speaker can use the English preposition *with* instead of the Japanese comitative PP *to* (と) which marks a partner of an action, such as in the sentence *Bokusā ga dansā to dansu-suru* (A boxer dances with a dancer. / ボクサーがダンサーとダンスする。): *Bokusā ga dansā with dansu-suru*. The employment of prepositions/postpositions from other languages, such as the example above, by replacing Japanese PPs is hitherto not observed.

The Miyajima's article reveals the fact that lexemes are susceptible to changes. However, alterations under the rubric 'interjections and others', into which Japanese PPs are presumably categorized, are very low. This deduces an assumption that the syntactic features, such as word order or the use of PPs, are rigid and highly resistant to change. My descriptive work on PPs also clarifies that there is, in fact, no such lexical change in the domain of Japanese PPs, namely replacements of PPs with their semantically corresponding loan words. This infers that the resistance of Japanese towards changes is stronger in the following order among different linguistic levels: a lexical level < a phonetic and phonological level < a morphosyntactic level.<sup>37</sup> This means that albeit an abundance of loan words are employed in Japanese (Tamamura 1997; Miyajima 1999), and accordingly some phonological changes had occurred or have been taking place,<sup>38</sup> and finally some minor syntactic alterations have been observed, Japanese PPs have not yet been affected by language changes which have occurred so far.

### 8.2.3 Subjectivity

The third conclusion drawn out of this work is the subjectivity of Japanese language. Ikegami (1991) and Maynard (1997b: 2002) describe Japanese as a subjective language. The following fact supports this assumption. Out of eighty PPs listed in this book, there are twenty-six modality expressing PPs, ten copulative PPs with modality components, twenty adverbial PPs expressing the attitude of the speaker to a proposition, eight case marking PPs with modality connotations, and finally twenty-nine conjunctive PPs most of which also express the emotions of the speaker. We can, therefore, infer that Japanese expressions, whose sentence structures are constructed with these essentially pivotal and stable PPs, are of an emotive nature.

### 8.2.4 Context dependency

The final deduction out of my research deals with a high dependency on context in understanding sentences or utterances, in terms of Japanese textlinguistics and pragmatics. Both Ikegami (1991: 291-293) and Maynard (1997b, 1998) illustrate this property as one of the main features of the Japanese language. Syntactic characteristics play an important role for making the Japanese expressions ambiguous: such as scrambling (Saito 1985; Tonoike 1997; Ishii 1998), omissions of entries (constituents/entities) within a sentence, or absence of certain grammatical categories, such as number (plural/singular), gender (masculine/feminine/neuter), or absence of explicit morphological distinctions of aspect and tense. And in this connection, the Japanese PPs also contribute to supporting this assumption of vagueness and high context

<sup>37</sup> Note however, that there are phenomena in some dialects in Japan that changes occur on the phonetic level first, followed by lexical alterations, and finally syntactic changes (Genenz 1989: 73).

<sup>38</sup> As examples for contemporary phonological changes, we can cite the employment of the fricative [ɺ] and the affricate [tɺ] for nouns alongside the phonologically indigenous fricative [ç] and affricate [tɕ]. Or the use of the sounds [ɺɺ] or [tɺ] instead of the traditional sounds [tsɺ] or [tɕɺ] in Japanese, such as in the case of English words *today* [tɺdeɪ] or *team* [tɺm], which are often pronounced [tadeɪ] or [tɺmɺ] respectively instead of [tsɺdeɪ] or [tɕɺmɺ] in Japanese.



dependency of the Japanese language. We will see this with the following facts drawn out of my descriptive work.

As we have observed so far, many of the PPs belong to different categories. The PP *ni* (に), for example, is a case marker (§ see 3.2.6), a copulative PP (§ see 4.2.5), a conjunctive PP (§ see 6.2.16), and a modality expressing PP (§ see 7.2.13). Also, each PP has, in general, more than one syntactic, semantic, or pragmatic functions: the case marking PPs *ni* (に) and *no* (の) both have twenty-three distinct functions (see Table 13 in Chapter 3); the adverbial PP *mo* (も) and the conjunctive PP *te/de* (て/で) both have ten different roles (see Tables 19 in Chapter 5 and 24 in Chapter 6); the modality expressing PP *ka* (か) has likewise twelve overt functions (see Table 29 in Chapter 7). When we analyse the postpositional functions of each category, we can deduce the following facts: Type A case markers have altogether forty-five roles, including the locative function which itself has a further thirteen explicit roles (see Tables 14 and 15 in Chapter 3); Type B case markers have two roles (see Table 16 in Chapter 3); the copulative PPs indicate three functions (see Table 17-2 in Chapter 4); the adverbial PPs signal twenty-five tasks (see Table 20 in Chapter 5); the conjunctive PPs depict thirty-eight functions (see Table 23 in Chapter 6); and finally, the modality expressing PPs manifest thirty-eight different roles (see Table 30 in Chapter 7). In sum, their predominant feature of polysemy and multi-functionality is evident, and leads to the conclusion that a high context dependency exists in Japanese.

In terms of vagueness of the Japanese language, Maynard (1997b) points out its 'relationality' as one of the key characteristics of the Japanese. This means that the linguistic devices and strategies for ambiguous expressions of the speaker and the interlocutor make it possible to make a joint decision on matters. Very clear and objective statements do not expect any such decision-making process. Instead, the speaker and the interlocutor try to justify/demonstrate/prove that his/her argument or opinion is right. It more or less reflects a dichotomous decision-making: a decision has to be taken between the two possibilities, namely the speaker's or the interlocutor's opinion/judgement. Therefore, when opinions/judgements on something are different, it is a matter of eloquence how the arguments are based and presented, namely whether or not they are clear for logical understanding, and objective for the validity of the content of such opinions/judgements. Here we can see two different approaches to communication. As mentioned in Subjection 8.2.3, the Japanese PPs have a wealth of modality components expressing various emotions of the speaker/interlocutor, which appear very subjective. Also, the polysemy and multi-functionality of the Japanese PPs make the expressions vague and highly context dependent. These components inevitably influence the way of thinking and behaviour how the speaker/interlocutor utters his/her opinion in relation to the other. We can therefore draw a conclusion from this observation that 'vagueness' or 'clarity', or 'subjectivity' or 'objectivity', are not the matter of good/bad or better/worse, but they simply portray different linguistic approaches in expressing opinions/judgements.

### 8.3 Further research topics

The above mentioned features of the Japanese language are a few of the inferences from my research on Japanese PPs. Owing to a delimited scope of this handbook, namely to give the reader insights into Japanese PPs, I have disregarded the following aspects: the linguistic analysis of grammaticalization of words; the hierarchical relations

among PPs, the profound semantic analysis of morphemes/sememes/lexemes of each PP.

The grammaticalization of words in regard to Japanese PPs (see § 5.2.5) was mentioned in the book, but not in detail: some verbs are changing their functions to case markers (Momiya 2002: 91-94), nouns are changing into pseudo-nouns and finally into functional words such as PPs, as described in Chapter 1 (see Table 11). The second point which has to be investigated is the hierarchical relations of PPs, i.e., the word order of PPs when more than one PP is used in a sequence. Such systematic analysis will enlighten syntagmatic and paradigmatic characteristics of Japanese PPs. For example, there is a phenomenon that certain combinations of PPs generate new semantic meanings. The modality expressing PPs *wa* (わ) and *ne* (ね) are such examples. By juxtaposing them one after another to a proposition, they function as a female gender marker, and simultaneously as a marker of retrospect: ... *wa ne* (see § 7.2.6.1). However, they both do not have the second function of marking recollection, when used as single PPs. The third domain which has to be further explored deals with semantics. Semantic differences using different PPs for synonymous expressions should be analysed by means of linguistic methods, such as componential analysis, distinctive features, and other linguistic devices. The methods of corpus linguistics should also be incorporated in order to obtain a higher validity for assumptions and inferences drawn out of such research.

Teachers and learners of Japanese, as well as, linguists, who are interested in further studies, should read the references, which are given in the footnotes of each chapter. Finally, I hope that this handbook will give an incentive to linguists to do further research on this issue, or give them a basis for analysis in the field of typology and other linguistic disciplines. My wishes are also directed to teachers and learners of the Japanese language that this book will help them teach or learn Japanese PPs with less difficulties, and with more efficiency and enjoyment.

## Terminology

Owing to the particularities of the Japanese language, some new technical terms are used in this book. In normal usage they are mostly adjectives, but this book treats them as nouns. This was necessary, because cases used in Latin, Greek, German, English and other languages do not cover all the functions that Japanese PPs bear. New terms have enabled a systematic description of syntactic and semantic roles of Japanese PPs. Also definitions given in some monographs, which correspond to the functions of Japanese PPs, are taken in their original forms, in this case, the references are given in parentheses.

**ablative** A case expressing the role of source, which is expressed by *from* (Johnson 1971: 4; Blake 1997: 202).

**additive** A syntactic and semantic marker designating an addition to something/somebody. An English adverb *too* bears this function. Heine and Kuteva (2002: 16) also use this term.

**addressative** A case marking an animate object towards which an action is directed. This term is used by Tarvainen (1985: 28).

**adessive** A case expressing an object of opposition. English prepositions such as *at* or *near* have this meaning. This term is used by Anderson (1971: 81) and Blake (1997: 202).

**adhortative** See *hortative*.

**adposition** The cover term for prepositions and postpositions.

**adverbial** An adverb phrase using the verbal TE-form (see § 6.2.21.8), a postpositional phrase, or other entries (constituents/entities), which function syntactically and semantically as an adverb.

**adversative** A semantic function marking an opposition to something. English conjunctions such as *but*, *however*, and *although* have this function.

**affix** The general term for prefix, suffix and infix.

**agent** An animate being (a human/an animal) who/which performs an action.

**agentive** A syntactic-semantic function of marking an agent.

**allative** A case marking a destination, a goal or a place sb reaches. A case expressing *to* (Johnson 1971: 4; Blake 1997: 202).

**aspect** A grammatical category which marks the types of temporal features, such as stative (a unchanged situation), iterative (recurrence), progressive (an action in progress), durative (continuation of an action/a situation), habitual (a habit), perfective, imperfective, inceptive (beginning of an action), etc.

**aspective** A semantic case designating aspectual features as mentioned under *aspect* above.

**assumptive** A semantic case marking an assumption.

**attributive** A specification of a noun.

**aversive** A label sometimes used for a case indicating what is to be avoided. Another term that has been used is *evitative*.

**benefactive** A semantic case denoting an animate object which receives a benefit (Starosta 1973: 66; Anderson 1971: 27).

**bound form** A morpheme which is used as a firm element within a lexeme.

**case** A system of marking dependent nouns for the type of relationships they have to

their heads within a sentence. Originally applied to inflectional systems, but currently used for other case systems as well, such as adpositional (postpositional/prepositional), or other linguistic devices for marking cases. Japanese has a postpositional case system.

**case grammar** A grammatical analysis dealing with syntactic and semantic functions, i.e. cases, of entities within a sentence. Charles Fillmore's devised conception (1968) of Generative Grammar was a basic case theory in which semantic roles or 'deep cases' were analysed. This approach to grammar and similar approaches are referred to collectively as 'case grammar'.

**case marker** An affix that marks a case. In the case of Japanese, postpositions bear this function.

**causal** A semantic case marking a reason or a cause for something.

**cohortative** See *hortative*.

**comitative** A semantic case expressing an animate partner carrying out an action. In Japanese, this is marked with the postposition *to* (と). Anderson (1971: 4) and Blake (1997: 202) also use this term.

**comparative** A semantic case marking the object of comparison.

**completive** An aspectual concept designating a completion of something. This term is used by Palmer (1998: 208).

**concessive** A semantic function expressing *although*.

**conditional** A function which designates conditions.

**contrastive** A semantic case marking a contrast.

**copulative** A syntactic function for listing or coordinating items.

**da-dearu-style** A predicate style in Japanese, and builds an opposition to the *desu-masu*-style (see § 0.5). Many Japanese textbooks written in English use the terms 'informal-style', and 'formal-style' or 'polite-style', respectively.

**deixis** A grammatical category within the linguistic discipline of pragmatics. It deals with references to the characteristics of the situation/context, in which an expression is used. In the case of Japanese, differentiations are made among temporal, local, personal, directional, social and informational deixis.

**deontic modality** The kinds of modality expressing obligation, permission and prohibition.

**derivation** In this book, a word which is derived from other word classes, i.e. a word whose morphological composition is unchanged, but is semantically and syntactically used differently.

**desiderative** A semantic case designating a wish by somebody.

**desu-masu-style** A predicate form in Japanese (see § 0.5).

**directional** A case expressing a direction with the meaning of 'to'. This book uses this term in the same sense as *allative*. This term is used by Anderson (1973: 103). Palmer, however, refers to this term for marking source/goal (Palmer 1998: 5).

**dubitative** A semantic function which expresses doubt.

**durative** An aspectual concept indicating an action or a state which stays unchanged over a period of time.

**elative** A case expressing *out of* (Johnson 1971: 4; Blake 1997: 202).

**emotive** A semantic-pragmatic case indicating emotions of an animate object.

**epistemic modality** The kind of modality expressing assumptions based on knowledge and belief. In English, epistemic properties are expressed with modals such as *must*, *may*, *might*, etc., which denote probability or possibility.

**essive** A case indicating location. The more common term for it is *locative* (Blake 1997: 202).

**evitative** See *aversive*.

**free form** A morph which can be attached/detached to/from other morphs.

**finative** A case denoting something which is striven for (Tarvainen 1985: 26).

**genitive** A case marking a possessor of something.

**grammatical case** A case that encodes purely syntactic relations of entities to one another within a sentence.

**Hepburn-system** A transcription system developed for the Japanese language by J. Hepburn (1815–1911), and was first introduced in his publication 'Wa-ei-gorin-shūsei (和英語林集成)' in 1886 (Ogawa et al. 1989: 507).

**hierarchy** A classification involving ranking into successively subordinate levels, e.g. a person hierarchy: 1st>2nd>3rd.

**holistic case** A case marking something which is wholly affected.

**honorific** A pragmatic marker designating the speaker's respect for his/her interlocutor.

**hortative** A case which designates an exhortation meaning *let's*. The speaker urges his/her interlocutor to act in a certain way together with the speaker. Some linguists use the term *adhortative* (Aitchison 2001: 113) or *cohortative*.

**i-adjective** A inflectional category within the Japanese adjectives, and is predicative.

**illative** A case meaning *into* (Johnson 1971: 4; Blake 1997: 202).

**inceptive** An aspectual function expressing the beginning of an action.

**inchoative** An aspectual category indicating the beginning of an action. This term is used in the same way as *inceptive*.

**inessive** A case meaning *inside*. This term is used by Anderson (1971: 81) and Blake (1997: 202).

**inflection** A system for marking grammatical categories on a word, such as case, number, aspect and tense. In Japanese, inflections occur when inflectional suffixes (called 'auxiliaries' in School Grammar), postpositions or nouns are agglutinated to verbs, i-adjectives or other inflectional suffixes. Accordingly, they do not mark case, number, or gender, but aspect and tense can be marked with inflections.

**instructive** A case expressing the means. This term is used by Anderson (1971: 4) and is used in the same way as *instrumental*.

**instrumental** A case expressing the means by which an activity is carried out (Blake: 202). The case of the inanimate force or object causally involved in the action of state identified by the verb (Fillmore 1968). Tarvainen uses the term *instrumentative* (Tarvainen 1985: 1).

**instrumentative** A case denoting the instrument or the means by which something is done (Tarvainen 1981: 30). See also *instrumental*.

**intentional** A stance of the agent willing to do something. Some linguists use the term *optative*.

**introductory** A semantic function which marks an introduction to a sequential main statement.

**inversion** A sentence structure in which the ordinary word order is (intentionally) reversed in order to achieve specific stylistic effects. For example, in the case of Japanese, an inversion takes place when the main clause precedes the subordinate clause.

**irrealis** A semantic function expressing some kind of unreality. English uses



counterfactual sentences

**light verb** A verb which is not used in its intrinsic meaning but is used to convert a word into a verbal form. The Japanese *suru*-verbs have this character: by combining the verb *suru* with a noun, a lot of verbal compounds are made, such as *dansu-suru* (to dance), *ryokou-suru* (to travel), etc.

**local cases** Cases encoding roles relating to position/location or change of position such as source, path, destination (Blake 1997: 202)

**locative** The case which identifies the location or spatial orientation of the state or action identified by the verb (Fillmore 1968) A case denoting a place (Tarvainen 1985: 30)

**modal case** A case marking modes of something. Tarvainen uses the term *modative* (1981: 18)

**modality** Sentient feelings or stances of an animate object towards something/somebody

**modative** A case denoting the way in which something is done or happens (Tarvainen 1985: 29).

**modifier** An element of a sentence which describes something more concretely.

**mora** A term used in metrical phonology meaning a unit of phonological length. In traditional metrics, a mora is the smallest unit of metrical time.

**morpheme** The smallest segment of meanings

**morphology** A study of word structure.

**multiple case** In this book, the term is used for the appearance of more than two case markers attached to a noun.

**na-adjective** A category within the Japanese adjectives, and is not inflectional. In combination with the copula *da/dearu/desu*, it can build a predicate of a sentence.

**object** A syntactic case which refers to the direct object

**objective** A case which denotes an entity which is influenced by an action (Tarvainen 1985: 23)

**paradigm** The set of substitutable relationships a linguistic unit has with other units in a particular context (Crystal 1999: 249). A set of linguistic forms that have a vertical relation. The so-called *ko-so-a-do*-system of Japanese is an example of such linguistic system

**paradigmatic relation** A linguistic relation which has a paradigm.

**partitive** A case marking an indefinite quantity of a divisible object. Anderson (1973: 266) uses this term.

**perfective** An aspect form which implies attainment of the terminal point of an action or a situation

**perlative** A case encoding a path. Blake (1997: 204) defines this term as a case expressing *through*, *across*, or *along*. Anderson (1971: 4) uses the terms *prosecutive* for a motion which goes through somewhere, and *prolative* for a path.

**permissive** A semantic case indicating permission.

**phoneme** The smallest segment of a sound which can make a difference in meaning.

**phonology** A study of sounds/phones dealing with their relations to one another.

**phonotactics** Sequential arrangements of phonological units such as vowel and consonant phonemes within a morpheme/lexeme/word

**polysemy** A lexeme which has more than one meaning

**possessive** A case marking a possessor/owner of something

**pragmatics** A linguistic study which deals with factors influencing the choice of language the speaker selects in a social context and its influence on the addressee

**predicate** A constituent within a sentence. It is placed at the end of the sentence in Japanese. It represents a comment to a topic, which is usually mentioned at the beginning of a sentence. Verbs, i-adjectives, and nouns/na-adjectives in combination of the copula *da/dearu/desu* can build a predicate in Japanese

**predicative** A constituent which can build a predicate within a sentence

**prohibitive** A semantic case designating a prohibition

**prolative** A term used by John Anderson (1971: 4) encoding a path with the meaning of *alonglover*.

**prop** A substitute word such as the English pronoun *one* found in the sentence *I like this one*.

**prosecutive** A case marking a path with the meaning of 'through'. This term is used by Anderson (1971: 4).

**proximative** An aspectual function designating that somebody is on the verge of doing something.

**purposive** A case marking a purpose

**quantifier** A linguistic lexical unit indicating quantities of something.

**quantitative** A semantic function marking a quantity of something

**quotative** A semantic role indicating a citation/quotation of something.

**rentaishi-adjective** A non-predicative category within the Japanese adjectives, and is therefore solely used as an attribute of nouns

**restrictive** A semantic function marking a restriction.

**resultative** A case marking a result of an action/a happening/a change. Blake (1994: 207) points out that the translative case in Finnish refers to the end point of a change of state. In this sense, both terms *resultative* and *translative* designate the same semantic function

**semantic case** A case that encodes purely semantic relations of entities within a sentence.

**semantic feature** A semantic component of a lexeme. A sememe.

**sememe** The smallest unit of a meaning. It differs from the term *lexeme* in that a lexeme is a larger unit as a sememe. In most cases, a lexeme is listed as a headword in dictionaries, whereas a sememe is usually not listed. However, overt distinctions among the terms *sememe*, *morpheme*, *lexeme*, or *glosseme* are, in general, not explicitly defined.

**sentence** A composition using different constituents. Syntactic subjects, syntactic objects, adverbials/adverbs, postpositional phrases, counter units, and predicates are such constituents of Japanese sentences. Concerning the word order, the predicate has to be placed at the end of a sentence, but the rest of the constituents can be miscellaneously arranged (so-called *scrambling*) depending upon what the speaker wants to stress. Also, omission of such constituents is feasible, whereas, the predicate cannot be deleted. For this reason, this book does not differentiate the term *clause* from the term *sentence*. Both of them are referred to as 'sentences'. Therefore, the *main sentence* corresponds to the *main clause*, and the *subordinate sentence* means *subordinate clause* in the English grammar. This facilitates explanations of Japanese sentence structures.

**sociolect** A language specific for certain social groups, such as a language spoken

among children, young/older, uneducated/educated people, or those belonging to various groups of occupations

**stative** An aspect form indicating a state of affairs

**superlative** A semantic case denoting the highest/largest of something

**suprasegmental feature** An element of sound systems of languages which extends over discrete segments, such as segmental phonemes. Stress, intonation, tone/pitch, length of vowels/consonants, and juncture belong to suprasegmental features.

**syntagma** A set of linguistic forms/items which have horizontal relations. The word order *Kore wa hon desu* is an example: this sentence has a meaning only when each entity lies in this sequence

**syntagmatic relation** A linguistic relation which shows syntagma.

**syntactic case** A case that marks a syntactic relation to other entities/constituents within a sentence.

**syncretism** A linguistic phenomenon in which more than two functionally distinct roles, whether it is of a syntactic or semantic nature, are integrated in one form.

**syntax** The study of rules and regularities, which govern the arrangements of words or clauses, in order to form statements conveying meaning

**TE-form** A verbal inflection form used to build many different sentence structures (see § 0.6.1.2 and Table 25, 26 and 27 in Chapter 6).

**temporative** A case marking time. This term is used by Tarvainen (1985: 31).

**thematic** A case which denotes the theme or the subject of a communicative or mental action (Tarvainen 1985: 25).

**topic** A theme of a statement. Tarvainen uses the term *thematic* (Tarvainen 1981: 16)

**topic raising** A presentation of a theme of a statement.

**translative** A case label meaning *through*. The translative case in Finnish refers to the end point of a change of state (Blake 1994: 207).

**typology** A linguistic discipline dealing with classification of languages based upon their structures. For example, when we take a word order as a basis for classification, Japanese is a SOV-language, whereas English a SVO-language

**V1 to V6'-inflection** Verbal inflection used to build many different sentence structures or nominal compounds. This is one of the two key verbal inflection systems in Japanese: 'V1 to V6'-inflection and TE-inflection.

**volitional** A mental point of view of the agent wishing to do something.

## References

### A

- Abraham, Werner (ed.); Fillmore, Charles (1977). *Kasustheorie*. Wiesbaden. Athenion  
Translation of *Case for Case* (Fillmore, Charles 1977).  
Aitchison, Jean (2001): *Language Change*. 3rd edn. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press  
Akinaga, Kazue (1990): 'Hatsuon no utsuri-kawari', 77-114. In: Sakakura, Atsushi (ed.) (1990): *Nihon-go-kôza Dai-6-kan Nihon-go no rekishi*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Taishûkan-shoten  
Anderson, John M. (1971): *The Grammar of Case. Towards a Localistic Theory*. London and New York. Cambridge University Press  
Anderson, John (1977): *On Case Grammar*. London: Croom Helm.  
Asano, Yuriko (1991): *Kyôshiyô-Nihon-go-kyôiku-handobukku 5: Goi*. 2nd edn. Tokyo. Bonjinsha.  
Asano, Yuriko (1993): 'Kinô-teki-goku no kyôiku'. In: Hayashi, Dai et al. (ed.) (1993): *Nihon-go-kyôiku Handobukku*, 414 - 420. 3rd edn. Tokyo: Taishûkan-shoten

### B

- Blake, Barry J. (1994): *Case*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

### C

- Chino, Naoko & Akimoto, Miharû (1987): *Gaikoku-jin no tame no joshi: Sono oshie-kata to oboe-kata*. Tokyo: Musashino-shoin.  
Chino, Naoko; Akimoto, Miharû; Sanada, Kazumori (1987): *Gaikoku-jin no tame no Nihon-go reibun monda shirizu: Fukushi*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Aratake-shuppan.  
Comrie, Bernard (2001): *Aspect*. 1st edn.: 1976. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press  
— (1985): *Tense*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.  
— (1981): *Language universals and linguistic typology*. Oxford: Blackwell  
Cook, M. Haruko (2001): 'Particles', 176-179. In: Duranti, Alessandro (ed.) (2001): *Key Terms in Language and Culture*. Malden, Massachusetts and Oxford: Blackwell.  
Croft, William (1996). *Typology and universals*. 3rd edn. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.  
Crystal, David (1997): *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Language*. 2nd edn. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.  
— (1999): *The Penguin Dictionary of Language*. 2nd edn. London: Penguin Books

### D

- Davis, John F. (2000). *A Crash Course in English Grammar*. Stuttgart: Ernst Klett Verlag  
Dey, Joseph (1996): *Schola Verbi*. 9th edn. Munster: Aschendorff Verlag.



Doi, Tadao (1959): *Nihon-go no rekishi*. Tokyo: Shimon-dō.

## F

- Fillmore, Charles (1971): *Studies in linguistic semantics*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.  
 — (1987): 'Case Grammar'. In: Dirven, René (ed.): *Fillmore's case grammar*. Heidelberg: Groos.

## G

- Genenz, Kai (1989): 'Dialekte', 63-97. In: Lewin, Bruno (1989): *Sprache und Schrift Japans*. Leiden: Brill.  
 Gengo-gaku-kenkyūkai (ed.) (1983): *Nihon-go-bunpō — Rengo-ron*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Mugishobō  
 Goodenough, Ward H (2001) 'Category', 19-22. In: Duranti, Alessandro (2001) *Key Terms in Language and Culture*. Malden, Massachusetts and Oxford: Blackwell.  
 Greenberg, J. H. (ed.) (1978): *Universals of human language*. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.  
 Gruber, J. (1976). *Lexical structures in syntax and semantics*. Amsterdam: North Holland.

## H

- Hall, Edward T (1969): *The hidden dimension*. Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday.  
 Hamano, Shoko (1998): *The Sound-Symbolic System of Japanese*. Stanford: CSLI Publications, Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 Hasegawa, Nobuko (1999): *Seisei-Nihon-go-gaku-nyūmon*. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten  
 Hayashi, Dai et al. (ed.) (1993). *Nihon-go-kyōiku Handobukku*. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten  
 Heine, Bernd & Kuteva, Tania (2002): *World lexicon of grammaticalization*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press  
 Helbig, Gerhard (1992): *Probleme der Valenz- und Kasus-theorie*. Tübingen: Max Niemeyer.  
 Helbig, Gerhard & Buscha, Joachim (1993): *Deutsche Grammatik Ein Handbuch für den Ausländerunterricht*. 13th edn. München: Langenscheidt.  
 Hirabayashi, Yoshisuke & Hama, Yumiko (1993) *Keigo*. Tokyo: Aratake-shuppan.  
 Hinata, Shigeo (ed.) (1991): *Giongo-gitaigo no dokuhon*. Tokyo: Shogakukan.  
 Hinata, Shigeo & Hibiya, Junko (1991): *Gitaigo-giongo*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Aratake-shuppan.  
 Hofmann, J. B. & Rubenbauer, Hans (1995) *Lateinische Grammatik*. 12th edn. Bamberg: C. C. Buchners Verlag; München: J. Lindauer Verlag; München: R. Oldenbourg Verlag  
 Horiguchi, Kazutoshi (1989): 'Keishiki-meishi'. In: Ogawa, Yoshio & Hayashi, Dai et al. (eds.) (1989) *Nihon-go-kyōiku-jiten*, 108. 3rd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten.  
 Hoshi, Hiroto (1999): 'Passives', 191-235. In: Tsujimura, Natsuko (ed.) (1999) *The Handbook of Japanese Linguistics*. Oxford: Blackwell.

## I

- Ikegami, Yoshihiko (1983): *'Suru' to 'naru' no gengo-gaku*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten  
 — (1991): 'DO-Language and BECOME-Language', 285-326. In: Ikegami, Yoshihiko (ed.): *The Empire of Signs*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.  
 — (1999): 'The Path and the Goal', 25-47. In: Nitta, Haruo; Shigeto, Minoru; Wienold, Götz (eds.) (1999). *Kontrastive Studien zur Beschreibung des Japanischen und des Deutschen*. München: iudicium  
 Imai, Kunihiko (2001) *Goyō-ron e no shōtai*. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten.  
 Inoue, Kazuko (1990): *Henkei-bunpō to Nihon-go 1*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten.  
 — (1990): *Henkei-bunpō to Nihon-go 2*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten  
 — (1991): 'Shugo no imi-yakuwari to kaku-hairetsu', 79-101. In: Kuno, Susumu & Shibatani, Masayoshi (eds.) (1991): *Nihon-go-gaku no shin-lenka*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Kurosio  
 Ishii, Yasuo (1998): 'Scrambling of Weak NPs in Japanese'. In: Silva, David J.: *Japanese/Korean Linguistics Volume 8*, 431-444. Stanford: CSLI Publications.  
 Iwasaki, Shōichi (1993): *Subjectivity in grammar and discourse*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.  
 — (2002): *Japanese*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins

## K

- Kageyama, Tarō & Hoffmann, Th. R. (1990): *10 Voyages in the Realms of Meaning*. 5th edn. Tokyo: Kurosio  
 Kageyama, Tarō (1997). *Doushi-imi-ron*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 Kamio, Akio (1996): *Jōhō no nawabari-nron*. 3rd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten  
 — (1997): *Territory of information*. Amsterdam: Benjamins.  
 Katsuki, Noriko (1994): *Grundstudium Japanisch 2*. 3rd edn. Rheinbreitbach. Dürr & Kessler  
 — (1991): *Japanisch für Anfänger 1*. Köln: Stam Verlag  
 Kimura, Shinjirō (1995): 'Voisu no kategori to bun-kōzō no reberu'. In: Nitta, Yoshio (ed.): *Nihon-go no voisu to tadōsei*. Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 Kimura, Shinjirō (1996). *Nihon-go-dōshi no shosō*. 5th edn. Tokyo: Hitsujishobō.  
 Kindaichi, Haruhiko (1983) (ed.). *Nihon-go-dōshi no asupekuto*. Tokyo: Mugishobō  
 Kindaichi, Haruhiko et al. (eds.) (1999): *Kan-yaku-yōrei-kogo-jiten*. Tokyo: Gakken  
 Kitagawa, Chisato; Kamata, Osamu; Iguchi, Atsuo (1988): *Joshi*. Tokyo: Aratake-shuppan.  
 Kitahara, Yasuo; Suzuki, Tanjirō; Takeda, Kō; Masubuchi, Tsunekichi, Yamaguchi, Yoshinori (eds.) (1988) *Nihon-go-bunpō-jiten*. 4th edn. Tokyo: Yūseidō-shuppan.  
 Kitahara, Yasuo (1989). *Nihon-go-bunpō no shōten*. 3rd edn. Tokyo: Kyōiku-shuppan  
 Kobayashi, Hideo (1981): *Nihon-go no sekai 7: Nihon-go no on'in*. Tokyo: Chūō-kōron  
 Kodama, Tokumi (1987): *Izon-bunpō no kenkyū*. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha.  
 Koizumi, Tamotsu (1993): *Nihon-go-kyōshi no tame no gen-go-gaku-nyūmon*. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten  
 — (1996): *Gengai no gen-go-gaku: Nihon-go-goyō-ron*. 6th edn. Tokyo: Sanseidō.  
 — (2001): 'Chokuji', 13-23. In: Koizumi, Tamotsu (ed.) (2001): *Nyūmon Goyō-ron-*



- kenkyū: riron to ōyō*. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha.
- Kokubungaku-henshūbu (1980). *Anata mo keigo ga tadashiku tsukaeru*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Gakutōsha
- Kokuritsu-kokugo-kenkyūjo (1984): *Gendai-go no joshi-jodōshi*. 9th edn. Tokyo: Shūei-shuppan.
- Kokuritsu-kokugo-kenkyūjo (1991): *Gendai-Nihon-go no asupekuto to tensu*. 4th edn. Tokyo: Shūei-shuppan.
- Kokuritsu-kokugo-kenkyūjo (1994): *Dōshi no imi-yōhō no kijutsu-teki-kenkyū*. 7th edn. Tokyo: Shūei-shuppan.
- Kuno, Susumu (1985): *Nihon-bunpō-kenkyū*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten
- Kuwayama, Toshihiko (1988) 'Joshi' In Kitahara, Yasuo; Suzuki, Tanjirō et al. (eds.) (1988): *Nihon-go-bunpō-jiten*, 214-240. 4th edn. Tokyo: Yūseidō-shuppan.

## M

- Makino, Seiichi (1980): *Kurikaeshi no bunpō*. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten
- Matsumoto, Hirotake (1991): 'Ni-kaku no meishi to keiyōshi to no kumi-awase: Rengo no kijutsu to sono shūhen, 203-313. In: Gengo-gaku-kenkyū-kai (ed.) (1991): *Gengo no kenkyū*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Mugī-shobō
- Matsumoto, Yō (1996): *Complex Predicates in Japanese*. Stanford, Calif.: CSLI Publications
- (1997): 'Kūkan-idō no gengo-hyōgen to sono kakuchō'. In: Nakau, Minoru (1997): *Kūkan to idō no hyōgen*, 1-123. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha.
- Matsuo, Hiro (1995). 'E — kaku-joshi < koten-gogen · dai-go >'. In: Matsumura, Akira (ed.) (1995): *Gendai-go, koten-go, joshi-jodōshi-shōsetsu*, 340-352. 7th edn. Tokyo: Gakutō-sha.
- Masuoka, Takashi (1991): *Modariti no bunpō*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Kurosio.
- Masuoka, Takashi, Noda, Hisashi; Numata, Yoshiko (eds.) (1997): *Nihon-go no shudai to tontate*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Kurosio.
- Maynard, Senko K. (1997a): *Danwa-bunseki no kanōsei: Riron, hōhō, Nihon-go no hyōgensei*. Tokyo: Kurosio
- (1997b): *Japanese Communication*. Honolulu: The Hawai'i University Press
- (1998): *Kaiwa-bunseki*. 4th edn. Tokyo: Kurosio
- (1998) *Principles of Japanese discourse*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- (2002): *Linguistic Emotivity*. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Mihara, Ken'ichi (1998) *Seisei-bunpō to Hikaku-tōgo-ron*. Tokyo: Kurosio.
- Mikami, Akira (1993): *Gendai-gohō-josetsu*. 7th edn. 1st edition 1972. Tokyo: Kurosio.
- (1987): *Zoku-gendai-gohō-josetsu*. 4th edn. Tokyo: Kurosio
- Miyagawa, Shigeru (1989): *Syntax and Semantics Volume 22: Structure and Case Marking in Japanese*. San Diego: Academic Press
- (1999): 'Causatives', 236-268. In: Tsujimura, Natsuko (ed.) (1999): *The Handbook of Japanese Linguistics*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Miyajima, Tatsuo (1999) 'Loanwords in Japanese', 249-255. In: Nitta, Haruo, Shigeto, Minoru; Wienold, Götz (eds.) (1999): *Kontrastive Studien zur Beschreibung des Japanischen und des Deutschen*. München: iudicium.
- Miyamoto, Tadao (1999): *The Light Verb Construction in Japanese: The Role of the Verbal Noun*. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company.

- Miyaoka, Osahito (ed.) (2001) *Gengo-jinru-gaku o manabu hito no tame ni*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Sekai-shisō-sha.
- Momiyama, Yōsuke (2002): *Ninchi-imi-ron no shikumi*. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha.
- Morita, Yoshiyuki (1991): *Goi to sono imi*. Tokyo: Aruku.
- (1994): *Dōshi no imi-ron-teki-bunpō-kenkyū*. Tokyo: Meiji-shoin.
- (1995): *Nihon-go no ruiji-hyōgen*. 6th edn. Tokyo: Sōtaku-sha.
- Muraki, Shinjirō (1996): *Nihon-go-dōshi no shosō*. 5th edn. Tokyo: Hitsuzi-shobō

## N

- Nagara, Susumu; Hirota, Noriko; Nakanishi, Yaeko (1987): *Keishiki-Meishi*. Tokyo: Aratake-shuppan
- Nakamura, Chidori (2001): *Nihon-go no jikan-hyōgen*. Tokyo: Kurosio.
- Nakau, Minoru; Tanaka, Shigenori; Matsumoto, Yō (1997): *Nichi-ei-hikaku-sensho 6: Kūkan to idō no hyōgen*. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha
- Nakau, Minoru; Washio, Ryūichi; Mihara, Ken'ichi (1997): *Nichi-ei-hikaku-sensho 7: Voisu to asupekuto*. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha.
- Nakau, Minoru; Kageyama, Tarō; Yumoto, Yōko (1997). *Nichi-ei-hikaku-sensho 8: Go-keisei to gainen-kōzō*. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha
- Nakau, Minoru; Akatsuka, Noriko; Tsubomoto, Atsurō (1998) *Nichi-ei-hikaku-sensho 3: Modariti to hatsuwa-kō*. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha.
- Nakau, Minoru (ed.) (1998): *Nichi-ei-hikaku-sensho 9: Kaku to gojun to tōgo-kōzō*. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha
- Newmeyer, Frederick J. (1975): *English Aspectual Verbs*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Nitta, Yoshio (1989): 'Joshi'. In: Ogawa, Yoshio & Hayashi, Dai et al. (eds.) (1989): *Nihon-go-kyōiku-jiten*, 146-154. 3rd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten
- (1991): 'Kakudai-goi-ron-teki-tōgo-ron', 45-77. In: Kuno, Susumu & Shibatani, Masayoshi (eds.) (1991): *Nihon-go-gaku no shin-tenkai*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Kurosio
- (1993): *Nihon-go no kaku o megutte*. Tokyo: Kurosio.
- (1995): *Nihon-go no voisu to tadō-sei*. Tokyo: Kurosio.
- (1995): 'Voisu-teki-hyōgen to jiko-seigyō-sei'. In: Nitta, Yoshio: *Nihon-go no voisu to tadō-sei*. Tokyo: Kurosio
- Nitta, Yoshio & Masuoka, Takashi (1995): *Nihon-go no modariti*. 3rd edn. Tokyo: Kurosio

## O

- Ogawa, Yoshio & Hayashi, Dai et al. (eds.) (1989): *Nihon-go-kyōiku-jiten*. 3rd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten.
- Okutsu, Keichirō: 'Joshi'. In: Hayashi, Dai et al. (ed.) (1993): *Nihon-go-kyōiku Handobukku*, 470-480. 3rd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten.
- Okutsu, Keichirō (1993), Numata, Yoshiko; Sugimoto, Takeshi (1986): *Iwayuru Nihon-go-joshi no kenkyū*. Tokyo: Bonjinsha
- Ono, Hideichi (1984): *A Practical Guide to Japanese-English Onomatopoeia & Mimesis*. Tokyo: Hokuseidō-shoten
- Ōno, Susumu (1980). *Nihon-go no sekai 1: Nihon-go no seintsu*. Tokyo: Chūō-kōron.
- (1988): *Nihon-go no bunpō*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Kadokawa-shoten.

## F

- Palmer, F. R. (1986) *Mood and Modality*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.  
 — (1998) *Grammatical relations*. First published 1994. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

## S

- Saeki, Tetsuo (1998). *Nihon-bun no gojun*. Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 Saitō Mamoru (1985) *Some asymmetries in Japanese and their theoretical implications*. Cambridge, Mass., MIT dissertation.  
 Saitō, Michiaki & Ishii, Masahiko (eds.) (1997): *Go-kōsei*. Tokyo: Hituzi-shobō.  
 Sakakura, Atsushi (ed.) (1990): *Nihon-go-kōza Dai-6-kan Nihon-go no rekishi*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten.  
 Sanseidō-henshū-jo (1973): *Kōjirin*. 5th edn. Tokyo: Sanseidō.  
 Shibatani, Masayoshi (ed.) (1976): *Syntax and Semantics Volume 5: Japanese Generative Grammar*. New York: Academic Press.  
 — (1988): *Nihon-go no bunseki*. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten.  
 — (1999): *The Language of Japan*. 5th edn. New York and Melbourne: the Press Syndicate of the University of Cambridge.  
 Shinmura, Izuru et al. (eds.) (1974): *Kōjien*. 4th edn. Tokyo: Iwanami-shoten.  
 Shiota, Shun (1998): *Nihon-go-keitai-ron*. Tokyo: Hituzi-shobō.  
 Smith, Henry (1996) *Restrictiveness in Case Theory*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.  
 Starosta, Stanley (1988): *The case for lexibase*. London: Pinter.  
 Suga, Kazuyoshi & Hayatsu, Meko (1995): *Dōshi no jita*. Tokyo: Hitsuji-shobō.  
 Suzuki, Hideo (1988) 'Meishi'. In Kitahara, Yasuo, Suzuki, Tanjirō et al. (eds.) (1988): *Nihon-go-bunpō-jiten*, 149-154. 4th edn. Tokyo: Yūseidō-shuppan.  
 Suzuki, Shinobu (1985): *Bunpō 1: Joshi no sho-mondai 1*. Tokyo: Bonjinsha.  
 Suzuki, Takao et al. (1990). *Nihon-go no goi to hyōgen*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Taishūkan-shoten.

## T

- Tamamura, Bunrō (1997) 'Wa-go wa zōgo-ryoku ga yowai ka?'. 101-116. In: Saitō, Michiaki & Ishii, Masahiko (eds.) (1997) *Go-kōsei*. Tokyo: Hituzi-shobō.  
 Tami, Ikuhiro et al. (1993). *Onomatopoeia: Gion-gitar-go no rakuen*. Tokyo: Keisō-shobō.  
 Tanaka, Shigenori (1997): 'Kōkan-idō no gengo-hyōgen to sono kakuchō', 125-230. In: Nakau, Minoru (1997): *Kōkan to idō no hyōgen*, 1-123. Tokyo: Kenkyūsha.  
 Tanomura, Tadaharu (1992) *Gendai-Nihon-go no bunpō 1 'noda' no imi to yōhō*. Tokyo: Waizumi-sensho.  
 Tarvainen, Kalevi (1981) *Einführung in die Dependenzgrammatik*. Tübingen: Max Niemeyer.  
 — (1985): *Semantic Cases in the Framework of Dependency Theory*. Trier: Linguistic Agency University of Trier.

- Tesnière, Lucien (1980): *Grundzüge der strukturalen Syntax*. Translated by. Engel, Ulrich. Stuttgart: Klett-Cotta.  
 Teramura, Hideo (1986): *Nihon-go no shintakusu to imi I*. 5th edn. Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 — (1987): *Nihon-go no shintakusu to imi II*. 4th edn. Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 — (1991): *Nihon-go no shintakusu to imi III*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 Tokieda, Motoki (1986) *Nihon-go-bunpō: Kōgo-hen*. 9th edn. Tokyo: Iwanami-shoten: First published in 1950.  
 Tonoike, Shigeo (1997): *Scrambling*. Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 Trask, R. L. (1995): *A Dictionary of Grammatical Terms in English*. First published in 1993 and reprinted in 1995. London and New York: Routledge.  
 — (1996): *A Dictionary of Phonetics and Phonology*. London and New York: Routledge.  
 — (2000): *The Penguin Dictionary of English Grammar*. London: Penguin Books.  
 Tsujimura, Natsuko (1996): *An Introduction to Japanese Language*. Oxford: Blackwell.  
 — (1999). *The Handbook of Japanese Linguistics*. Oxford: Blackwell.  
 Tsunoda, Tasaku (1991): *Sekai no gengo to Nihon-go*. 6th edn. Tokyo: Kurosio.

## U

- Uchida, Masanori (1991): 'Shugo o meguru joshi no yōhō-kubun ni tsuite', 29-44. In: Kuno, Susumu & Shibatani, Masayoshi (eds.) (1991): *Nihon-go-gaku no shin-tenkai*. 2nd edn. Tokyo: Kurosio.  
 Uda, Chiharu (1994): *Complex Predicates in Japanese*. New York: Garland Publishing.  
 Uehara, Satoshi (1998) *Syntactic Categories in Japanese. A Cognitive and Typological Introduction*. Tokyo: Kurosio.

## W

- Watanabe, Minoru (1992): *Koku-go-bunpō-ron*. 16th edn. Tokyo: Kasama-shoin. First published in 1974.  
 — (1997): *Nihon-go-shi-yōsetsu*. Tokyo: Iwanami-shoten.  
 Weber, Heinz J. (1992): *Dependenzgrammatik*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr Verlag.  
 Willis, Dave (1991): *Collins Cobuild Student's Grammar*. London: Harper Collins Publishers.

## Y

- Yokobayashi, Hisayo & Shimomura, Akiko (1988): *Setsuzoku no hyōgen*. Tokyo: Aratake-shuppan.

## Japanese-Japanese Dictionaries:

- Shinmura, Izuru (ed.) (1979): *Kōjien*. 4th edn. Tokyo: Iwanami-shoten.  
 Sanseidō-henshū-jo (ed.) (1973): *Kōjirin*. 5th edn. Tokyo: Sanseidō.  
 Kindaichi, Haruhiko et al. (eds.) (1989). *Nihongo-dai-jiten*. Tokyo: Kōdansha.  
 Kenbō, Hidetoshi, Kindaichi Haruhiko, Shitaba Takeshi, Kindaichi Kyōsuke (eds.) (1985): *Kokugo-jiten*. 16th edn. Tokyo: Sanseidō.

Kenbô, Hidetoshi, Kindaichi Haruhiko, Shitaba Takeshi, Yamada Tadao, Kindaichi Kyôsuke (eds.) (1985): *Shin-meikai-kokugo-jiten*. 36th edn. Tokyo: Sanseidô.  
 Kindaichi, Haruhiko et al. (eds.) (1999): *Yôrei-kogo-jiten*. Tokyo: Gakken.  
 Ôbunsha (ed.) (1967): *Kogo-jiten*. Tokyo: Ôbunsha

## Index of Postpositions

### B

ba 150, 153, **157-160**, 239  
   V1 nakereba naranai 157  
   V4 ba 158  
   V4 ba V3 hodo ... 157  
 bakari 26, 101, 103, **197-110**  
   .. bakari da 108  
   .. bakari de wa naku 109  
   .. bakari ka 109  
   N bakari ... 107  
     .. TA bakari ni 108  
     ... TE bakari ... 107  
   V1 n bakari no/ni 109  
 bakashi 107  
 bakka 107  
 bakkan 107

### D

dake 101, 102, 103, **110-112**  
   dake aru 112  
   .. dake ni 112  
   V4 ba V3 dake 111  
 dano 91, **92**  
 dari **97-98**  
 datte 82, 103, **112 115**, 150  
 datte (/tatte) **182-183**  
 de 13, 17, 21, 22, 23, 29 30 31, 32, 34  
   **37-39**  
 de (/te) 150, 153, **183-191**  
 demo 82, 103, **115-117**  
   ... demo arumai 117  
   .. demo nakarou 117  
 demo (/temo) 152, 191  
 dorokoka **160-161**  
 domo **161-162**  
   .. kere domo ... 161  
   V4 domo V4 domo ... 161

### E

e (え) 208, 209, **215**  
 e (へ) 29, 30, 31, 34, 35, **39-41**  
   ... tokoro e ... 41

### G

ga 13, 16, 19, 20, 21, 26, 29, **41 44**, 152,  
 153, **162-164**, 203, **215-216**  
   ... ga gotoku 44  
   ... ga tame ni 44  
   N1 ga N2 42, 43  
   N ga N da/dearu kara/shi 42  
   sore ga tame ni 44  
   V3 ga gotoku 43  
 gurai 18, 102, 103, **127-129**  
   ... gurai made no ... 70  
   .. gurai nara ... 128

### H

hodo 102, 103, **117-120**  
   .. ba ... hodo ... 119

### I

i 27, 28 205, 207, 209, **216-218**

### K

ka 25, 27, **92-94**, 120-123, 203, 205,  
 207, 208, 210, **218-221**, 232  
   bakari ka 109  
   ka ... ka 92  
   .. ka dou ka 93, 121  
   ka mo shirenai 121, 122  
   no ka 69  
   TE-kuremasen ka 219  
   TE-kurenai ka 219  
   .. to iu mono ka 212  
   V1 nai ka 219  
   V2 masen ka 219  
   V2 mashou ka 219  
   V3 ka V1 nai ka no uchi ni 122  
 kara 16, 18, 19, 21, 22 26, 29, 30, 31,  
 34, 36, **45-49**, 153, 156, **164-168**  
   ... kara kangaete 187  
   kara mite 187  
   ... kara ni ... 168  
   kara no ... 48  
   ... kara shite ... 48  
   ... kara to itte ... 167  
   ... kara tote ... 166  
   .. kara tte ... 167



.. mono da kara ... 168  
 .. sae ... da kara ... 167  
 .. sae ... kurai/gurai da kara ... 167  
 kashira 203, 209, 210, **221-222**  
 ke 222-223  
 kedo 150, 152, 153, **168-169**, 203, 204,  
 205, **223-224**  
 .. to ii no/n da kedo 223  
 kedomo 152, 153, **168-169**, 203, 204,  
 205, **223-224**  
 .. to ii no/n da kedomo 223  
 keredo 152, 153, **168-169**, 203, 204,  
 205, **223-224**  
 .. to ii no/n da keredo 223  
 keredomo 152, 153, **168-169**, 204, 205,  
**223-224**  
 .. to ii no/n da keredomo 223  
 kiri 101, 102, 103, **123-124**  
 N kiri ... 123  
 N kiri + negative predicate 123  
 < sentence *kiri da* > 123  
 TA kiri da 124  
 kke 222-223  
 koso **124-127**  
 koto 224-225  
 .. koto yo 212, 224, 225  
 kototote 153, 156, **169-170**  
 kurai 102, 103, **127-129**  
 .. kurai nara ... 128  
 kuseni 150, 152, **170-171**

**M**

made 18, 29, **49-50**, 103, **129-132**  
 .. made 129  
 .. made da 130  
 .. made mo 106  
 ... made mo nai 130  
 ... made no koto da 130  
 .. made no koto mo nai 130  
 V1 made mo ... 131  
 mo 82, 83, **94**, 103, **132-138**, 150, 171-  
 172  
 .. amari ni mo 136  
 .. mo ... mo 133  
 < 1 + counter unit + *mo* + predicate in  
 negation > 134  
 < ... *mo* + predicate in affirmative >

134  
 N1 mo N2 137  
 .. ni mo iroiro (na no ga) aru/iru 138  
 V2 ni ... TARI 138  
 V3 ni mo ... 137  
 monde 153, 156, **172**  
 monka 226-227  
 ... to iu monka 227  
 mono 209, **225-226**  
 monode 153, 156, **172**  
 monoka 226-227  
 .. to iu monoka 227  
 mononara **173-174**  
 monono 150, **174**  
 monoo **175**

**N**

n 68, 215  
 .. n da/dearu/desu 68  
 na 16, 203, 205, **227-230**  
 .. (o) kudasai na 212, 228  
 ... to ii (n da ga) na 212  
 V1 nai ka na 212, 229  
 V2 na 212, 228  
 V2 nasai na 212, 228  
 V3 na 212, 227  
 V3 na yo 248  
 naa 229  
 ... to ii (n da ga) naa 212  
 V1 nai ka naa 229  
 nado **83-85**  
 nagara 150, **175-177**  
 nanka **83-85**  
 nante **83, 85-86**  
 nanzo **83-85, 86**  
 nari 91, **94-95, 139-140, 177-178**  
 ... nari to ... 140  
 nazo **83-85, 86**  
 ne 13, 27, **230-233, 246**  
 nee 231, 232  
 ni 16, 17, 23, 29, 30, 31, 32, 34, 35, 36,  
 50 **82, 83, 91, 95-96, 115, 153, 178-**  
**179, 208, 233-234**  
 ... dake ni 112  
 N ni V 55  
 .. ni atatte 187  
 .. ni atte 187

ni chokumen-shite 187  
 ... ni hanshite 187  
 .. ni itatte 187  
 .. ni kanshite 187  
 .. ni kurabete 187  
 .. ni saishite 187  
 .. ni taishite 187  
 .. ni totte 187  
 .. ni tsuite 187  
 .. ni tsuzuite 187  
 .. ni (wa) ... ga iru/aru 51  
 TA bakari ni 108  
 ... to yara ni ... 146  
 V1 n bakari ni 109  
 V2 ni iku/kuru/kaeru 55  
 V3 ni mo ... 137  
 V6 u/you ni 212, 233  
 no 15, 18, 29, 31, 34, **62-70, 96-97,**  
 209, 210, **234-235**  
 A no B 62, 63, 65, 67  
 ... kara no ... 48  
 ... no da/dearu/desu 68  
 ... no ka 69  
 ... no no koto 69  
 .. no yo 244  
 < sentence + *no* > 68  
 < sentence *no/n* + *da/dearu/desu* >  
 68  
 ... to yara no ... 146  
 V1 n bakari no 109  
 node 13, 153, 156, **179-180**  
 nomi 101, 103, **140-141**  
 noni 26, 150, **180-181**

**O**

o 13, 18, 19, 20, 21, 29, 31, 32, 34, 36,  
**70-74 83**  
 .. o fukumete 187  
 .. o motte 187  
 .. o tsujite 187

**S**

sa 207, **235-237**  
 saa 237  
 sae 103, **141-142**  
 .. sae ... da kara 167  
 sae ... kurai da kara 167

.. sae mo 106  
 shi 91, 153, 156, **181-182**  
 shika 13, 18, 26, 101, 103, **142-143**  
 shimo **143-144**  
 sura 103, **144**  
 .. sura mo 106  
 ... sura sae mo 106

**T**

tara 82, **86-87, 203, 205, 237-238**  
 tari **97-98**  
 tatte 150, **182-183**  
 te 150, 153, 156, **183 191, 239**  
 ... ni atatte 187  
 .. ni atte 187  
 ... ni chokumen-shite 187  
 .. ni hanshite 187  
 .. ni itatte 187  
 ... ni kanshite 187  
 .. ni kurabete 187  
 .. ni saishite 187  
 .. ni taishite 187  
 .. ni totte 187  
 .. ni tsuite 187  
 ... ni tsuzuite 187  
 < TE + V3 > 187  
 TE-ageru 189  
 TE-arau 188  
 TE-hoshii 190  
 TE-iku 188  
 TE-iru 188  
 TE-itadaku 189  
 TE-kucasaru 189  
 TE-kuremasen ka 219, 220  
 TE-kurenai ka 219, 220  
 TE-kureru 189  
 TE-kuru 55, 188, 220  
 TE-miru 188, 195  
 TE mo ii 190  
 TE-morau 189  
 TE-oku 188  
 TE-sashigeru 189  
 TE-shimau 188  
 TE wa ikenai 190  
 TE wa naranai 190  
 TE-yamanai 190  
 TE-yamanu 190

TE-yaru 189  
 TE yo  
   ... to shite 77  
   ... to shite wa 77  
 teba 203  
 temo 150, 152, 190, 191  
 ttara 23, 24, 82, 86-87, 203, 204, 205, 237-238  
 tte 87-88 236  
 tteba 27, 203, 204, 205, 237, 239-240  
 to 13, 17, 24, 29, 74-79, 83, 84, 91, 98, 152, 153, 192-194  
   < a frequency/duration/amount + to >  
     76  
     to ii no/n da kedo/kedomo/keredo/  
       keredomo 223  
     to itte 167  
 A to iu B 147  
   to iu mono wa ... 146  
   to iu yori ... 80  
   to kanren-shite 187  
   to shite 77, 187  
   < 1 + counter unit + to shite > 77  
   to shite mo 78  
   to shite wa 77  
   to yara iu ... 147  
   to yara ni ... 146  
   to yara no ... 146  
 toka 91, 98-99  
 tokorode 152, 194-195  
 tokoroga 152, 195-196  
 tomo 27, 152, 196-197, 240  
 tote 88, 103, 145-146, 152, 197-198  
 tsutsu 152, 199-200

## W

wa (は) 17, 18, 19, 20, 23, 24, 82, 83 88-90  
   ... to shite wa 77  
   ... wa ... ga ... 42  
 wa (わ) 208, 240-242  
   wa ne 259  
   wa yo 241  
 wai 27, 209, 242-243

## Y

ya 24, 91, 99, 200-210, 205, 210, 243-

## 245

... koto ga arimashou ya 213, 244  
 V5 ya V5 213, 243  
 V6 u/you ya 243  
 yai 245  
   V5 yai 245  
 yara 91, 99-100, 146-147, 208, 245-246  
   ... to yara ni ... 146  
   ... to yara no ... 146  
 yo 27, 208, 244, 246-249  
   ... deshou yo 213, 249  
   koto yo 224, 247  
 N yo 247  
   na yo 248  
   no yo 247  
   TE yo 247, 248  
   V3 na yo 248  
   V5 yo 248  
   wa yo 247  
 yori 29, 30, 31, 34, 35, 79-81  
   A to iu yori B wa ... 80  
   A wa B yori ... 79  
   A yon B (no hou) ga 79  
   yori ... 80  
   ... yori shikata ga nai 81

## Z

ze 250  
 zutsu 147-148  
 zo 27, 209, 210, 240-252  
   V6 u/you zo 214

## Subject Index

## A

Abbreviations ii  
 ablative 18, 19, 22, 45, 46, 48, 81  
 abrupt command 212, 228  
 abrupt prohibition 212, 227  
 abrupt statement 213, 242  
 achievement 52  
 addition 97, 105, 131, 132, 141, 151  
 additional information 181  
 addressee 40, 53  
 adessive 61  
 adjectival predicate 10, 159  
 adjective 3  
 adverb 4, 60, 76, 89  
 adverb (*mashite*) 167  
 adverb (*semete*) 116, 127  
 adverbial 186  
 adverbial phrase 187  
 adverbial PPs 13, 25-26, 101-148  
 adversative 126, 151, 152, 154, 160, 162, 168  
 advice 151  
 affirmation 105  
 age 209  
 agent 37, 47, 55, 56, 57, 64, 66  
 agent marker 30  
 agglutination 70  
 agreement 212  
 allative 35, 39, 49, 52  
 allative verb 52  
 ambiguity 84, 105  
 ambiguous citation 85  
 amount 76  
 anger 86, 104, 206, 213  
 answer to questions 87  
 appearance 43, 78, 105  
 apposition 63  
 approval 61  
 approximation 103, 104, 109, 118, 127  
*an to arayuru* 79  
 arrogance 82, 214, 250  
*aru* (ある) 11, 51, 117, 200  
*arumai* (あるまい) 117  
 asking for confirmation 212, 230

aspective 104, 110, 124, 151, 154, 155, 156, 176, 177, 192, 193, 199, 200  
 aspective (durative) 188  
 aspective (habitual) 158  
 aspective (immediate action) 200  
 aspective (inceptive/inchoative) 188  
 aspective (incompletive) 188  
 aspective (iterative) 158  
 aspective (perfective) 188, 233, 237  
 aspective (progressive) 188  
 aspective (unchanged situation) 178  
 aspective-temporative 151, 154, 155, 156, 158  
 aspectual function 150, 187  
 aspectual marker 123  
 aspectual verb compound 188  
 assumption 69, 104, 121, 135, 146  
 astonishment 27, 86, 179, 206, 211, 213, 220, 238, 239  
 attributive 44, 62, 66  
 auxiliary verb 2  
 avoiding direct/clear statements 163, 206, 212, 232

## B

basis of judgement 61  
 BECOME-language 84  
 being affected 225  
 being emotionally affected 213, 236, 241, 244  
 being impressed 206, 212, 213, 214, 225, 226, 227, 229, 231  
 being offended 106, 213  
 being moved 104, 211, 221  
 being relieved 233  
 benefactee 57  
 benefactive 57  
 benefactive verb 57, 58, 189  
 benefactor 57  
 beneficiary verb compound 189  
 bewilderment 179  
 borrowing 256

## C

- calling sb's name 207, 213, 214  
 case alteration 19-21, 256  
 case marking 102  
 case marking PPs 23, 25, 29-90, 33  
   (Type A) 25, 29-81  
   (Type B) 25, 82-90  
 categories of PPs 23-27  
 causal 22, 37, 44, 47, 58, 104, 112,  
   151, 153, 154, 155, 165, 166, 167,  
   168, 170, 172, 179, 181, 182, 184,  
   212, 226  
 causative 56  
 cause See *causal*  
 cautioning 251  
 certainty 207, 213, 240  
 characteristics 63  
 citation 87  
 citing examples 95, 96, 98, 113, 145  
 Classical Japanese 43, 203  
 colour 63  
 combining postp. phrases 212  
 comitative 74  
 command See *imperative*  
 comparative 74, 79, 80  
 comparative criteria 60, 105, 127  
 comparison See *comparative*  
 complaint 207, 211, 217  
 complete listing 24, 91, 95, 96, 98  
 concession See *concessive*  
 concessive 78, 104, 115, 151, 152,  
   154, 155, 156, 161, 170, 171, 174,  
   176, 180, 182, 184, 191, 193, 194,  
   195, 196, 198, 199  
 condition See *conditional*  
 conditional 78, 151, 152, 154, 155, 157,  
   166, 167, 173, 175, 192, 193  
 conditional-assumptive 151, 154  
 conditional-evitave 154  
 conditional-habitual 151  
 conditional-hypothetical 151  
 conditional-introductive 151  
 confidence 213, 240  
 confident statement 207  
 confirmation 207, 211, 212, 219, 223,  
   230  
 conjoining 212  
 conjunction 4  
 conjunction of postp. phrases 213  
 conjunction of sentence constituents  
   232, 237  
 conjunctive PPs 13, 25, 26, 91-100,  
   149-201  
 consecutive action 193, 195  
 consecutive time sequence 184  
 consonantal verb 5-7, 8  
 constituent 16  
 contempt 82, 83, 104, 211, 213, 245  
 content 59, 65, 75, 87  
 content marker See *content*  
 context dependency 257-258  
 contrary See *adversative*  
 contrast 90, 125, 126, 151, 186  
 contrastive 151, 155, 186  
 coordination 133, 185  
 copulative 151, 154, 155, 159, 182, 185,  
   213, 232, 237, 242  
 copulative PPs 13, 24, 25  
 coquettish behaviour/attitude 212, 214,  
   226, 248  
 correlative coordination 133  
 counter 3  
 counter unit 77, 134  
 counter word 114  
 criteria 60, 64  
 criticism 86, 104, 151, 207, 211, 212,  
   213, 217, 219, 226, 235, 236  
 customary action 151
- D**  
*da* (だ) 3, 68  
*da-dearu*-style (だ・である体) 8, 9, 11  
*dake* (丈) 117  
*dearu* (である) 4, 68  
 definite/definitive statement 27, 108,  
   173, 207, 213, 245, 247  
*dekiru* (出来る) 20, 57  
 deontic modals 190  
 derision 85  
 desiderative 5, 21, 206, 211, 212, 215,  
   221, 222, 223, 229  
 desire See *desiderative*  
 desperation 204  
 destination See *allative*  
*desu* (です) 4, 68

- desu-masu*-style (です・ます体) 8, 9, 11  
 Diagrams iv  
 dialogue 210  
 direct speech 75, 236  
 direction See *directional*  
 direction marker 30  
 directional 39, 40, 53, 73  
 disappointment 103  
 disapproval 61  
 disdain 85, 211, 217  
 disgust 86  
 disjunctive listing 25, 91, 92  
 dissatisfaction 204, 206, 212, 214, 224,  
   249  
 distinctive feature 210  
 DO-language 84  
 double affirmation 105  
 double agglutination 69, 70, 128  
 double case marking 69, 84, 128  
 doubt 69, 104, 121, 207, 211, 221  
 drawing sb's attention 207, 211, 214,  
   244, 249, 250, 251  
 dual cases 18  
 dubitative 218, 221  
 duration 73, 76  
 durative verb 73  
 dynamic predicate 255
- E**  
 exaggeration 213, 242  
 emotionality 213, 242  
 emphasis 42, 48, 84, 90, 105, 109, 124,  
   125, 126, 137, 167, 206, 207, 211, 213,  
   214, 217, 232, 244, 248, 252  
 emphatic negation 77  
 entity 16  
 entry 16  
 epistemic modals 190  
*eru* (える) 57  
*eru*-verb 5  
 estimation 135, 151  
 euphemism 84, 206, 211, 213  
 evitative 212, 232  
 example marker 82, 83, 85, 95, 96, 98,  
   104, 105, 145  
 exclusion 108  
 exclusiveness 81, 101, 104, 107, 111,  
   123, 140, 142  
 exhortation 206, 211, 219, 248  
 expansion 151  
 expectation 212, 231  
 expectation of an agreement 231  
 expectation of an answer to a question  
   222  
 expectation of a confirmation 231  
 extent 105, 110, 113, 118, 129, 130,  
   131  
 extreme 103, 104, 115, 128, 131, 134,  
   141, 144, 145
- F**  
 failure 61  
 firm decision 151, 165  
 form 63  
 frequency 76  
 frustration 206, 213  
*fuku-joshi* (副助詞) 203  
 functions of adverbial PPs 104  
 functions of conjunctive PPs 151  
 functions of Type B case marking PPs  
   82
- G**  
 gender 208  
 gentle command 212, 228  
 gentle prohibition 211, 220  
 gentle question 212  
 gentleness 234  
 giver 57  
 giving information 206, 213, 214, 247,  
   249  
 goal See *allative*  
*gotoshi* (ごとし) 43  
 gradual change 104, 148  
 grammaticalization 15, 41, 117, 186, 255  
*gurai* (位) 117
- H**  
 habitual action 176, 192  
 happiness 206, 212, 213, 229, 242  
 head-marker order 79  
 hesitation 152, 163  
 hierarchical relation 168, 209  
 hierarchy of PPs 18, 111, 139, 166



*hodo* (程) 117  
 holistic case 105  
 holistic framework 64  
 holistic property 79, 152  
 holistic quantity 197  
 honorific 2, 6, 7, 8, 24  
 honorific verb 5  
 hortative 6  
*hoshii* 215  
 humbleness 163  
 hyphenation 1, 3  
 hypothesis 151, 233

**I**  
*i*-adjectival predicate 4, 10  
*i*-adjective 3  
 idiomatic expressions 77, 108, 109, 111, 117, 121, 126, 132  
 idiosyncrasy 105, 140  
*ii* 12  
 illative 35, 40, 53  
 immediate action 177, 193, 200, 201  
 immediate past 104, 110  
 immediateness 151  
 impatience 203, 206, 213, 237, 239  
 imperative 205, 206, 210, 211, 212, 213, 218, 220, 228, 238, 243, 245  
 inclination 80  
 incomplete listing 24, 91, 92, 94, 95, 96, 97, 99  
 incomplete listing of actions 97  
 increase 151  
 indecisive attitude 104, 147  
 indication of choice 105, 139  
 indication of strong confirmation 213, 240  
 indication of variety 105, 138  
 indirect command 243  
 indirect speech 75, 236  
 indirectness 152, 206, 211, 216  
 infancy 206, 211, 218  
 inflection type V1-V6 6  
 information from the third party 236  
 insecure feeling 104  
 insistence 207, 212, 213, 231, 235  
 instrumental 21, 37  
 insult 43

intentional 6  
 interchangeability 203, 204, 205, 207  
 interjection 4  
 interjectional PP 254  
 interrogative 146, 196, 207, 211, 212, 213, 216, 218, 225, 232, 234  
 intimacy 82, 206, 209, 211, 212, 215, 232, 234  
 intimate command 245  
 introduction See *introductory*.  
 introductory 151, 153, 154, 155, 158, 162, 169, 178  
 inventory of copulative PPs 91  
 inventory of functions of the Type A case marking PPs 33  
 inventory of local cases 31  
 invitation 206, 211, 213, 219, 225  
 irrealis 173, 206, 212  
 irregular verb 5, 7, 8  
 irritation 206, 213  
*iru* 51  
*iru*-verb 5  
 iterative 192

**J**  
 joy 242  
 judge of a judgement 77  
 juxtaposition 70, 106, 166, 168

**K**  
*kakari-joshi* 203  
*kaku-joshi* 203  
*kantou-joshi* 203  
 ... *karou* 196  
*koro* (頃) 2  
*koto* (事) 2, 16, 117, 224  
*kurai* (位) 117  
*kuru*-verb 5, 8  
*kuse* (臭) 16, 117

**L**  
 language change 15, 255-257  
 leaving point See *ablative*.  
 light verb 5  
 limit See *restrictive*.  
 list of adverbial PPs 102  
 list of conjunctive PPs 149

list of Japanese PPs 14  
 listing 213  
 loan word 256  
 local ablative 34  
 local attributive 34  
 local cases 31-36  
 local restriction See *local restrictive*.  
 local restrictive 34, 39, 49  
 local starting point 45, 81  
 locative 19, 21, 31-34, 40, 50, 62, 63, 71, 72  
 long vowel [o:] 1, 2  
 long vowel [u:] 1, 2

**M**  
*made* (迄) 117  
*mai* (まい) 117, 196  
 manner 38, 41, 59, 64, 76, 151, 155, 186  
 marker-head order 79  
*mashite* (まして) 167  
 material 37, 46  
 maximal limit 135, 171, 197  
 maximum 105, 139  
 means See *instrumental*.  
 merit 105, 112  
 mild command 213, 245  
 mild question 225  
 mild statement 206, 212, 229  
 mild suggestion 212, 225  
 mild warning 212, 231  
 minimum 105, 116, 127  
 minimal condition 142  
 minimal limit 171, 197  
*mitai* (みたい) 233  
 mockery 85  
 modal 190  
 modality 68, 96, 99, 102, 104, 136  
 modality (astonishment/bewilderment) 86, 151, 154, 155, 159, 181  
 modality (criticism) 151  
 modality (derision) 85  
 modality (disdain) 85  
 modality (emphasis) 48  
 modality (estimation) 151, 152, 155  
 modality (firm decision) 151, 154, 165  
 modality (humbleness/hesitation) 163  
 modality (mockery) 85

modality (non-inference) 151  
 modality (profanity/insult) 43  
 modality (reservation/hesitation/indirectness) 152, 154  
 modality (scorn) 85  
 modality (suggestion) 152, 154  
 modality (surprise) 48, 86, 164, 169, 172  
 modality (taking sth for granted) 129  
 modality (unexpectedness) 48  
 modality (vexation) 175  
 modality components of copulative PPs 93  
 modality expressing PPs 14, 25, 26-28, 190, 203-252, 211-214  
 moderate negative command 211  
*mono* (物) 2, 15, 16, 117, 225, 226  
 monologue 210, 211, 213, 214, 221, 244, 251  
 mora 2, 15  
 morphology 15  
 morphosyntactic features of conjunctive PPs 149  
*mu* (む) 44  
 multiple agglutination 69, 70  
 multiple case marking 18, 69  
 multiple use of PPs 18

**N**  
*n* (aux.) (ん) 44, 233  
*n* (PP) (ん) 215  
*na*-adjectival predicate 4, 10  
*na*-adjective 2, 3, 4  
*nai* (ない) 11, 117, 196, 233  
*nakarou* (なかろう) 117  
*nara* (なら) 120, 128, 173  
*nari*-adjective 59  
 negation 77  
 negation of categorical negation 105, 143  
 negative command 220  
 nominal predicate 4, 10, 165  
 nominalization 68  
 non-inference 151, 163  
 noun 2-3  
 noun-replacement 67  
*nu* (ぬ) 233  
 number of functions of copulative PPs

- 91  
 number of functions of modality  
   expressing PPs 204  
 number of functions of Type A case  
   marking PPs 29  
 number of PPs 150
- O**  
 object 65, 70  
 object of approval/disapproval 61  
 object of opposition 61  
 object of verbs of success/failure 61  
 obviousness 168  
 offence 243  
 opposite See *adversative*.  
 orthography 2  
 owner See *possessive*.
- P**  
 parallel change See *proportional change*.  
 partial framework 64  
 partner See *comitative*.  
 passive 20, 56  
 perception 193, 195  
 perception of space 255  
 perfective aspect 233, 237  
 perfunctory attitude 214, 249  
 perlative 18, 19, 36, 48, 72  
 permissive 190  
 personal starting point 45  
 persuasion 206, 211, 212, 231, 235  
 persuasive statement 212  
 phonology 15  
 phonotactics 15  
 pity 104  
 place of an action 32, 37, 50, 63, 71, 72  
 place of contact 52  
 place of departure 34, 46, 71  
 place of detachment 46  
 place of existence 31, 40, 62  
 place of motion 32  
 place of passing through 19, 72  
 place one belongs to 64  
 politeness 163  
 poly-functionality 208  
 possessive 43, 46, 51, 62

- possibility 104, 121  
 potential expressions 19  
 potential verb 57  
 pragmatic encoding 208  
 pragmatic particle 254  
 preceding action 185  
 predicate 4  
 predicate style 9-11  
 predicate type 10  
 present progressive action 200  
 profanity 43  
 progressive 151, 200  
 progressive action 176  
 prohibition See *prohibitive*.  
 prohibitive 190, 206, 211, 212, 220, 227  
 proportion 105  
 proportional allocation 147  
 proportional change 104, 111, 117, 119, 157  
 protest 207, 211, 217  
 proximative 109  
 pseudo-noun 15, 16, 41, 44, 66, 102, 117, 194, 224, 225  
 purpose See *purposive*.  
 purposive 55, 65

- Q**  
 quantitative 38, 76, 105, 147, 152, 156, 177, 197  
 quantitative criteria 60  
 quantitative estimation 152  
 question 207, 212, 221, 225, 232  
 questioning 211, 212  
 quotative 167

- R**  
 raising adverbial entries as topics 89  
 raising adverbs as topics 89  
 raising subjects/objects/temporal entries as topics 88  
 rapid procedure 104, 122  
*rareru* (られる) 19, 57, 233  
*rashii* (らしい) 196, 233  
 reason See *causal*.  
 rebuking sb of sth 213, 247  
 receiver 57  
 recognition of sth 193, 195

- recurrence 192  
 reference 265-271  
 refutation 213, 236  
 regret 103, 104, 206, 212, 213, 214, 233, 242  
 relaxed statement 213, 235  
 reminiscence 222  
*rentaishi*-adjective 2, 3, 4  
 request 206, 211, 219, 248  
*reru* (れる) 19, 233  
 reservation 152  
 reserved stance 163, 206, 211, 224  
 resignation 104, 117, 235  
 resistance against changes 255-257  
 restriction See *restrictive*.  
 restrictive 38, 64, 135, 152, 154, 155, 166, 171, 197  
 restrictive-concessive 183  
 restrictive-conditional 166  
 result See *resultative*.  
 resultative 54, 75  
 resultative verb 54  
 retrospection 211, 222  
 reward 105, 112  
 rhetorical question 211, 212, 217, 218  
 rhetorical statement 214, 227, 244, 251  
 role 77

- S**  
 s-ending 6  
 sadness 206, 212, 229  
 scolding sb 214, 252  
 scorn 82, 83, 85, 104, 211  
 scrambling 17  
 semantic functions of adverbial PPs 104  
 semantic functions of conjunctive PPs 151, 154-156,  
 semantic object  
 semantics 21  
*semete* (せめて) 116, 127  
*setsuzoku-joshi* (接続助詞) 203  
 shape 63  
*shirenai* (しれない) 121, 122  
*shuu-joshi* (終助詞) 203  
 situative verb 255  
 sociolect 209  
 soft insistence 212, 231

- soft invitation 225  
 soft persuasion 231  
 softness 206, 211, 212, 213, 224, 234, 241  
*souda* (そうだ) 233  
 source 22, 46  
 specification 152  
 specification of a noun 62  
 speculative 6  
 static verb 50  
 stative situation 150, 176  
 stative verb 32  
 strong desire 212, 229  
 strong statement 213  
 strong wish 212  
 subject 41, 69  
 subjectivity 257  
 success 61  
 suggestion 152, 160, 206, 211, 212, 213, 214, 219, 225, 238, 248  
 superlative 105, 118, 128  
 surprise 48, 82, 86, 104, 206, 213, 214, 242, 250  
*suru*-verb 5, 7, 65, 119, 125, 141  
 suspicion 207, 211, 218  
 Symbols ii  
 synchronous action 151, 158, 176, 199  
 synchronous-progressive 176  
 syncretism 85, 102, 147, 152, 170, 172, 174, 175, 208  
 syntactic object 65, 70  
 syntactic relation 19  
 syntactic-semantic case marking 13  
 syntactic-semantic features of conjunctive PPs 150  
 syntactic subject 41, 69  
 syntax 16

- T**  
*ta* (た) 237  
 Tables iii-iv  
*tachi* (達) 2  
*tai* (たい) 5, 21, 196  
 taking sth for granted 104, 129  
*tara* (たら) 233  
 < TE + V3 > 187  
 teasing somebody 85



technical terms 2  
 TE-form 8, 9, 187  
 TE-*miru* (〜みる) 195  
 terminology 259-264  
 temporal ablative 30  
 temporal adverb 51  
 temporal estimation 152  
 temporal restriction 39, 49  
 temporal restrictive 49  
 temporal starting point 45, 81  
 temporative 38, 51, 63, 73, 152, 155, 177, 184, 185, 195  
 TE-type inflection 8, 9  
 third party reported information 236  
 time See *temporative*.  
 time sequence 152  
 threat 26  
 three-place-juxtaposition 70, 106, 166, 167  
*toki* (時) 2  
*tokoro* (所) 16, 117  
 topic 104  
 topic raising 85, 86, 88, 145  
 total affirmation 105, 113, 116, 133, 139, 143  
 total negation 105, 114, 145  
 totality 113, 152  
 touching point 52  
 transcription 1-2  
 translative See *resultative*.  
*ts*-ending 7  
 two-place-juxtaposition 106, 128, 166, 168

**U**  
*u* (aux.) (う) 1, 6, 41, 117, 196, 212, 243, 251  
 uncertain statement 120, 146  
 uncertainty 99, 104, 207, 213, 246  
 unchanged state/situation 104, 124, 151, 176, 178  
 underestimation 83  
 unexpectedness 48, 211, 220  
 unreality See *irrealis*.  
 upper local limit 49  
 upper temporal limit 49  
 urgent command 243

usage of adverbial PPs 107-148  
 usage of conjunctive PPs 157-201  
 usage of copulative PPs 92-100  
 usage of modality expressing PPs 215-252  
 usage of Type A case marking PPs 37-81  
 usage of Type B case marking PPs 82-90

**V**

V1-V6 inflection 6  
 vagueness 115  
 verb 4, 5  
 verb compound 119, 155, 187, 125, 141, 195  
 verb inflection 5  
 verbal predicate 4, 10, 159  
 verbs of entering 18  
 verbs of failure 61  
 verbs of giving and receiving 189  
 verbs of motion 32, 71, 72  
 verbs of passing through 18, 72, 73  
 verbs of perception 168  
 verbs of success 61  
 vocalic verb 5, 6, 8  
 volitional 6  
 vowel-ending verb 7

**W**

*wa-ga*-sentence structure 19, 42  
 warning 206, 212, 231  
 ways See *manner*.  
 will 206, 211, 220  
 wish See *desiderative*.  
 word class 2  
 word order 16-17

**Y**

*yoi* (良い) 12  
*yor* (adv.) (より) 80  
*you* [jo:] (よう) 6, 41, 212, 233, 243  
*youda* [jo:da] (ようだ) 233

**Z**

*zu* (ず) 233

## LINCOM Studies In Asian Linguistics

## In this series

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 01 Karen Ebert                     | A Grammar of Athpare   |
| 02 Stefan Georg                    | Marphatan Thakali  |
| 03 Tsutomu Akamatsu                | Japanese Phonetics.<br>Theory and Practice   |
| 04 D.N.S. Bhat & M.S. Ningomba     | Manipuri Grammar   |
| 05 Siew-Yue Killingley             | Learning to Read Pinyin Romanization<br>and its Equivalent in Wade-Giles:<br>A Practical Course for Students of<br>Chinese               |
| 07 Barbara Niederer                | Les langues Hmong-Mjen (Miào-Yáo).<br>Phonologie historique  |
| 12 Duck-Young Lee                  | Korean Phonology.<br>A Principle-based Approach  |
| 25 Heinrich Werner                 | Probleme der Wortbildung in den<br>Jenissej-Sprachen   |
| 26 Yogendra Yadava                 | Issues in Maithili Syntax<br>A Government-Binding Approach   |
| 27 John Newman<br>& Anand V. Raman | Chinese Historical Phonology   |
| 28 Ming Chao Gui                   | Yunnanese and Kunming Chinese:<br>A Study of the Language Communities,<br>the Phonological Systems, and the<br>Phonological Developments |
| 30 Yavar Deghani                   | A Grammar of Iranian Azari<br>Including Comparisons with Persian   |



32 Xiaonong Sean Zhu	Shanghai Tonetics
33 Nikolai Vakhtin	The Old Sirinek Language
38 Tsutomu Akamatsu	Japanese Phonology. A Functional Approach
39 Ago Künnap	Contact-induced Perspectives in Uralic Languages
40 Lau Chunfat	The Decline of the General Hakka Accent in Hong Kong
44 Shengli Feng	The Prosodic Syntax of Chinese
45 Ago Künnap	Main Language Shifts In the Uralic Language Group
46 Zhongmin Chen	Studies on Dialects in the Shanghai Area Their Phonological Systems and Historical Developments
47 Janet Zhiqun Xing	Grammaticalization of Verbs in Mandarin Chinese
48 Hyung-Soon Yim	The Intonational Phonology of Direct and Indirect Imperative Sentence Types in Seoul Korean
49 Choi-Yeung-Chang Flynn	Intonation in Cantonese
50 András J. E. Bodrogligeti	An Academic Reference Grammar of Modern Literary Uzbek. Vol. I
51 András J. E. Bodrogligeti	An Academic Reference Grammar of Modern Literary Uzbek. Vol. II
52 Noriko Katsuki-Pestemer	Japanese Postpositions: Theory and Practice